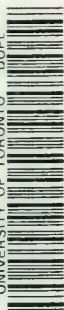


UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO DUPL



3 1761 00361171 2

Charles the Grete.

Early English Text Society.

Extra Series. No. XXXVII.

1881.

BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 53 MOHRENSTRASSE.
NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.
PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.



Early English Text Society
[Publications.] Extra Series

THE No. 36137

ENGLISH CHARLEMAGNE ROMANCES.

PART III. — IV

The Luf of the Noble and Crysten Prynce,

Charles the Grete,

TRANSLATED FROM THE FRENCH BY WILLIAM CANTON
AND PRINTED BY HIM 1485.



EDITED NOW FOR THE FIRST TIME, FROM THE UNIQUE COPY
IN THE BRITISH MUSEUM,

with Introduction, Notes, and Glossary,

BY

SIDNEY J. H. HERRTAGE, B.A.,

EDITOR OF "GESTA ROMANORUM," "SIR FERUMBRAS," ETC.

38074
7/10/96

LONDON:

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY,
BY N. TRÜBNER & CO., 57 & 59, LUDGATE HILL.

MDCCCXXXI.

PR

1119

E5

no. 36-37

Extra Series,

XXXVII.

BUNGAY: CLAY AND TAYLOR, THE CHAUCER PRESS.

INTRODUCTION.

THE present volume, completing Part III. of the English Charlemagne Romance series, requires but little introduction. I have already referred to it in my edition of *Sir Ferumbras*, Introd. pp. viii, ix. It contains the whole life of Charlemagne, with a brief sketch of the early kings of France, and includes all the incidents narrated in *Sir Ferumbras*, *The Sowdone of Babyloyn*, *Roland and Vernagu*, and the *Song of Roland*.

Caxton's "Lyf of the Noble and Crysten Prynce, Charles the Grete" survives only in the unique copy preserved in the British Museum (Press Mark c. 10, b. 9). It is a folio volume, containing 96 leaves, the signatures running from A ij to M viij, and is perfect, but without title-page. The colophon tells us that the "werke was fynysshed in the reducyng of hit in to Englysshe the xvij day of Juyn, the second yere of kyng Rychard the thyrde, and the yere of our lord MCCCCLXXXV, and enprynted the fyrst day of decembre the same of our lord, & the fyrst yere of kyng Harry the seuenth."

The type is that classed by Mr. Blades as 4*. The pages have two columns, each containing 39 lines, and each line measuring 2 $\frac{3}{8}$ inches. There are neither folios nor catchwords. The initial wood-cut letters are 3 lines deep.

In 1743 the volume was sold by R. Harley to Osborne the bookseller, the price not mentioned. In 1773 it became the property of J. Ratcliffe at a cost of £13, and in 1776 it was sold by him to George III for £4. 4. 0.

As Caxton himself tells us, the work here reprinted is a translation of the French prose romance of *Fierabras*, itself a compilation

partly from the *Speculum Historiale* of Vincent de Beauvais, and partly from the old French romance of Fierabras. The exploits of Charlemagne were related in numerous histories and romances, both in French and Latin, in prose and in verse, as early as the 12th and 13th centuries. From the envoy of the anonymous author of the original French version we learn how Henry Bolomyer, a canon of Lausanne, induced him to gather together into one connected narrative these disjointed fragments. A comparison of his work with that of Vincent of Beauvais shows clearly that his researches were by no means confined to the *Speculum Historiale*. I have already given a short account of the original French work.¹ One version in the Grenville Library, 10531, is doubly unique, being not only the only copy of that particular version known to be in existence, but also the only production of the press of Symon du Jardin, at Geneva, which has come down to us. Brunet had heard of it, but doubted its existence (*Suppl.* II. p. 231). It is undated and without signatures, pagination, or illustrations.

A second version of the original French is also preserved in the same library, No. 10532. It also is a folio volume of 65 leaves, signatures running from A j to L v. On L v b is a woodcut similar to that at the end of the copy already described. This also is unique, and has the following colophon: "Cy finist Fierabras imprime a lyon lan de grace mil qualtre cens quatre vingtz et seize. Le xx iour de nouembre." There are numerous woodcuts throughout the work, evidently copied from the same source as those in the Royal *Fierabras* described below, but much coarser and plainer. They are also frequently reversed, and, as in the royal copy, the same woodcut is at times made to serve for two or more incidents of a similar character.

In the library of the late Mr. Huth is a version, undated, in folio, black letter, with woodcuts, and the colophon: "Cy finist Fierabras. Imprime a lyon par mai-stre Guillaume le roy. Le cinequiesme Jour du moys de Juilliet. Deo gracias." It contains 108 leaves, and is the copy described by Brunet. It appears to have belonged originally

¹ Introd. to *Sir Ferumbras*, pp. vi, vii.

to the library of the Academy at Lyons. In the same library is a version in German containing 53 leaves, of which another copy is in the British Museum.¹

The copy of the French *Fierabras* which I have used for comparison with the English translation, is that preserved in the Royal Library (Press mark, C. 6, b. 12). It is a folio volume of 115 leaves, without title-page. Woodcuts are freely introduced. On the back of sign. A i. is a large one representing Fierabras on horseback, and another on O 5 representing Charlemagne on his throne, and surrounded by his douzepères. The preface begins on A ij, the index on A ij b, and the text on A vj. The colophon runs: "Cy finist Fierabras. Imprime a genesue Par maistre Loys Garbin bourgeois de la dicte cite. Lan mil cccc. lxxxiiij. et Le xiiij iour de moys de Mais. Deo gracias. Amen." The woodcuts are in many cases most comical: perhaps the most ludicrous are those which are intended to represent Floripas killing Britamont, and Richard swimming the torrent of Flagot. In one in which the sacred relics are shown, only three nails appear, and in two others the Saracens are represented as bombarding the tower of Aigremont with cannons.

In a few instances the same cut is employed to represent two incidents of a similar character. Thus that representing Oliver before Balan is also used for Guy before the Sultan.

In his translation, Caxton has followed his original so closely and even slavishly, that at times it is difficult, if not impossible, to understand his meaning without a reference to the language of the original. Frequently he has used the very words of the French author, and still more frequently he has merely given them an English dress. Caxton probably is responsible for the introduction of more French words into our language than any other writer.

In his epilogue Caxton tells us that he undertook the rendering into English of this *Lyf of Charles the Grete* at the instigation of "a good and synguler frend, Maister wylliam daubeny, one of the tresirers of the Iewellys of the noble and moost crysten kyng, our naturel and sonerayn lord late of noble memorye kyng Edward the fourth." I have endeavoured to identify this Sir William Daubeny,

¹ See *Sir Ferumbras*, Introd. p. vii.

and to ascertain the nature of the duties pertaining to his office as keeper of the jewels. As to the latter—

The copy of the *Liber Niger Domus Regis Anglie*, believed to be that of Edward IV. in the Harleian MS 642, has the following section on leaf 49, &c. on the Keeper of the Jewels, his clerk, yoman, groom, chariot, &c.

Office of Jewellhouse

hath an Architector callid Clarke of the Kinges or keeper of Joyalx, or Theasaurer of the Chambre: this officer taketh bui Indenture betwixt him and the Kinge, all that he findes in his office of gold, siluer, pretious stones, and the markes of euery thinge. Alsoe he receaueth the yearely guiftes by Record of the Chamberlaine. Item he receaueth by Indenture of the Thesaurer of England, And by ouersight of the Chamberlaine sitting in the Kingis Chambre or in the hall with a person of like seruice, And for his Chambre at night dimidium cheate loafe, one quart wyne, one gallon of ale; And for winter Liurey, one perche de wax, one candle wax, two candels paris, one dimidium tallwood, and present in Court vij^d. ob. [*leaf 49 back*]. In Checkerrolle and cloathing with howsold for winter and sommer, or of the Countinghouse xl^s.: his Liurey is as Knightes, and if he be sieke, he taketh in eating daies like the Squires for the bodie when they bin lett blood or sieke, &c. Also in this oflise is a clarke vnder him in the hall eatinge, taking for his liurey at night, dimidium gallon ale, one candle paris, dimidium tallwood, shide and cloathing by the Countinghouse, or yerely twentie shillinges. And if he be sike, he taketh for all day one loafe of bread, one messe of gret meate, dimidium gallon ale. And for this office a yoman eating in the hall with yomen of Chambre, taking for his wages in the Countinghouse, if he be present, allowed by the Checkerrolle, threepence; And cloathing with the housold winter and summer for chanches and all other part, or eightene shillinges, besides his reward of the Jewellhouse for sure and diligent keeping of the Kinges Joalxe yerely &c. And if he be sieke, he taketh such Liurey as doth the Clerke. Also in this office a groome eating dayly in the office, taking for his liurey one loafe, one messe of grete meate, dimidium gallon ale: And he setteth in the Liuries [*leaf 50*]. For this office in season, one candle wax, two candels paris, one tallwood dimidium, And Rushes and litter for this office all the yeare of the Sergeant Vsher of hall and Chambre. Also this groome fetting nightly for this office one gallon of ale: he helpeth to trusse and beare to the Charriott, and awaiteth thervpon the safeguard; and the yoman also to attend vpon this carriage. And this office hath also lodginge in the Countrie towne for all these horses and seruantes

suffisauntly by the herbergier. And the chiefe of this office to haue into this Court two waiters, and the Clerke one honest seruant. The remenant goo to theire lodgeing in the Countrey. And the yoman and groome haue one seruant. And for this office is assigned a Charriott with seauen horses and all there apparell, horse-meate, shoocing, and the yomen and groomis wagis therfore, foundyn of the charge of Thesaurer of housold to carrie the stuff of the Kinges in this office, and none other mans, by the ouersight of the Controller, betwixt the Thesaurer of housold, and this officer, be many interchaunges of siluer vessell, hoole and brooke, receaued or deliuered by officers by Indentures &c. As it will appeare in [*leaf 50, back*] The Accompt of housold. And as for other thinges touching this office, behold in the title *De Oblationibus*¹ *Regis* capitulid before. all thinges of this office inward or outward, cometh and goeth by the knowledge of the Kinge, and by the Chamberlaines Record. Also if any Knight or Squire presume to weare the Kinges liuerey, but if he come ther by authoritie, or ellys by record in this office./

The maister
two seruants,
the Clerke
one seruante.

A Charriot
with seauen
horses.

Thanks to the kindness of Mr. Selby of H.M. Record Office and Mr. Furnivall, I have been enabled to identify Sir W. Daubeney, and to give some interesting particulars relating to him. We first meet with his name in 1480-1, when he was appointed Searcher in the Port of London.² The substance of the Patent Roll is as follows :

¹ Vide de hoc antea: folio. 15. b. [On Gifts by the King in charity, &c.]

² The following note is derived from a bundle of Searchers' Accounts for the period:—

[*Ancient Miscellanea*. (Exch. Q. R.) Searchers' Accounts. Bundle 692. J. P. R. 2110.]

1—6 } London.—Account by John Lyn who was appointed by
Hen. VII } letters patent dated 22 Sept. 1 Hen. VII. Searcher in the
port of London, to wit, from 22 Sept. / to Mich. 6 Hen.
VII., William Dawbeuey late Searcher. / membrane.

This Account extending over five years and 8 days gives the sum received as *nil*.

This record states the duties to be—"ad explorandum per se in propria persona sua, et non per substitutum, omnes naues et batallas extra regnum Anglie traueantes, et ad idem regnum venientes in portibus et locis predictis [*i. e.* in portu Civitatis Londonie], et ad scrutinium faciendum de omnibus navibus et batellis hujusmodi, et de personis de quibus sinistra suspicio haberi poterit, quod lane, pelles lanute, coria, panni, aut mercimonia custumabilia non cokettata nec custumata in eisdem navibus, aut aurum vel argentum in pecunia numerata, aut masa vel plata seu focalia carcata seu posita fuerunt; vel si aliquę persone bullas litteras instrumenta vel processus vel aliqua alia Regi vel suditis Regis prejudicialia infra vel extra regnum Regis predictum, detuleri contra proclamaciones et inhibiciones ex parte Regis inde factas, Habendum et occupandum officium predictum quamdiu Regi placuerit, una cum medietate forisfacture predictę."

9 Novr, 20 Edw. IV, 1480. Memb. 21. Appointment of Wm. Daubeney as Searcher in the Port of London & other places adjoining the same, with the usual fees & emoluments, & also the half of all forfeit, was seized to the King's use. His substitute or substitutes may act for him.

About the same time in a "Roll of Accounts, Michaelmas, 20 Edw. IV," there is an entry that John Barker of London, Goldsmith, had received 100*l* from *William Daubeney* in part payment of 80 butts of malmsey purchased by him for the use of the King's army.¹

In 1483-4 he was re-appointed to the office of Searcher of the Port to Richard III. In the Patent Roll his previous appointment to the same office under Edward V. is referred to, and he is further described as Clerk of the Jewels. In the Calr. of the Patent Rolls, Ric. III. Appx. to 9th Report of Deputy Keeper of Records, p. 34, the following particulars relating to Sir W. Daubeney are given :

1 Ric. III., p. 2, 1483-4. Membrane 20 (4) 16 Dec. Appointment of *William Daubeney*, clerk of the jewels, as searcher in the port of London, with a grant of half of all the forfeitures, in as full a manner as William Merston, esq. enjoyed the same : which office the said *William Daubeney* fills by virtue of a patent of Edward V. the bastard [entry 39], *ib.* p. 39, Membrane 7 (19).

11 Mar. Release to *William Daubeney* (or Dabeney), searcher in the port of London, of all arrears of accounts, &c. to 6 March last [entry 133].

ib. p. 42, Membrane 2 (24).

8 April. Appointment of John Wode, knt, Treasurer of England, Robert Brakenbury, Constable of the Tower of London, Master William Lacy, Master *William Daubeney*, and Master *Robert Ryllon*, as Commissaries General in the office of the Admiralty in England. . .

ib. p. 67, Memb. 17 (9). 1 Ric. III, p. 4, 1483-4.

24 April. Grant to William Dawbeney, clerk of the jewels to Edward IV., of an annuity of 10*l*. out of a farm in Watford (Northampton), (2) by the hands of Eustace of Burneby and Matill his wife, to hold the same until the gift, for life, of an office of 20*l* yearly value ; further grant in survivorship to the

¹ Exchequer Issue Roll, Hen. III. to Edw. VI. ed. F. Devon, Appendix, p. 500

said *William Daubeney* and Joan his wife of an annuity of 20 marks, the former patents of 22 June, 21 Edw. IV. (p. 2, m. 12), and 1 May,¹ 21 Edw. IV. (p. 1, m. 6), granting to them the said annuities, having been surrendered.

An order under the Privy Seal of Henry VII. in 1485 to the Treasurer and Chamberlaine of his Exchequer orders them to allow to his "beloved cousin John, earl of Oxenford," the sums of 100 marks and 100£ out of his purchase-money of 800 marks for the manors of the late Wm. Alyngton during his son's minority, and the marriage of this son: This, because the Earl had paid 100 marks to Rich. Gardynere, alderman of London, "for so moche money by the said Richard Gardynere late lent unto Richard, duc of Gloucester, late, in dede and not of righte, kind of England, upon pledge of a salt of gold with a cover. . . the which salt . . . was delivered unto the said Richard Gardynere by one, *William Daubeney, knight, keeper of the jewels with the foresaid pretended king* . . . and also the summe of c. li. parcell of xxiiij^s . li. by the said late pretended king borrowed of the maire and aldermen of our said cite of London . . . and for suertie and contentaciom of the said xxiiij^s . li. the said late pretended king laide in plege to the said maire and aldermen a coronalle gold garnished with many other grete and riche jewels, as by a bille endented betwix the said maire and aldermen, on that one partie, and the foresaid William Daubeney, then keper of jewels of the said pretended king on that othre partie thero made, more plainly doth appere."²

In Sept. 1484 we find the following orders: "Parcelles of clothing [&c.] to be delivered by the said bishop to the said erle [of Desmond]. . . . Item, a nother lettre direct to Mr. *William Daubeney*, clerk of the kinges juelles, to delivere unto the said bisshop for the said erle of Dissemound, a coler of gold of xx^{ti} oz., xxx^{ti} li.—Letters and Papers t. Rich. III. & Hen. VI, ed. Gairdner, Rolls Series, 1861, p. 713.

There is no William Daubeney's will of Caxton's time at the Probate Office, but the following items culled from various sources appear to refer to Caxton's friend, and his family:

Dame Joan Dawbeny, wife of Sir Wm. Dawbeny, was buried at the Augustine Friars Church, Broadstreet Ward, London, [no date given].³ John, son and heir of Sir Giles Dawbeny, is buried in the same church.

¹ 1 March: in the patent roll of 21 Edw. IV.

² *Memorials Illustrative of the Reign of Henry VII.*, p. 214. (Rolls Series.)

³ Stowe's *Survey of London*, 1633, p. 186, col. 2.

Sir Wm. Stanley, William Dawbeney late of London, gentleman, & others were attainted of treason for rebelling against Henry VII. Act of Attainder in the *Rolls of Parliament*, vol. 6, p. 503.

Mr. Walter Rye says that this may be the same man as Sir William, because, in an official document like the above, the title of Knight conferred by the usurper, Rich. III, would probably not be acknowledged. (But compare the order under the Privy Seal in 1485, on the preceding page.)

Mr. Rye also thinks our Wm. D. was connected with the Norfolk Dawbeney. In Blomfield's *Norfolk*, Wm. Dawbeney, of North Burlingham, after 1428 bought a property which his grandson Thomas sold in 1528.

The Series of English Charlemagne Romances will be completed by the issue next year of the romances of *Roland and Vernagu* and *Sir Otuel*, from the Auchinleck MS., and the curious poem of *Rauf Coilgear* from the unique printed copy.

SIDNEY J. HERRTAGE.

Mill Hill, N.W., October 1881.

The Lyf of the Noble and Crysten Prince, Charles the Grete.

[CAXTON'S INTRODUCTION.]

¹ **S**Aynt Poul, doctour of veryte, sayth to vs that al
thynges that ben reduced by wrytyng ben wryton
to our doctryne, And Boece maketh mencion that the
4 helthe of euery persone procedeth dyuerceley. Thenne
sythe it is soo that the cristen feyth is affermed and
corrobered by the doctours of holy chyrche, Neuertheles
the thynges passed dyuersley reduced to remembraunce
8 engendre in vs correction of vnlaful lyf. For the
werkes of the auncient and olde peple ben for to gyue
to vs ensauple to lyne in good & vertuons operacions
digne & worthy of helth, in folowyng the good and
12 eschewyng the euyl. And also in recountyng of hys
hystories the comune vnderstandyng is better content
to the ymagnacion local than to synple auctoryte to
which it is submyssed. I saye this gladly, For oftymes
16 I haue been exeyted of the venerable man messire henry
bolomyer, chanonme of lausanne, for to reduce for his
playsyr somme hystories as wel in latyn & in romaunce
as in other facion wryton, that is to say of the ryght
20 puyssaunt, vertuons, and noble charles the grete, kyng
of fraunce and emperour of Rome, Sone of the grete
Pepyn: And of his prynees & barons, As Rolland,
Olyuer, and other, touchyng ²some werkes haultayne
24 doon & commysed by their grete strength & ryght
ardaunt courage, to the exaltacyon of the crysten fayth

Since, as St Paul
says, "all scrip-
tures are written
for our learning,"

and the lives of
the ancients give
us an example
how to live,

I have, at the per-
suation of the
venerable Canon
Henry Bolomyer,

translated this
history of
Charlemagne and
his douzeperes

¹ sign. A ij.

² col. 2.

and to the confusyon of the hethen sarazyns and mys-
 creaunts, whiche is a werk wel contemplatyf for to lyue
 wel. And bycause the sayd henry Bolomyer hath seen
 of thys mater and the hystoryes dysioyned wythoute
 ordre, therfore at his request, after the capacitye of my
 lytel entendement, And after thystoryes and mater that
 I haue founden, I haue ordeyned this book folowyng.
 And it myght soo haue ben that yf I had ben more
 largely enformed and al playn I had better made it, For
 I haue not sayd ony matere, but I haue therof ben
 enformed, Fyrst by an autentyke book named myrroure
 hystorial, as by the canonnes and somme other bookes
 whiche make mencyon of the werke folowyng. And
 by cause I may haue a lytel parte of honourable founde-
 ment I shal touche of the first eristen kyng of fraunce.
 For the moste parte of this book is made to thonour of
 the frenssh men and for prouffyte of every man, and
 after the desyre of the redar and herer there shalle be
 founden in the table all playne the mater of whyche
 the persone shal haue desyre to here or rede wythoute
 grete at[n]dacyon, by the playsyr of god, to whome I
 submytte al myn entente to write no thyng that ought
 to be blamed ne but that it be to the helthe & sauacion
 of every persone.

24

As I have before
 printed the Lives
 of Arthur, and of

Godfrey of
 Boulogne,

I now print this
 that all may be
 able to read it in
 our mother-
 tongue.

THenne for as moche I late had fynysshed in en-
 prynte the book of the noble & vctoryous kyng
 Arthur, fyrst of the thre moost noble & worthy of crysten
 kynges, and also tofore had reduced into englysshe the
 noble hystorye & lyf of Godefroy of boloyne kyng of
 Iherusalem, last of the said iij worthy, Somme persones
 of noble estate and degree haue desyred me to reduce
 thystorye and lyf of the noble and crysten prynce
 Charles the grete, kyng of fraunce² & emperour of Rome,
 the second of the thre worthy, to thende that thystoryes,
 actes, & lyues may be had in our maternal tongue, lyke
 as they be in latyn or in frensshe. For the moost

¹ A ij. back.

² Ed. fraunce.

- quantyte of the people vnderstonde not latyn ne frensshe
 here in this noble royame of england. And for to
 satysfye the desyre & requeste of my good^l synguler
 4 lordes & special maysters and^l frendes I haue enprysed^l
 and^l concluded in my self to reduce this sayd^l book in to
 our englysshe, as all alonge and^l playnely ye may rede,
 here, and^l see in thys book ¹here folowyng, besechyng
 8 al them that shal fynde faute in the same to correcte and^l
 amende it, And also to pardone me of the rude & symple
 reducyng^l, and^l though so be there be no gaye termes,
 ne subtyl ne newe eloquence, yet I hope that it shal be
 12 vnderstonden, & to that entente I haue speccially
 reduced^l it after the symple connyng^l that god hath lente
 to me, wherof I humbly & wyth al my herte thanke
 hym, & also am bounden to praye for my fader and^l
 16 moders soules that in my youthe sette me to scole, by
 whyche, by the suffraunce of god, I gete my lyuyng^l I
 hope truly. And^l that I may so do & contynue I byseche
 hym to graunte me of his grace, and^l so to laboure and^l
 20 occupye my self vertuously that I may come out of dette
 & dedely synne, that after this lyf I may come to hys
 blysse in heuen. AMEN.
- 24 ¶ ²Here begynnen the chapytres & tytles of this
 book folowyng^l nombred for to fynde the more lyghtly
 the mater therin comprised.
- ¶ Here begynneth the first book whyche conteyneth
 28 thre partyes by the chapytres folowyng declared.
- ¶ The fyrst partye of the fyrst book conteyneth v
 chapytres & speketh of the begynnyng^l of fraunce and^l
 of kyng^l Cloys.
- 32 Of the kynges of fraunce paynyns vnto kyng^l cloys
 the first crysten kyng^l : capitulo primo
 How kyng^l cloys beyng a paynym had^l to wyf
 clotildis doughter of the kyng of bourgoyne & meruayl-
 lously : capitulo ij

And I ask all my
readers to pardon
any imperfections
in the work,

which I have done
after my simple
learning,

for which I bless
my f ther and
mother, who sent
me to school.

The contents of
this book.

of book i.

Pt I contains v
chapters.

Of the first kings
of France.

of King Cloys.

¹ col. 2.

² A iij.

Of the conversion of Cloys by his wite,	How the kyng was admonested of the quene clotildis affectuously that he shold byleue in the cristen fayth & other maters : ca.	iiij
	How kyng Clois was vycetorious on his enemyes by- cause he byleued in Ihesu Cryst : ca.	iiij
and of his baptism,	How the kyng was baptysed by saynt remyge, & in his baptesme was brought by myracle the holy ampulle by an aungel fro heuen wyth whyche all kynges of 8 fraunce ben enoynted at Raynes : capitulo.	v.
Pt II contains v chapters,	¶ The second partye of the book conteyneth v chapytres & speketh fyrst of kyng ^e pepyn & of Charle- mayn hys sone.	12
Of King Pepin,	How Pepyn by hys prudence ¹ was chosen kyng of frau[n]ce whan the lygne of Cloys faylled in sucession : capitulo	primo
How Charles was made Emperor of Rome,	Of kyng Charles whyche made many constytueyons 16 wyth the pope Adryan and how he was made emperour of Rome : ca.	ij
Of his figure,	Of the corpulence of kyng charles and of the manere of his lyuyng : capitulo	iiij 20
children,	To whome the kyng ^e Charles & his chyldren sones & doughters were dedyed : capitulo	iiij
and pursuits,	Of the studye of kyng Charles, & hys lyuyng ^e and charytable werkes, and other maters : ca.	v 24
Pt III contains iii chapters,	¶ The thyrde partye of the fyrst book conteyneth iiij chapytres, & telleth how by deuyne reuelacyon Charles delyuered the holy londe from the hondes of the hethen and myscreauntes, and conteyneth thre chapytres.	28
How Charles helped the Patriarch of Jerusalem,	How the patryareke of Iherusalem sente to charles that he shold gyue to hym socours after that he was caste onte by the turkes : capitulo	primo
	How Charles with a grete companye went for to 32 conquere the holy londe & other maters : ca.	ij
and brought home the holy relies,	Of the relyques whyche themperour Charles brought fro constantynoble & fro the holy londe, & of myracles there doon : [ca.]	iiij

- ¶ Here begynneth the ij book whyche conteyneth
thre partyes by chapytres *ensyewing* declared.
- ¶ The first partye of the second ¹book conteyneth
4 xvj chapytres and speketh of the bataylle bytwene
Olyuer and Fyerabras, a meruayllous gyaunt.
- ¶ How in a place named Mormyonde Charles
ensyewed his warre ayenst the paynymys, after a lytel of
8 the prologe : ca. primo
- Of fyerabras how he came to exereyte charles :
capitulo ij Of Fierabras [Ferumbras].
- How Rychard of Normondye sayd to themperour
12 what maner man was Fyerabras : capitulo iij
- The answer of Rolland to themperour ouer sodeynly :
ca. iiij Dispute between
- How kyng charles & Rolland ben reprysed by
16 thauctour & excused somewhat vpon the debate afor- Charles and Ro-
sayd : capitulo v land.
- How Olyuer was dysposed to fight ayenst fyerabras
notwythstondyng that he was hurt : [ca.] vj How Oliver,
against the wish
of his father,
undertook to fight
with Fierabras.
- 20 How Olyuer was requyred by hys fader that he
shold not fyzt with the geaunt, but for al that he went
forth : capitulo viij
- How Olyuer spake fyrst to fyerabras, whych set no
24 thyng by hym, with other desputacions. viij
- How after many dysputacions olyuer ayded fyerabras
to arme hym, and of the ix meruayllus swerdes, & how
Olyuer named hym self by his propre name : [ca.] ix
- 28 How Olyuer & fyerabras began to fyght, and of the Of the fight,
prayer of Charles for Olyuer, and other maters : capitulo x
- How Olyuer made hys prayer ²to god whan he felte
hym hurte : Capitulo xj
- 32 How after a grete bataylle Olyuer gate the bame & and of the hottles
dranke at his ease, & how he dyd whan his hors was of holy balm.
- slayn : capitulo xij
- How fyerabras & olyuer fouzt togyder on fote mer-

¹ A iij, bk.² col. 2.

mayllously, & the prayer that charles maad for Olyuer :
capitulo xiiij

How Oliver over-
came Fierabras, How at this bataylle fyerabras was vaynquysshed
by Olyuer after that he had recouerd one of the swerdes 4
of Fyerabras. [ca.] xiiiij

How Fyerabras beyng vaynquysshed bylened in godk,
and how he was borne by Olyuer, & how Olyuer was
assayled of the sarasyns & tormented : ca. xv 8

but was himself
taken by the
Saracens, How Olyuer was taken & hys eyen blynfeld pye-
tously, which coude not be socoured by the frensshe
men : capitulo xvj

Pt II contains
xvij chapters, ¶ The second partye of the ij book conteyneth xvij 12
chapytres, & speketh of the torment of the barons of
fraunce & how they that were not taken went for to
speke to ballant thadmyral.

¶ How fyerabras was founde by Charles and after 16
baptysed & heled of his woundes : ca. j

How Oliver was
thrown into
prison, How Olyuer and hys felowes were presented to ballant
thadmyral and cruelly passyoned by pryson : capitulo ij

Of the pryson where the frensshe men were lodged 20
and how they were vysyted by fayr Florypes, ¹ doughter
of thadmyral, & of the beaulte of hyr : capitulo² iiij

and after released
by Floripas, How the frensshe men were had oute of pryson and
vysyted by the fayr floripes, & of the beaute of hyr 24
chambre : capitulo iiij

Of the messengers
sent by Charles
and Balan, How kyng charles sent to ballant thadmyral vij
peres of fraunce, whyche wold not gladly haue goon
thyder : capitulo v 28

How thadmyral sent xv kynges sarasyns to charles
to haue ageyn Fyerabras, the whyche were recounted by
the peres of fraunce & put to deth : ca. vj

Of the Bridge of
Mantribe, Of the menayllous brydge of mantryble, of the 32
tribute that must be there payed for the passage, & how
with fayr wordes the frensshe men passed ouer. [ca.] vij

How the barons cam & spake to thadmyral, and
what message they made to hym : capitulo viij

¹ A iiiij.

² *Ed.* tapitulo.

- How by the moyen of Floripes al the frensshemen were sauē & lodged to-gyder & knowen by her, & resonned & of the reliques shewed to them, & other
 4 maters : capitulo ix How Floripas saved the French knights.
- How lucafer, neuewe of thadmyral, vyolently entrede in to the chambre & after was slayne by duc naymes in blowyng^t of the cole : capitulo x Of the death of Lucifer,
- 8 How by the counceyl of floripes the frenssh men dyslodged thadmyral fro his paleys strongely by grete bataylle, & how by enchauntement a gyrdel was taken¹ fro his doughter : capitulo xj and the capture of the castle of Aigremont,
- 12 How the barons were assyeged in that toure with floripes and her maydens whiche suffred grete hungre, & how the goddes were by them confounded : ca. xij which was besieged by Balan.
- How the peres of fraunce came oute of the toure, & 16 what grete batayll they made in which they mette & recountred xx sommyers with vytaylle : capitulo xij Of the capture of Guy,
- How guy of burgoyne was taken with the sarasyns, beten vylaynously & examyned of ballant thadmyral, 20 & the complayntes that floripes made for hym, & other maters : capitulo xiiij and his rescue.
- How the paynems had purposed to haue hanged guy of burgoyne, seyng^t the crysten men, whyche socoured 24 hym puyssantly. [ca.] xv
- How the peres of fraunce tofore sayde were purueyed of vytayl, & after restored, & after assyeged, & fougt with the paynmys xvj
- 28 How the toure was brente & a quarter fyl down by enchauntement, & how the frensshe men were in grete peryl of deth & restored by assault that they made vpon the paynmys : capitulo xvij Of the burning of the tower by Balan.
- 32 Here begynneth the thyrd parte of the second book the which conteyneth xvj chapytres & speketh how the barons of fraunce² made to them socours, and the paynems confused & destroyed.

Of the moeyon of the peres of fraunce for to sende

¹ col. 2.

² *Ed.* fraunce.

- How the French determined to send Richard to Charles for help. and shewe ¹theyr assayres vnto kyng Charles, & how rychard of Normondye was ordeyned for to goo to hym: capitulo primo
- Of the death of Clarion. How after that Rychard was departed the kyng^t 4 claryon, the ryght puyssaunt kyng, rode after hym, the whiche was slayn by the sayd rychard valyauntly, & other maters: capitulo ij
- How the hors of rychard cam & retorne^d thurgh 8 thexeersyte of thadmyral & was seⁿ & knowen of the peres of fraunce, in so moche that they supposed he had ben deed, & how the brydge of mantryble was kept: ca. iij 12
- How Richard passed the river Flagot, How rychard of Normandye passed the ryner of flagot by myracle by the meane of a whyte herte: capitulo iiij
- How Charles was in purpoos for to haue retorne^d 16 wythoute goyng^t ony ferther, by the counceyl of the traytre ganellon & other his felowes: ca. v
- and reached Charles. How after the complaynte of Charles rychard of normandye came to hym, which recounted the grete 20 neccesytees of the peres of fraunce & in what fere they were in: capitulo vj
- How the French army passed the bridge of Mantryble. How by the moyen & counceyl of rychard of Normandye with iij other barons the stronge brydge of 24 mantryble was wonne, not wythoute payne, & what manere man was galafre: ca. vij
- How by force of mortalyte & of batayll Charles entred into man²tryble after that Galafre was deed, not-with- 28 stondyng that alorge the traytre was contrarye to hym, & many other maters. [ca.] viij
- Of Amyot the giantess. How amyot the geantesse wyth an huge grete sythe dyd gretely hyr denoyr ayenst the cristen men, & how 32 hyr ij sones were baptyse^d, & of ballant thadmyral whan he knewe the tydynges: ca. ix
- How the peres of fraunce were assayed more

¹ A iij, bk.² col. 2.

- strongely than euer they were, and how the toure was
quasi smyten down to the erthe & after recomforted by
the holy relyques by them adoured, and other maters :
- 4 capitulo x
How the frenssh men in the toure had tydynges of
the hoost of Charles & thadmyral also, and how Ganel-
lon bare hym meruayllously whan he was sent forth
8 allone & what he dyd : [ca.] xj
How charles themperour ordeyned x bataylles, &
how they recountred the bataylles of puyssaunce of
Ballant thadmyral, where as themperour dyd meruaylles,
12 & other maters : ca. xij
How in this bataylle folowyng Sortybrant the kyng
was slayn by Reyner fader of Olyuer, and how after-
ward thadmyral dyd meruaylles and grete ennoye to the
16 frensshe men : capitulo xij
How the peres of fraunce that were in the toure cam
oute whan they sawe thoost of Charles, & how thad-
myral was taken and holden prysoner : ca. xiiij
20 ¹How ballant thadmyral for all the admonycion that
was made to hym he wold not be baptysed but was
slayn, & Floripes hys doughter was baptysed & after
wedded to guy of burgoyne, & guy crowned kyng &
24 she quene of that contre : capitulo xv
How Florypes gaf the reliques to themperour, & how
they were assayed & proued by myracle, & of the
retournyng of charles & the ende of this book : ca. xvj
28 ¶ Here begynneth the iij book whiche conteyneth
ij partyes by the chapytres folowyng declared.
¶ The first partye of the iij book conteyneth xiiij
chapytres & speketh of the warres in spayne & of two
32 grete geantes.
How saynt Iames appyered to Charles, & how by
the moyen & by the conduyte of the sterres he went in
to Galice, & what citees he there subdued : ca. primo

Of the fortunes
of the knights
besieged by
Balan,

and how they saw
Charles coming
to their aid.

How Reyner slew
Sortibrant.

Of the capture of
Balan,

and his death,
and of the baptism
and marriage of
Floripas.

Book III contains
ij parts.

Pt I contains xij
chapters.

How at the bid-
ding of St James
Charles invaded
Spain,

Of cytees gotten in spayne by Charles, & how somme
of theym were by hym cursd : capitulo ij

Of a grete ydolle whyche was in a cyte that myght
not be beten down, and of the sygnes & condycyons 4
therof : capitulo iij

and of the church
which he built to
the saint.

Of the chyrche of saynt Iames in Galyce, & of other
chyrcches that he dyd there do founde : [ca.] iiij

How after that Aygolant the geaunt had taken 8
spayne & destroyed and put to deth the crysten men
Charles recouerd it, & other maters : capitulo v

How Aigoland
challenged
Charles,

¹ How aygolant sent to Charles that he shold feably
come to hym with lytel peple to make Iuste warre, & 12
how Charles in habyte dissimyled spake to hym, &
other maters : capitulo vj

How charles accompanied with moche peple retourned
to the place forsaid & took the cite of agenne, & other 16
maters : capitulo vij

Of the vertuous operacions that charles dyd whan
he was retourned in to fraunce, & what barons he had in
his companye, and of theyr puyssaunce : capitulo viij 20

by whom he was
vanquished.

Of the tryewes of charles & of aygolant & of the
deth of his peple, & wherfore aygolant was not bap-
tysed : ca. ix ¶ Of the deth of aygolant & of his peple,
& how moche people of the cristen men were dede by 24
concupyscence of money, & the crysten founden dede
by myracle : ca. x ¶ Of ferragus the meruayllous geant,
how he bare away the barons of fraunce with out
daunger, & how afterward rolland fouzt ayenst hym : 28
ca. xj

Of Ferragus the
giant,

and his duel with
Roland.

How on the morne rolland and ferragus foughten
to-gyder, and of their desputyng of their fayth, and by
what meane Ferragus was slayn by rolland : ca. xij 32

How Charles went to cordube where as the kyng of
that place & of cibylle abode hym, & of their destruc-
tyon : ca. xiiij

- How the chirche of saint James was halowed & sacred by turpin tharchebisshop, & thother chirches ¹of spayne subgettes to the same, & of y^e pryncypal
 4 chyrches : [ca.] xiiij
Of the church built by Charles to St James.
- ¶ The second^e partye of the iij book conteyneth x chapytres & speketh of the trayson doon and made by Ganellon & of the deth of the peres of fraunce.
 8 How the trayson was comprysed^e by Ganellon of the deth of the crysten men, & how ganellon is repreue^d by thauctour : ca. j
Pt II contains x chapters.
- Of the deth of kyng marsuryus, and^e how Rolland^e
 12 was hurte wyth foure speres mortally after that al his peple were slayn and^e deed^e : capitulo ij
Of the treason of Ganellon.
- How Rolland^e deyed^e moche holyly after many maters & orysones made, and^e prayed^e to god^e moche deuoutely,
 16 and of the complaynte made vpon hys swerde durandal : capitulo iij
Of the death of Roland.
- Of the vysion of the deth of rolland^e shewed^e to tharchebyssshop Turpyne, & of the sorowe of charles, &
 20 how he complayned hym pyteously, & other maters. iiij
and how Turpin saw it in a vision.
- How olyuer was founden slayn, and^e of the deth of the sarasyns, & of the deth of ganellon whyche was hydous : capitulo v
Of the deaths of Oliver and Ganellon.
- How after the thynges aforesayd^e Charles gaf thankynges and^e preysynges to god^e and^e to Saynt Denys : And^e of the constitucions that he made in fraunce : capitulo vj
 24
- How Charles wente into Almayn where as he deyed^e holyly, ²and^e of his deth shewed^e to tharchebyssshop Turpyne, and^e of his buryeng^e Imperyally : ca. vij
 28
Of the death and burial of Charles.
- Of the recapitulacion of al this werke, and^e of hys deth at acon, & of his sepulture : capitulo viij
 32
 Thexcusacyon of thauctour. [ca.] ix
 Thenuoye of thauctour : ca. x
 ¶ Explicit

¹ A v, bk.² col. 2.

[Of the kynges of fraunce paynynms vnto kyng'
cloys the first cristen kyng: capitulo
primo]

Of the colonisa-
tion of France
by Francus, a

companion of
Æneas,

and of the kings
of France after
him.

¹ **A**S it is redde in thystories of the troians 4
After the destructyon of the noble cyte of
Troye there was a kyng¹ moche noble named²
francus, the whyche was felowe of Eneas, which,
whan he departed fro Troye came in to the regyon of 8
fraunce & began to regne in grete prosperyte: & for
the felycyte of his name he dyd compose & do edyfy a
cyte whiche he named² fraunce, & so folowyng¹ all the
regyon was called fraunce: & after, whan fraunce was 12
enhanuced & reduced to mageste ryal Priamus was the
fyrst that regned vpon the frensshe men v yere. The
second was mareurius xxxiiij yere; The iij pharamundus
regned xj yere; The iiij elodyus xiiij yere; The v 16
Meroneus x yere; The vj hildericus xxvij. yere, & the
vij was Clodoneus, the fyrst crysten kyng¹ whyche
regned² vpon the frensshe men after thyncarnacion of
our lord cccelxxxiiij yere, of whome I entende to make 20
a litel meneyon vpon hys merueyllous conuersacyon.

¶ How the kyng clodoneus paynym had' to
wyf the noble doughter of the kynge of
burgoyne: capitulo ij 24

Of Guidengus,
King of Bur-
gundy, and his
four sons.

IN that tyme was kyng¹ of the burgoybons guy-
dengus, the whiche had² iiij sones al of good
aage, that is to wete, Agabondus, the ij ²godo-
gesylus, the iij. Hyspericus, & the fourth Godamarus. 28
The fyrst agabondus replenysshed of al inyquyte
put to deth by swerd his broder hispericus and² after

¹ A vj.

² col. 2.

- henge his wyf, & put a stone aboute hyr necke & drowned^d hyr. This hysspericus had two fayre daughters, the eldest was named^d throne whom agabondus her vncle
- 4 bannysshed^d fro hys contrey & sent hir forth in habyte dyssmyled. The yonger of these ij dougters was named clotildis, whom he reteyned for hir beaute wyth hym in his hous. duryng^t thys the kyng clodoneus, or
- 8 Cloys in freysshe, beyng a paynym whyche byleued^d with his subgettes but vpon ydolles, oftymes for hys affayres sent his messagers in to burgoyne. clotyldys this fayr mayde was ofte seen of the messagers of the kyng
- 12 Cloys & by-holden affectuously, and for hir grete beaulte & dyscrecyon the sayd^d messagers notyfyed^d it to the kyng cloys, and whan thys kyng Cloys was ynough informed^d of the grete beaute & wysdom of this mayde,
- 16 whyche was crysten, he was moche curyous to sende his herawdes vnto agabondus vncle of thys daughter for to haue hyr to maryage. Duryng^t those dayes the kyng^t Cloys had a subtyl man wyth hym named
- 20 aurelyanus, which by comaundement of hys lord^k wente¹ to the place where as was thys mayde & put hym self in habyte moche poure and^d dyssmyled^d, & left his good^d habytes with his felowes in a wode & went moche
- 24 holyly tofore the moder chyrche of that place the day of a grete feste, & set hym self in the myddes of the poure peple for to receyue almesse lyke as other dyden. whan thoffyce was accomplyshed^d this mayde Clotildis,
- 28 like as she was accustomed, atte departyng^t fro the chyrche began to gyue almesse to the poure peple, & whan she came to Aurelianus she gaf to hym in his honde a pyece of golde, & anone he as glad^d & wel
- 32 contente kyssed^d hyr honde. whan this lady was in hyr chambre she began to thynke on that poure man that had kyssed^d hyr honde & sent for to seehe hym by hyr seruauant. whan he wist it he cam to hir moche

Of Clotildis,
daughter of
Hyspericus,
and of her great
beauty.

Cloys sends
Aurelian in dis-
guise to see
Clotildis.

He presents him-
self before her to
receive alms.

She sends for him,

¹ A vj, back.

and asks him
who he is,
and his object in
coming.

Aurelian tells her,
and presents the
ring of Cloys.

Clotildis says she
cannot marry a
pagan.

Next year Cloys
demands Clotildis
to wife from Aga-
bondus,

who at first re-
fuses, but after-
wards consents.

Cloys and Clo-
tildis are married.

Joyously and bare in his honde the ryng of kyng cloys
& humbly behaued hym tofore hyr. ¶ The mayde
began to say to hym; "saye to me wherfore dyssymyl-
est thou thy self lyke to the poure people." Aurelyanus 4
answerd: "Madame, knowe ye for trouthe that I am
a messenger of the noble kyng^t cloys kyng^t of Fraunce,
whiche hath sente me to you, & beyng^t enformed^t of
your beaute & wysdom desyreth you to be hys wyf & 8
for to be quene," & forthwith he ¹presented to hir the
ryng of kyng cloys the whyche she took & put it in to
the tresour of agabondus hir vnele, & sayd to the mes-
sager that he shold^t recomaunde hyr to the kyng in 12
tellyng to hym that it was not leeful to a paynym to
haue to his wyf a crysten woman. Neuertheles she
prayed hym that of al this he shold^t say noo worde, &
that she wold^t not doo but as the kyng^t wold^t. & vpon 16
this poynt aurelianus came and shiewed al to the kyng,
wherevpon the kyng cloys the yere folowyng^t sent ageyn
his messenger aurelianus to agabondus vnele of Clotildis
for to haue hyr to his wyf. whan Agabondus knewe 20
thentencyon of kyng cloys he ansuerd to the messenger:
"Say hardlyly to the kyng^t thy lord that he hath lytel
to do in desyryng^t to haue my nyee to wyf:" but the
bourgoynons wyse counseyllours, redoubtyng the puy- 24
saunce of kyng Cloys, by good^t counceyl whan they had
wel serched^t the tresour of Agabondus their kyng &
foundede the ryng of kyng cloys which clotyldis had
layed therin, wherin was grauen & portrayed his ymage, 28
wente & concluded to performe the wyll of kyng clois:
& vpon this agabondus ful of yre delynerd Clotildis to
aurelianus & he brougt hir with his peple with grete
Ioye to kyng cloys which had grete ²playsyr to see 32
thys fayr mayde. And^t forthwyth with al solemnyte
after the maner royal he espoused^t hir after the custome
of his lawe.

¹ col. 2.

² A vij.

¶ How kyng' Cloys was admonested' by the
 quene clotildis affectuously that he shold'
 byleue in the crysten fayth, and' other
 4 maters : capitulo iij

THe fyrst nyght after the espousaylles atte houre
 that the kyng' and the quene shold' slepe to-
 gyder, Clotylidis enbraceð wyth the loue of god
 8 by grete knowlege of Ihesus our lord went and said
 to the kyng': "My right dere lord, I requyre the
 that it please the to graunte to me a lytel demaunde
 byfore or I entre in to thy bedde wyth the." The
 12 kyng'e sayð: "demaunde what thou wylt For I am
 wel contente." Clotylidis thenne sayð to hym: "Fyrst,
 I demaunde, requyre, and admoneste the that thou wylt
 byleue in god of heuen Fader almyghty, whyche made
 16 heuen and erthe & that hath created the. And in
 Ihesu Cryst his glorious sone, kyng' of alle kynges,
 which by his passyon hath redemede the. And in the
 holy ghost, confirmatour and Illumynatour of al good
 20 werkes, procedyng' fro the fader & fro the sone, the
 foresayd Trynitye in one onely essen[ce], to whome
 ought to be gy¹uen al honour and all lawde & byleue.
 Byleue ye in this holy byleue and mageste and leue
 24 the ydolles made wyth mannes honde, a folysshe thyng
 and vayn, and thynke for to restore the holy chyrehes
 whyche thou hast brente. Secondly, I requyre the
 that thou wylt demaunde my parte and poreyon of the
 28 goodes of my fader and of my moder of agabond^{us} myn
 vncle whom he dyð put to deth falsely and wythoute
 occasyon, but the vengeaunce I leue to god." whan she
 had said this the kyng' answerd: ¶ "Thou hast
 32 demaundeð me a poynte & passage which is to me ouer
 strait & hard to graunte, that is that I shold' forsake
 my goddes by whome I gouern me, for to adoure one

Clotildis makes
 two requests of
 Cloys.

First, that he will
 become a
 Christian

and forsake his
 false gods.

Secondly, that he
 will demand her
 dowry from Aga-
 bondus.

Cloys begs to ask something else,

but she repeats her first request,

Cloys sends Aurelian to demand his wife's property.

Agabondus in a rage refuses to give it up,

but by the advice of his counsellors gives way.

Clotildis has a son, who is baptised,

but dies shortly after.

Cloys says it would not have died had it not been baptised.

onely god¹ of whome thou hast spoken to me. demaunde of me som other thyng² & with good hert I shal doo it." Clotildis ansuerd: "as moche as is possyble to me to requyre I supplye & byseeche the that thou wilt adoure the god of heuen maker of al, to whome onely is due al honour." the kyng made none other ansuer but sente anone Aurelyen his factour to agabondus for to haue the goodes longyng³ to the quene 8 Clotildis, & whan Aurelyen had doon his message Agabondus, replenysshed⁴ with grete Ire, ansuerd to the messenger that he shold⁵ as scone haue ¹alle his royaume as ony thyng of hym. For which cause Aurelyen said 12 to hym: "the kyng cloys my maister comaundeth the by me that thou make an answer vpon my demaunde or ellys he shalle be euyl contente." Thenne the bourgoynons helden a counceyl and⁶ sayd to agabondus their 16 kyng: "Sir kyng, gyue to your nyce of your goodes as reason wyl for it is ryght, And we knowe wel that so ought ye to doo and⁷ to take playsyr to haue good⁸ alyaunces with clois the kyng⁹ and¹⁰ wyth all the freysshe 20 peple, to thende that they renne not on vs. For the people is boystous & furious and, that werse is, wythout mynde of god" And vpon this poynte Agabondus, constrayned¹¹ to the counceyl of the bourgoynons hys 24 people, sente a grete partye of his tresour to Aurelyen the messenger of kyng¹² Cloys. In a litel tyme after the kyng cloys in vysityng his royaume The quene clotyldis was anon grete with chylde, and¹³ sone after was delynerd 28 of a sone whome she dyd do baptyse, And contynuelly requyred¹⁴ the kyng that he wold byleue as to-fore is sayd¹⁵, but he in no wyse wold¹⁶ here her ne do therafter. And¹⁷ whan the chylde was baptyse¹⁸d anone it exspyred¹⁹ 32 & dyed²⁰, wherof the kyng²¹ was euyl contente and²² sayd²³ to the quene: "yf thou haddest gyuen hym and²⁴ dedyed²⁵ hym to my goddes he were now alyue." The

¹ A vij. back. ² col. ij.

quene answerd: "for this thyng¹ I am noo thyng per-
 turbled in my courage, but I rendre & gyue thankynges
 to god my creatour by cause he hath me so dygne
 4 and worthy that it hath plesed hym to take in to his
 royalme of heuen the fyrst fruyt of my wombe." After,
 the yere folowyng she had ageyn another sone named
 lodomyrus, the whyche whan he was baptysed bycame
 8 anone so seke that it was supposed he shold deye.
 And whan the kyng¹ sawe it languyshe he beyng euyl
 contente said to the quene: "and now,"¹ sayd he,
 "it shal none otherwyse be of this chylde but as it was
 12 of that other his broder, by-cause ayenst myn entente
 thou doost thy wylle in baptysyng them." Thenne the
 quene for the fere of the kyng¹ prayed to god deuoutely
 for the helthe of hyr chylde, And anone he was
 16 guaryssed and hool.

A second son
also falls ill after
baptism,

but through the
queen's prayers
recovers.

¶ How the kyng' Cloys was victoryous of hys
 enemyes by cause he byleued' in Ihesu
 Cryste: Capitulo iiij

20 **K**Yng Cloys after certeyn tyme began to make
 warre mortal ayenst the Almayns, And so
 perseueryng the ²allemayns had victorye on
 the frensshe men in suche wyse that they were ouer-
 24 throwen & slayn. Thenne whan aurelyen sawe the
 dystrectyon of the kynges peple he began to beholde
 the kyng hys lord & sayd to hym: "Syr kyng, ye see
 tofore your eyen the mortal dystrectyon of your peple,
 28 I requyre you that ye byleue in god almyghty whych
 hath made heuen & erthe, I mene hym whome my lady
 the quene adoureth, precheth, and byleueth on."
 Whan the kyng had herde aurelyen thus speken in
 32 grete affectyon he began to lyfte his eyen vnto heuen
 and wepte moche largely, and wyth grete pyte thus

Clois attacks the
Germans,

but is defeated
with heavy loss.

Aurelian calls
on the king to be
converted,

¹ Ed. how.

² A viij.

and the king
yields to his
entreaties.

Clois having
acknowledged
himself a
Christian prays
to God for aid.

He gains a victory
over the Germans.

sayd: "O Ihesu cryst, sone of the veray god almyghty,
on whom my wyf by-leueth and wyth al hyr hert
precheth & notyfyeth hym to gyue remedye to them
that ben in trybulacyons, I byseche the of ayde and 4
socour that I may be vycoryous of myn enemyes by
experyence presently. I byleue¹ on the, and in thy
name I shalle baptise me. I haue demaunded my
goddess for to helpe me but they haue doon no thyng 8
for me, And I say they be of noo value ne of noo
comforte whan they may not helpe them that requyre
them. Wherefore to the as veray god and lord I requyre
the that I may be delyuerd by thy hye puyssaunce fro 12
myn aduer^ssaries." he thus sayeng wyth an hyghe
voys The allemayns his enemyes vanquysshed & mur-
dred began to flee in suche wyse that theyr kyng
was deed, wherefore they that abode yelded them to 16
kyng^s cloys and bycamen his subgettes and sette al that
contreie vnder hys obayssaunce & puyssaunce payeng^r
yereyly trybute. Thenne after this vycory by the
puyssaunce of god obteyned he came in to fraunce And 20
recounted alle to the quene hys wyf, how by Innocacion
dyyne and by thayde of god almyghty he had obteyned
vycorye.

¶ How the kyng' was baptysed' by saynt 24
Remyge, & in hys baptesme by myracle
was brougt the holy ampulle by an aungel
fro heuen wherof euer after all the kynges
of Fraunce been enoynted' in theyr conse- 28
cracyon atte cyte of Raynes: capitulo v.

Clotildis sends
for Remigius
to baptise Clois.

After that the quene had herde the kynge whyche
was conuerted vnto the crysten fayth for the
vycorye which he had obteyned she had grete 32
Ioye And Incontynent sent after saynt Remyge bysshop

¹ *Ed.* byleueue.

² col. ij.

of raynes, a moche holy man, whiche came to hyr for
 to preche to the kyngⁱ his saluacyon & the manere of
 the crysten fayth. & whan he was comen, after that
 4 ^{The bishop comes,} he had wel enformed the kyng, began strongly to
 and by his
 excyte the peple of fraunce to byleue in Ihesu Cryst,
 And the peple gaynsayed it not. For in knowyngⁱ the
 errour of thydolles they began al to byleue in god &
 8 say: "Syr kyngⁱ glorious, it is best that ye forsake
 thydolles and adoure the god^d Immortal whome the
 quene adoureth and preyseth & so for to do all we be
 contente." Incontynent al this was shewed to saynt
 12 Remyge, wherof he was moche Ioyous, and cam to them
 dylygently as a good^d herdman that taketh grete payne
 to kepe the sheep fro his aduersarye; and grete playsyr
 ought he to haue to come thyder, For his comyngⁱ and
 16 hys prechyngⁱ dyd soo grete prouffyte that it made the
 peple to be regenerate after thordynaunce of holy bap-
 tesme, wythoute whych no man may entre in to heuen.
 wherfore the necessaryte of the saluacion of thys kyngⁱ
 20 enlumyned of grace, dysposed^d to byleue, conioyned to
 good^d entencyon maad^d affectuously saynt Remyge to
 come, for he thought wel whan the kyngⁱ was baptyse^d
 and byleued^d in Ihesu cryst and his commaundements
 24 that al the peple subgette to hym shold^d do the same
 wyse. And whan saynt remyge was comen and had
 commyned with the kyng touchyng his salua-²cyon
 [he] began to ordeyne the place for to baptyse hym
 28 honourably, and dyd do³ paynte the hystories after
 somme poyntes of our crysten fayth moche rychely and
 repayed^d the places ryght delyceously. ¶ And on that
 other he dyd do ordeyne & founde chirches autentykly,
 32 & compose baptyzatoryes & frentes conuenably. whan
 al this was done ⁴y^e kyng was al redy to receyue the

The bishop comes,
 and by his
 preaching
 converts the
 whole French
 nation,

who urge the
 king to forsake
 idolatry.

St. Remigius
 makes prepara-
 tions for the
 baptism of Clois.

¹ A viij. back.

² col. 2.

³ Ed. to.

⁴ The words between the asterisks are repeated in the original with slight alterations, as follow: And thenne the kyng was al redy to receyue the holy sacrament of baptesme

He delivers an
exhortation to
the king.

Remigius
declares the
articles of the
Christian faith.

Clois and all his
subiects are
baptised.

A dove brings
from heaven a
vessel containing
chrisim,

holy sacrament of baptesme, to whome the frende of
god^l saynt remyge began to say by faconde manere.
¶ “Syr kyngⁱ, it is tyme that ye ought wyth pure en-
tencyon to forsake the false goddes to whome tofore 4
this tyme ye haue gyuen fayth,* whyche ben ful of al
vanyte and do no thyng but excersite of dampnacyon.
And ye ought to byleue wyth ryzt humble hert in one
onely god almyghty, the fader, the sone, & the holy 8
ghoost, one onely & pure essence, whyche hath created^l
heuen and erthe, to whome one onely ouzt to gyue
fayth and creaunce: and in Ihesu cryst his sone,
whyche for the sauacyon of humayn creature ¹wold^l 12
take humanyte couenable for to repayre thynobedyence
of our fyrst fader Adam. And that was conceyued^l in
the bely of the Virgyn marie by the werk of the holy
ghoost: whyche after was sette on the crosse and took 16
deth dolorously for to redeme vs, was buryed^l and roos
fro deth to lyf, and after ascended^l in to heuen, and
sytteth vpon the ryght honde of the fader, and fro
thens shal come and Iudge the lyuyngⁱ and deed^l. 20
¶ Also ye shal byleue in holy chyrche, our catholyque
moder, & her ordonnayre.” and whan saynt Remyge
had ynough enformed the kyngⁱ and the peple of our
fayth and byleue he baptysed^l them in the name of the 24
fader & of the sone & of the holy ghoost. And whan
he came to enoyntyngⁱ after the custome of the holy
cresme whyche noo man brought, Incontynent by the
plesyr of god^l and demonstraunce myraculous, they alle 28
stondyngⁱ,² sodeynlye came doun descendyng fro heuen
a douue slynyng, whiche bare in hyr becke an holy
ampull and lefte it in the same place where the holy
cresme was, wherwyth the kyngⁱ cloys was fyrst 32

[*printed* taptisme], To whom Saynt Remyge began by fayr
manere: “Syr Kyng, it is tyme that 3e ought of pure Inten-
cion to forsake the goddes to whome here afore tyme 3e haue
byleued on.”

¹ B j.

² *Ed.* stondyugⁱ.

- enoynted^d in grete denocyon by Saynt Remyge; whyche Ampull is presently at Raynes, of whyche holy cresse that is therein the kynges of fraunce ¹onelye been enoynted^d ones in theyr consecracyon. ¶ In that tyme were baptysed^d the systers of the sayd kyng^t and thre thousand^d men of hys excersyte, and so after all the peple of fraunce in grete Ioye and^d exaltacion of glorie.
- 8 ¶ The second^d partye of the first book conteyneth fyue chapytres, and^d speketh of the begynnyng^d of kyng^t Pepyn And^d Charlemayn hys sone.
- 12 ¶ How Pepyn by his prudence was chosen kyng^t of Fraunce when the lygnage of kyng cloys faylled^d in successyon: ca. j
- 16 **T**He book precedent maketh mencyon of kyng^t Cloys the fyrst crysten kyng^e of the lordes of Fraunce of whome the lygnage succeeded^d from heyre to heyres vnto the foure and^d twenty kyng, which was the kyng^t Pepyn of another lygnage. And^d the
- 20 Kyng^e whyche was the xxij after the kyng Cloys and of his lignage was named hildricus, the which ²kyng^t deuoute & contemplatyf wythoute cure to excersyse thoffyce royal of a kyng^e put hym self in relygyon for
- 24 to lede a solytarye lyf. ¶ In that tyme was Pepyn moche valyaunt of hys persone and^d moche noble prynee. And^d by cause that alle the kynges of fraunce haue succeeded^d of thys sayd^d Pepyn, and in especial charlemayn
- 28 his sone vpon whome this werke is comprysed^d, I wyl here begynne to treate the mater the whyche I entende superfycially to speke of, And^d lyke as the book whyche is called myrrour hystoryal compryseth. That Pepyn
- 32 the prynee on a tyme sente hys messagers to Rome to the Pope Zacharye for to haue answer vpon a demaunde, That is to wete, “whether is he more worthy to be a

with which all
kings of France
since have been
consecrated.

After the death of
Clois Hildricus
becomes king,

but gives up
the throne to
become a monk.

Pepin's demand
of Pope Zachary,

¹ col. ij.

² B j, back.

kyng or to be said a kyng whiche fo[r] pees and¹ parfyght vnyon taketh on hym grete payne & trauaylle, or ellys he that retcheth of noo thyng and² is abandonned and³ gyuen to all slouth and⁴ is onely contente to haue the name onely of kyng?" Whan the pope had⁵ herde thys demaunde he remaunded to Pepyn that he by ryght reason and⁶ veray equitye ought to be called a kyng that gouerneth and⁷ ruleth hys fayt for the comyn wele & contynueth it. For whyche ansuer & demaunde the Frensshe men by counceyl¹ ² approued consydered theyr kyng³ hyldrycus professed in a monasterye in lyf solytarye and⁴ contemplatyf, (And that not wythstond- yng⁵ ought not to be ony thyng ayenst them that lyuen solytaryly,) how wel a kyng⁶ ought not to be solytarye, For suche as is the Kyng⁷ suche is the Royame. ¶ For salamon sayth, yf the kyng⁸ be neelygent the peple wote not what to doo, And blessyd is the londe that hath a prynce noble. Alle the frensshe men beyng⁹ wel enformed of the condycions apperteynyng¹⁰ to a kyng¹¹ after an auctour that sayth thus: ¶ "The Prynce whan he is ordeyned ought not to haue horses superfluous ne make his peple more subgette than they ought to be, and¹² ought not to take but seruauntes propyre¹³ and¹⁴ necessarye wythoute superfluyte, and¹⁵ not to nour- ysshe ouer many houndes ne other beestes vnprouffyt- able but take them in mesure. ¶ And he shold¹⁶ eschewe multiplycacyon of mynstrellys, Tabouryns, commyn wynmen, lecherous men. ¶ And he shold¹⁷ not cor- rupte hys subgettes by euyl exaample. He shold¹⁸ not breke hys espousaylles, he shold¹⁹ gladly rede in bookes & shold²⁰ haue by hym peple wel letterd, And shold²¹ Iuge wythoute fauour. ¶ And tofore al thynges he shold²² adoure & serue god: he shold²³ not gladly take yestes, & ought not gladly to chaunge hys offycers."

and the Pope's
answer.

The duties and
qualities of a
king.

He should not
keep too many
horses or
servants,

nor keep bad
company.

He should be a
good husband,
fond of learning,
just,

and, above all,
religious.

¹ *Ed.* councyl.

² col. 2.

³ *Ed.* propyre.

⁴ B ij.

- Alle thys thyng wel seen emonge them for the con-
 seruacion of the people emonge the myscreauntes which
 were at that tyme, [they] wente and¹ chosen for to be
 4 kyng¹ of Fraunce the noble Pepyn, and¹ fro that tyme
 forthon the lygnage of kyng cloys regned¹ nomore vpon
 the freusshe men. And¹ he was consecrate by saynt
 Boneface, And¹ by thauctoryte apostolyque & by Saynt
 8 Stephen Pope with his ij sones Charlemayn & charles¹
 the grete was confermed¹ and¹ approuued and¹ ordeyned¹
 all the kynges of fraunce in grete benedycion to suc-
 cede fro lygnage to lygnage moost nexte. And¹ the said
 12 pope gaf his maledycion to al them that were op-
 posaunts and ayenst these thynges aforesayd¹. ¶ Thenne
 after this noble kyng Pepyn made grete warre to the
 englysshe men. And¹ after the guyse Romayn he
 16 ordeyned¹ the seruyce in the chyrches of fraunce and¹
 many other maters meruayllous wherof thonour is attri-
 buted¹ by good ryght to hym by vycторыe obteyned¹, and
 was buried¹ in the chyrche of Saynt Denys in Fraunce.
 20 And¹ lefte hys heyres hys two sones afore sayd¹ whome
 he had¹ gotten on the noble quene berte, doughter² of
 the grete Herclyn Cezar, of whome the lignage of
 romayns of germayns and¹ of the grekes haue had¹ con-
 24 currence. wherfore by good ryght in tyme folowyng¹ the
 kyng¹ Charles was chosen and¹ maad¹ Emperour of Rome.
 And¹ the sayd¹ kynge Pepyn regned xvij yere in pros-
 peryte dygne of saluacyon, and after that the broder
 28 of the sayd¹ Charles had¹ regned¹ in his partye of the
 royame ij yere he deyed¹, And¹ thenne after alle the
 gouvernement hoolly of the royame of fraunce abode to
 the sayd¹ charles as here-after shalle be more playnly
 32 shewed¹.

Pepin is chosen
king by the
French,

and consecrated
by St. Boniface.

He makes war
against the
English.

At his death he
leaves two sons,

between whom
his kingdom is
divided.

On the death of
his brother
Charlemagne
becomes sole
king.

¶ Of kyng Charles after that he had¹ maad¹
 many constytucyons wyth the Pope Adryan,

¹ *Ed. repeats* and charles.

² col. 2.

& how he was emperour of Rome: capi-
tulo ij

His labours in
the service of the
churche.

At the invitation
of Pope Adrian
Charles visits
Rome.

He lays siege to
Padua,

and takes it.

A general Council
is held at Rome.

THis noble Charlemayn, otherwyse called Charles the grete, the whiche for the gretenes of hys 4 body, puyssaunce, and opperacions virtuouses by merite is called grete as I haue sayd, whyche after the deth of hys brother was¹ onely kyng of Fraunce. A lytel whyle after that the Pope ²adryan regned & dyd grete dyligence to strengthe & corobere the crysten fayth in annullyng the heresyas and constytutyng ymages for representacyon of sayntes in chyrches. And te many other labours merytoryes adioyned in the 12 seruyce of god & of holy chyrche The kyng charles ayenst the myscreauntes taryed not to confounde them but had vyetorye of them in dyuers³ maners, & the pope adryan, whyche was wel enformed that thys Charles 16 was a stronge pyler of the chyrche and protectour of the fayth, sente for hym that he shold come to Rome. And whan he came to pauye there he taryed & sette hys syege and soiourned a lytel tyme, And after wyth 20 a fewe of hys people departed & came to rome. And there he was receyued affectuously and vysyted many places deuoutely. And after whan he retorned he took pauye, And whan he had all doon his playsyr 24 he retorned to Rome. And wyth the Pope adryan he assembled many bysshoppes and abbottes [to] the nombre of an hondred & liij where they ordeyned many constytucyons vpon the fayt of the vnyuersal chyrche. 28 And in that synode for the grete holynes of charles The pope and al thassystentes gaf hym power for to ordeyne bisshoppes & archebisshops ⁴in al his contrees and prouynces. And al them that so shal be ordeyned he 32 shal conferme and the rebellys that shal gaynsaye them he shal curse and theyr goodes be confysked. This

¹ *Ed.* he was.

² *B ij*, back.

³ *Ed.* dyners.

⁴ *col.* 2.

noble charles wyth hys two sones, that one named
 Pepyn & that other lowys, And the xij pyeres of
 fraunce, whyche al had promysed fydelite one to that
 4 other for to Ieoparde theyr lyf for the crysten fayth.
 In that tyme many mortal warres duryng^t the lyf of
 kyng^t Pepyn & of charles and^t after that the royame
 of lombardye was destroyed and delyuerd^t of the mys-
 8 creauntes, And^t maad^t pees not wythoute grete trauayll
 for to come from fraunce in to lombardye by cause of
 the daungerous countre. whan alle thys was termyned^t
 to hys playsyr he reduced^t alle ytalye vnder the trybute
 12 of the royame of Fraunce. In suche wyse that whan
 ytalye was thus destroyed he went to Rome for to
 gyue thankynges and^t laude to god^t moche deuoutelye
 for vycторыe that he had^t and^t for excusyon doon vpon
 16 the enemyes of the fayth. And^t there with the pope
 Adryan he maad^t many constytucyons whyche by ryzt
 equitye ought wel to be obserued^t. And after he beyng^t
 thus in Rome vycторыous hys sone Pepyn was ordeyned
 20 & consecrate kyng^t of the ytalyens, And^t hys sone
 lowys was ordeyned^t and^t consecrate kyng^t vpon guyan.
 thys doon the Romainys whyche of grete aneyaunte were
 of grete apporte after that the emperour was by them
 24 put to deth Constantyn his sone wold haue regned^t for
 themperour, whyche was not wel in the fauour of the
 senatours and^t other Romainys; the whyche beyng in this
 poynte, after that they had^t taken delyberacyon of grete
 28 counceyl, seeyng^t the grete valure and^t noblesse of kyng^t
 Charles, whyche was so parfyght in alle noblesse
 hardynesse, prudence, & other vertues as I shalle touche
 hereafter alle playne, that by consente of eueryche he
 32 was chosen emperour of Rome wyth grete loange &
 exaltacyon of Ioye Innumerable, And^t by the honde
 of Pope Leo he was crowned^t emperour with alle
 honoures that myght be comprysed^t. And^t al wyth one

After many
 bloody wars he
 reduces Italy
 under his power.

His son Pepin is
 consecrated king
 of Italy, and his
 second son Louis
 king of Guienne.

Charles is chosen
 Emperor of
 Rome.

voys gaf to hym laude and honour, And called hym
Cezar & August by a symylytude of valure in contem-
placyon of grete playsyr that they had maad hym kyng^t
of ytalyens. 4

¶ Of the corpulence of kyng Charles, and' of
the maner of hys lyung' : capitulo iij

Of the good
works of Charles
during his reign
of 33 years.

¹ Charlemayn Kyng of Fraunce after that he was
Emperour he dyd many meruayllous werkes and 8
regned emperour thyrte yere, And had themne
regned vpon the frensshe men xxxij yere. And in
the cont[r]ye of Rome he edyfyed many cytees and
restored good townes & many other thynges whyche 12
may not well be recounted by cause of his merueyllous
werkes. Neuertheles for to knowe what man he was
his werkes wytnessen : as moche as toucheth the xcereyte
of hys persone Turpyn the holy man archebysshop of 16
Raynes whych lyued that tyme and was oft tymes in the
companye of kyng Charles sayth that he was a man
wel faryng of hys body & grete of persone and had hys
syght and regarde fyers & malyeyous. ¶ The lengthe 20
of hys persone conteyned eyght feet after the mesure
of his feet, which were merueyllously long ; fatte, and
massyf was he of his sholdres and raynes wythoute
hauyng the bely otherwise than wel a poynte. The 24
armes and thyes he had ample and large : he was a
subtyl knyght & ryght wyse actyf and moche fyers, and
of alle hys membres he was of ryght grete strengthe.
he had the face deduyte in lengthe and hys berde was 28
a foot longe : ² he had hys nose reysed vpon a roundnes :
A fayr regarde and countenaunce had thys man : he had
the face of a large fote brode ; he had the eyen like a
lyon sparklyng lyke a cole by furyous regarde, his 32
wynbrowes grete. Assone as he byhelde a man in
angre eche man had of hym fere and drede in openyng

According to
Turpin

Charles was
more than 8 feet
high, stout,
broad-shouldered,

and large of limb,

with a beard a
foot long.

His face was
long and fair :
his eyes bright
and sparkling.

¹ col. 2.

² B iij, back.

- his eyen. The gyrdle of whyche he was gyrde was viij
fote longe wyth-oute that that henge doun fro the bokle
to the pendaunt. whan he took hys repaast he was
4 contente wyth lytel brede, but as touchyng the pytaunce
he ete at his repaast a quarter of moton, or ij hennes,
or a grete ghoos, or a grete pestel of porke, or a pecok,
or a crane, or an hare all hool: he dranke wyn sobrelly
8 wyth a lytel water therin. Of hys strengthe is not a
lytel thyng to speke of, For he wold smyte a knyght
armed wyth one stroke of a swerde and cleue hym from
the coppe of the hede doun to the sadel. And yf he
12 had bytwene hys handes iiij hors shoen wyth oute
ouermoche proung¹ hys myght he wold ryzt them oute
and breke them in pyeces. And more ouer wyth one
hande he wold take a knyght al armed and lyfte hym
16 vp to the heyght of hys breste lyghtly. And he had
in hym thre thynges moche honourable: Fyrst, in
yestes ye¹uyng he was ryght large, lyke vnto Tytus
themperour sone of Vaspasianus, which was so prodylal
20 that it was not possyble to hym to gyue that whyche
he promysed. And whan it was demaunded why he
promysed thyng that he myght not gyue, forthwyth
he answerd that a persone ought not departe fro a prynce
24 desolate ne heuy, nor with-oute to obteyne somme
thyng. Secondly, Charles was so sure in Iugement
that no man coude reprehende hym, and also he was
pyetous & mercyful vnto cristen men after the qualyte
28 of the persone & the occasyon of the trespaas. And,
thyrdly, in his wordes he was moche wel aduyse¹:
whan he spake he thought strongely on that he sayd &
whan one spake to hym he remembred the manere for
32 to compryse thientenyon of the spekar.

His waist was
8 feet round.

At his dinner he
could eat a
quarter of
mutton, or a
goose, or a
peacock, or a
hare.

His strength
was wonderful.

He could lift an
armed knight
with one hand.

He was liberal to
all,

just and merciful,

and careful in his
language.

¹ col. 2.

¶ To what thyng kyng Charles hys sone and
hys doughters were Instructe and' taughte
to doo : capitulo iiij

DAme bertrode moder of Charles ful of grete scy- 4
ence in grete prosperyte of lyf and in honour
wexed olde and fynysshed hyr dayes, and
ordeyned bookes for to excersyse the artes lyberalle.
¶ Of ¹whome fyrst charles took gladly payne for to 8
estudy, And in the tyme of Infancye he maad scyence
to be taught to hys sones and doughters, and after whan
they knewe their byleue he made them to studye in the
seuen artes lyberal. And whan the sones were of age 12
for to ryde on horsback after the guyse of Fraunce he
made them to bere armes and to Iuste for texcersyse
the warre whan it shold be nede, and whan they dyd
not that he made them to hunte al maner wylde beestes 16
and dyd them to do other esbatements longyng to
chualry contynuely. After this he made his doughters
to spynne & sowe and to occupye them in other
honourable werkes to thende that by ydlenes and 20
slouth & faute of occupacyon they shold not haue
ocasyon to falle in thougt dysordynate for to haue
Inclynacyon to synne and vyce. and whan he was not
occupyed in maters of charge and weyghty he wold 24
employe his tyme in wrytyng somme newe thyng to
thende that he wold not be ydle, accordyng to the
pystle of saynt poule, whiche admonesteth vs to do
alwaye somme good, by cause þat our enemye the fende 28
holde vs not in ydlenes for to folowe his enteneyon
dampnable. And he dyd do make in his palays in
Aeon in Almayn a ²chyrche of our lady comprysed of
meruayllous beaute & moche rychely ordeyned, and 32
wrought, and in grete honour enhaunced in sygne of a
parfyght crysten man. For after that one loueth the

Charles had his
sons taught
religion, science,

joustyng,
the art of war,
and hunting.

His daughters
were taught to
spin and sew,
and other suitable
accomplishments.

Charles was never
idle, but fond of
study.

He built at Aeon
a splendid church
to our Lady.

¹ B iiij.

² col. 2.

lord and that is gyuen to hym the werkes desirous to
meue other to doo to the lord lyke as hym self and in
lyke wyse shold perseuere in the amplyfycacyon of hys
4 contreye that sythe the deth of hys fader Pepyn he
doubled by puyssaunce in the royaume of fraunce.

¶ Of the studye of kyng charles, of hys lyuyng',
of hys charytable werkes, and' other ma-
8 ters : capitulo v.

After that Charles was Instructe in gramayre &
other scyences morall & speculatyf, alwaye he
continued in them : And by ardaunt desyre
12 frequented the bookes composed vpon the crysten fayth
for to be protectour and defendour of the chyrche, the
whyche he vysyted on mornynge and on euenes & in
the nyght oftymes. and at good festes he faylled not
16 to doo gretely hys deuoyr in sacrifyses & oblacions :
And also gaf largely almesse for the loue of god, and
was alway redy to socour the poure people in the largest
wyse. For he socoured not onely ¹the poure folke of
20 his owne contreye with his hauoyr & goodes but in
many other places beyonde the see he sente golde &
syluer and vytayll after the necessitye of the place : as
in surrye, in egypt, in affrique, in Iherusalem, & other
24 contreyes : as he that sayd : "golde and syluer is not
myn." To euery man he desyred amytye and pees.
Of body he was moche ample & boystous of stature
well apparysaunt, the coppe of hys heed rounde, the
28 heeres in grete reuerence, & the vysage loyous. he had
the voys clere & of grete force, & at his souper he ete
not for the moost parte sauf rosted veneson, whyche
aboue alle other flesshe he loued and vsed at his souper.
32 Alwaye he loued redars for to rede cronycles or other
thynges contemplatyues, as he that wold as wel fede
the soule whiche is perpetuel of spyrituel fode, for to

Of the religious
habits of Charles,

his alms-giving,

both at home and
abroad.

He was large of
body, and of a
pleasing
countenance.

He loved to hear
books read,

¹ B iij, back.

especially the
De Civitate Dei
by Augustine.

He sent
commissioners to
study and report
on the state of his
kingdoms, and
the government
and laws of other
countries.

Aaron, king of
Persia, sends him
as a present an
elephant,

mayntene it in vnyon of grace toward god his maker,
as of refeceyon of the body for to conserue the lyf,
And emonge al other bookes he deltyed strongely in
the bookes of saint austyn, especcally in that whyche 4
is named de ciuitate dei. & he dranke not ouer ofte,
For at souper he dranke not but thre tymes. In somer
tyme gladly after mydday he wold ete a lytel fruyt &
drynke ones & wold goo reste hym al naked in his 8
bedde two¹ or thre houres. In the nyght he brake his
slepe foure or v tymes and walked in hys chambre.
Thus Charles perseuerd² in felicyte ryal and emperyal,
& sente oueral thorough hys empyre hys messagers and 12
grete counceyllours³ for to vysyte hys prouynces and
good townes, for to be enformed of the gouernours of
them for to do to eueriche Iustyce and reson; and
made many constytueyons & lawes accordyng to the 16
places, and commaunded them to be obserued and
kepte vpon grete payne. Semblably the sayd Charles
sente thorough al the world for to knowe ouer al the
gouernement, That is to wete, for to knowe the mer- 20
uayllous faytes that were doon in the world, And also
for to lerne the lyf of sayntes of whom the festes were
halowed and made of them bookes for tabyde in eternal
memorye. & every day he dyd doo put in wrytyng that 24
whyche he dyd, In suche maner that after the wrytyng
that he thenne fonde Were founde more than thre
hondred festes of sayntes one tyme of the yere, wherfor
he excersyeyng his spyrituel werkes he was byloued & 28
dere reputed of enery body. In that tyme Aaron the
kyng⁴ of perce for the magnyfycence of charles sente to
hym an Olyphaunt merueyllously grete for a synguler
4yeste and many other thynges precyouses. ¶ Thys 32
Charles for hys grete holynesse and noblesse was in
suche renomnee of honour and of vertues. On a tyme

¹ col. 2.

² *Ed.* perseuerd.

³ *Ed.* counceyllours.

⁴ B v.

aaron the kyng¹ of Perse sente to hym emonge other
 yeftes the bodyes of saynt Cypryan and¹ of saynt and the relies of
 several saints.
 speratus and¹ the heed¹ of saynt Panthaleon marters in
 4 to Fraunce.

¶ The thyrd¹ parte of the fyrst book conteyn-
 eth thre chapytres, and¹ speketh how by
 reuelacion deuyne Charles delyuerd¹ the
 8 holy londe fro the honde of the paynims.

¶ How the patryarke of Iherusalem sente to
 Charles for socours after that he was de-
 iecte and¹ caste oute of the Turkes: capi-
 12 tulo primo.

IT is redde that in the tyme that charles was em-
 perour of rome the patryarke of Iherusalem was soo
 oppressyd¹ of the paynims by mortall warre that
 16 vnnethe he myght saue hym self. And thus whan he
 knewe nomore what to do He had¹ in remembraunce the
 noble charles and¹ he beyng¹ enformed¹ of hys holynes,
 for socour he sente to hym the keyes of the holy sepul-
 20 cre of our lord Ihesu Cryst of Caluarye and of the
¹cyte, And wyth that he sente to hym the standart of
 the fayth as to the pyler of crystente and¹ defendour of
 holy chyrche. After thys the patryarke came to con-
 24 stantynoble vnto themperour constantyn and¹ to hys
 sone Leo & brought wyth hym Iohan of naples preste
 and¹ another whyche named¹ hym self Dauyd archeprest,
 whome themperour Constantyn sent incontynent to
 28 charles, And¹ wyth them tweyne he ordeyned¹ for to goo
 wyth them two other whyche were named¹ ysaac and¹
 Samuel, & delyuerd to them a lettre wryton with his
 owne hande for to bere to charles. And the sayd Con-
 32 stantyn had¹ wryton in one parte of the lettre thus :

“On a nyght me semed that I sawe tofore my bedde a telling him that

¹ col. 2.

The patriarch of
 Jerusalem, being
 hard pressed by
 the Saracens,

appeals to Charles
 for help.

Constantine
 writes a letter to
 Charles,

he has been ordered in a vision to call on him for help against the Saracens,

and recounting the vision which had appeared to him.

He sends the letter by messengers.

Charles is greatly affected by the letter, which he orders to be published abroad.

yonge woman moche fayre stondyng¹ ryght vp, whyche touched me softly and² sayd³ to me with swete wordes : ‘Constantyn, whan thou knewest thaffayre & doying of the paynyns whyche holden the holy londe by grete 4 affectyon, thou hast prayed⁴ god⁵ for to haue helpe. lo ! what thou shalte doo. Pouchace that thou mayst haue wyth the charles the grete kyng⁶ of the gallyens, whych is protectour of holy crystente and⁷ defendour of holy 8 chyrche.’ And⁸ after the same lady shewed⁹ me a knyght armed¹⁰ in al his body and¹¹ spores on hys heles, & had¹² ¹hys shelde rede, gyrde wyth hys swerde, & had¹³ his sleue of purple, & helde a spere moche grete, And¹⁴ 12 the heed¹⁵ of yron whyche was on hye caste in to the ayer grete flambes of fyre : & he helde in his honde a bacynet al of golde shynnyng¹⁶ and¹⁷ he was auncient, wyth a longe berde, ryght fayre of vysage and¹⁸ longe of body : 16 he had¹⁹ eyen shynnyng as ij sterres, and²⁰ hys heerys began to wexe whyte, and²¹ after was wryton : ‘O thou August that neuer refusest the comandements of god, enioye the in Ihesu Cryst, & in thy mynde alwaye yelde to hym 20 thankynge : be enclosed in Iustyce lyke as thou hast be reclaimed²² in honour. Ihesu Cryste gyue the grace to perseuere²³ and²⁴ kepe alwaye the commandements, of god²⁵ as thou oughtest to doo formerly.’” And²⁶ as it is 24 wryton themperour Constantyn in hys tyme had²⁷ delected the paynyns oute of Iherusalem seuen tymes, wherfore whan he myzt nomore he sente his messagers to kyng²⁸ Charles Whyche at that tyme was at parys. And²⁹ whan 28 the messagers had³⁰ presented the letters and³¹ he had³² seen them he began to wepe moche greuously in contemplacyon of pyte of the holy sepulcre of our lord³³ so holden of the paynyns. After this he sente for tharche- 32 bysshop Turpyn and³⁴ maad³⁵ hym to preche ³openlye the pyteous tydynge whyche were thenne presentlye comen,

¹ B v, back.

² Ed. preseuere.

³ col. 2.

the whyche wel herde and vnderstood the peple alle
generally were enclyned to goo thyder

¶ How Charles with a grete companye wente
4 for to conquere the holy lande, and many
other maters : capitulo ij

8 **A**fter that thys whyche I haue tofore sayd was
publysshed The kynge dyd do make an edyct
and dyd do crye it thourgh out al the contreye,
that every man that myzt bere armes shold be redy for
to goo wyth hym ayenst the paynims, and he that wold
not come shold be bounde for a good somme of money
12 for to hyre souldyours that shold goo. Thys doon was
neuer seen tofore in so lytel tyme so moche peple
assembled as thenne were founden. And whan they
were al departed in the name of god, full of one grete
16 fayth in grete hope to obteyne vycторыe vnder the con-
duyte of Charlemayn capitayne of the fayth. And
whan they had ryden a grete longe waye they came in
to a grete wode of buscage in whyche they myght not
20 passe vnnethe in two dayes, and yet wyth grete payne,
and Charles thought to passe it in ¹one daye : wherfore
he & his hoost entred wythin the sayd wood which was
ful of dyuers wilde beestes, as Gryffons, beres, lyons,
24 Tygres, and other beestes. whan they were thus in that
grete wode and the nyght came on they were al
abasshed & troubled wythout knowyng whych waye
they shold holde, And Charles commaunded that they
28 shold loke yf they myght see or knowe any habytacyon,
but they were ferre fro any and oute of their ryght
waye, and by force were dryuen to dyspose them to
slepe in that estate. And whan they were al in reste
32 the kyng charles beyng in his dormytorye, trustyng of
the ayde of our lord in grete deuocyon began to say the
psalter, And whan he came to the poynte that he shold

He orders all
who can bear
arms to assemble.

An enormous
army comes
together, and
they start for
the Holy Land.

They lose their
way in a forest.

Charles prays to
God for help.

say the vers folowyng "Deduc me domine in semita
mandatorum tuorum, quia ipsam volui," he sayeng thys
there came a byrde to his ere in the presence of eueriche
that were about hym whyche sayd wyth an hye voys : 4
"kyng, thyn oryson is herde." Thenne alle they that
were presente were moche troubled, and notwythstond-
yng^t al thys the kyng contynued to say the psalter
vnto "Educ me de custodia animam meam," & all thus 8
whyle he sayd the byrd began more strongly to crye
and say ¶ "O frensshe man, what sayest thou? ¹O
frensshe man, what sayest thou?" And after that the
Kyng^t and hys companye wente and folowed the byrde 12
whyche conduyted them vnto the ryght waye whyche
they had lost the day tofore, & somme of the pylgryms
sayd that after in the same contreye were suche byrdes
so doying. But whan charles & hys grete puyssaunce 16
were nyghe theyr enemyes they were moche troubled
of theyr comyng^t & the crysten lordes were gretely
reioysed of theyr comyng^t. For wythoute cessyng^t he
rested not tyl that he had recouerd the contreye of 20
crysten men and expelled alle the paynims whyche
moch redounded to hym grete honour & vycторыe.
And in retournyng^t he demaunded of thempour of
Constantynoble lycence to departe & of the other patry- 24
arkes & archepreestes. And thempour helde hym an
hole day, And for remuneracyon the sayd emperour for
thonour of kyng charles on the morne tofore the yates
of the cyte dyd do-ordeyne many bestes of dyuers maners 28
& dyuers colours, & grete quantyte of gold and syluer
and of precious stones, to thende that he shold take it
for somme rewarde for the grete good that he had doon
in theyr contreye. But assone as charles knewe therof 32
he took counceyll of hys people what he ought to ²doe
in takyng^t of the precyous & ryche yestes or to retourne
in to fraunce wythout takyng of any thyng^t, And there

A bird comes and
tells him his
prayer is heard,

and afterwards
guides them to
the right road.

Charles clears the
country of
Saracens,

and prepares to
return home.

The Emperor
collects a large
number of valu-
able presents for
him,

¹ col. 2.

² B vj, back.

vpon his barons counceilled hym that he shold take no
thyng for hys laboure, For he had doon no thyng but
for the loue of god onely : And he beyng wel content
4 of thys ansuer commaunded that noo persone vpon grete
payne shold take noo thyng of the Iewellys aforesayd.

but Charles re-
fuses to accept
any of them.

¶ Of the relyques that themperour charles
brought fro constantynoble and' fro the
8 holy londe, and' of the myracles that were
doon : capitulo iiij

WHan themperour of constantynople and the
patryarke of Iherusalem knewe that charles
12 wold take no thyng of the good aforesayd,
he was admonested that he shold take somewhat of them,
& whan he was thus constrayned he bysought them that
for the loue of god myght be gyuen vnto hym somewhat
16 of the relyques of our lord and of hys holy passyon.
Whan thys was demaunded It was commaunded to fast
euery man thre dayes for to be the more enclyned to
deuocyon and for to vvyte the holy reliques, and in
20 especyall were ordeyned xij persones by grace whych
shold¹ treate & see the relyques. Whan it came to
the thyrde day the noble Charles by grete contrycyon
confessyd hym to tharchebysshop Turpyn. After
24 that moche reuerently they beganne to synge the
letanye wyth somme psalmes of the psalter. And
there was the prelate of naples named daniel, whyche
in grete reuerence opened the coffre wherin was the
28 precyous crowne of Ihesu Cryst and there sprange oute
of the same so grete an odour that all they that were
presente thought to be in paradys. Therne charles ful
of hool and very creaunce of fayth kneled down to the
32 grounde and stratched hym on therthe, & moche
strongely prayed our lord that for the glorie of hys

He asks, instead,
for some relics of
Our Lord.

The Emperor
gives him the
sacred crown of
thorns.

¹ col. 2.

A delicious odour
issues from the
crown.

Charles deposits
the thorns and
flowers in a coffer,

where they are
turned into
manna, and
now are preserved
at St. Denys.

Three hundred
and one sick
persons are healed
by the scent of
the holy relics.

One who had been
blind, deaf, and
dumb for over 24
years,

name presently wold^d renewe the myracles of hys holy
passyon and gloryous resurrexyon.¹ & assone as he had^d
prayed^d in a moment the crowne began to florysshe, &
a meruayllous swete odour yssued^d out of the floures, 4
soo ryzt delycyous that eche man supposed^d that hys
vestementes & clothyng^t had^d comen oute of heuen.
¶ Thenne after thys daniel took a sharpe knyf kutting
wel purifyed^d to cutte the said crowne and^d in cutting^t 8
alwaye more & more the sayd^d crowne flourysshed^d and^d
the odour smellyd the more habundantly. And of the
2 floures charles put a parte in a reposytorye, and in a
lytel coffre he put the thornes of the crowne, and^d wept 12
so habundantlye that whan he wende to haue gyuen to
tharchebyssshop Ebroin the floures he wythdrewe hys
honde & supposed^d that the sayd^d Ebroin³ had^d holden
them in hys honde, & they were in the ayer houyng by 16
myracle & abode there by themself the space of a grete
houre. And after whan he had^d gyuen in kepyng^t the
sayd^d thornes to the sayd^d Ebroin he sawe the coffret in
thayer whyche was full of floures whyche abode there by 20
them self, whiche sone after were conuerted^d in to manna
and^d in that manere they ben at Saynt Denys in fraunce.
And it hath be the oppynyon of many that thys was of
the manna that god sente in to deserte to hys people. 24
Thenne were there shewed^d myracles For al seek people
that were there present were heled^d of al theyr maladyes
by the odour of the floures aforesayd^d, and the peple
that entred in to the chirche by grete vyolence of presse 28
of peple cryed^d verytably that day was a day of helthe
& resurrection, for by the sauour of tho mellyfluous
floures alle the cytee was purifyed and replenysshed of
grace: for thre hondred^d & one seek man by compte 32
were heled^d & guarissed of their maladyes. 4 Emonge

¹ *Ed.* resurrexyon. ² B vij. ³ *Ed.* Ebroin. ⁴ col. 2.

- moment¹ whan the thorne was drawen fro the crowne
 he took hys syght, and whan it was layed in ageyn he
 recouuerd his heeryng, And in florysshynge of it he
 4 was restored to his speche. ¶ After thys the sayd
 daniel took a nayll of which the precyous body of our
 lord in his passyon had be perced and in grete reuerence
 was put for a relyque in alabastre, & in takynge oute of
 8 it a chylde was heled, whiche of hys lyfte syde was
 drye and Impotent fro his byrthe & he ranne hastelye
 to the chyrche and cryed at the houre of none and said
 that he beyng in an extasye was heled and guarysshed
 12 and tolde the manere. ¶ Also there was gyuen to the
 kyng Charles a pyece of the holy crosse and the holy
 sudarye, and therwith the smocke of our lady & the
 clothe wherin our lord was wrapped, and also the arme
 16 of saynt Symeon ; and al reuerently in precyous pyxes
 & caasses he henge them aboute hys necke. and in
 passynge by a castel there was a chylde newe dede
 whom kyng charles touched with the reliques that he
 20 bare & anone the chylde was reysed to lyf. And whan
 he came to Acon in Almayne, ²whyche is a moche fayr
 cytee where as kyng charles had made his paleys moche
 fayr & ryche and a ryght deuoute chapel in thonour of
 24 our lady, wherin hym self is buryed. There atte laste
 were guarysshed & heled blynde men and seek men of
 the feures wythoute nombre & xij demonyaks, viij
 lazars of the palesey, xv of myshapen, xv crokebacked,
 28 lij of the fallyng sekenes, lxxv of the gowte, many of
 them of the same place & many of other maladyes.
 And it was ordeyned that in the moneth of Iul at
 Acon in the cyte that al peple myght come & see the
 32 forsayd relyques which kyng charles had brought fro
 Iherusalem and constantynoble. And more ouer was
 establysshed that one day of the weke of the fastynge of
 ymbre dayes and in the moneth of Iul shold be made

and a child,
 a cripple from
 his birth,
 are healed by
 the relics.

The Emperor
 gives Charles a
 piece of the cross,

and the holy
 napkin and other
 relics,

with which he
 performs num-
 erous miracles.

They are
 deposited at Acon,
 where they are
 shown.

¹ *Ed.* meuyng.

² B vij, back.

this demo[n]straunce and^t notyfyacyon. And in thys constytucion was Pope Leo Tharchebysshop Turpyn Achylleus bysshop of alexandrye And^t Theophyle of authyocke & many other bisshoppes & abbottes, whyche 4 werk was moche vertuous & ful of helthe.

¶ Here begynneth the ij book of thys present werke, whyche conteyneth thre parties by chapytres folowyng^r declared'. 8

¶ ¹The fyrst partye of the second book conteyneth xvj chapytres and^r speketh of the batayll doon by Olyuer & Fyerabras a meruayllous geaunte. 12

¶ How in a place which was called^r mormy-onde charles abode folowyng^r the warre ayenst the paynems, after a lytel prologue.

¶ The fyrst chapytre. 16

I Haue spoken tofore in the fyrst book superfycyally of the first kyng of fraunce baptysek, in descendyng^r after my purpoos vnto Kyng charles of whome may not wel be recounted the valyaunce of hym and^t of 20 hys barons, whych were named & called pyeres of fraunce. Of whome & of their behaung^r I shal make mencion after that I shal mowe conceyne by trouthe, but thys that I haue tofore wryton I haue taken it oute 24 of an autentyke book named "myrrour hystorial" and^t in auneynt cronycles, And^t haue onelye translated them oute of latyn in to frenshe. And^t the mater folowyng whyche shal be the second book is of a 28 Romaunce maad^t of thauneynt faeyon wythoute grete ordynaunce in frenshe wherof I haue been encyted^t for to reduce in prose by chapytres ordeyned, which book after somme ²and^t moost comunely is called^t "Fyera-bras," by cause that thys Fyerabras was so meruayllous a geaunte as I shal make mencyon whyche was van-

All the first book has been translated from the *Spen'um Historiale*;

the second book I have translated from an old Romance, called 'Fierabras,'

¹ col. 2.

² B viij.

- quysshed by Olyuer, And^e at the laste baptysed^e & was after a saynt in heuen. And^e in effect it spekethe of that bataylle and of the relyques conquered^e whiche
- 4 had ben taken of rome and were in the puyssaunce of the admyrall whyche was fader of fyerabras. wherefore in thys book folowyng I ne entende but onely to reduce thauncyent ryme in to prose & to deuyde the
- 8 mater by chapytres in the best ordynauce that I shal conne, wythoute to adiouste any thyng that I haue not founde in the book competent, & in lyke wyse as I shal fynde I shal reduce. And^e thys book is applyed^e to
- 12 thonour of Olyuer one partye, Not-wythstondyng that there ben many other maters. For I suppose that of eueriche of the barons pryncypal of themperour Charles whyche ben sayd^e comynly in nombre xij or xiiij, and^e
- 16 pyeres of Fraunce, whyche were capytaynes of thexcercyte and^e moche stronge and^e valyaunte of theyr persones, & were grete lordes and^e noble. But of the lordes valyaunte capytaynes were more than xiiij after that I
- 20 fynde. Fyrst there was rolland, Erle of Cenonia, sone of myllon ¹erle and^e of dame berthe propre syster of kyng^e Charles: After hym was Olyuer Erle, sone of Reyner of gennes, which Reyner was also at thexcercyte
- 24 of kyng^e Charles: After hym Rychard^e of Normandy, Garyn duck of Lorayn, Geffroy lord^e of bourdeloys, Hoel Erle of Nautes, Ogyer the danois, kyng of denmarke, Lamberd^e prynee of bruxellys, Naymes Duk
- 28 of bauyer, Thiery due of ardanne, Basyng of beneuoy, Guy of bourgoyne, Caudeboy kyng^e of Fryse, Ganellon whych dyd the treson at the ende of the iij booke at rounceyuale, Sampson duk of bourgoyne: Also there
- 32 was Ryol du mauns, Alory, & guyllermet the scot and^e many other that were subgettes to Charles. And^e not-wythstondyng^e that they were not alwaye with hym They that I haue tofore named^e were alwaye redy for to

and have only reduced the ancient rime into prose,

without adding anything.

The Peers of France, though commonly said to be 12 or 13,

were more than that number.

They were Roland,

Oliver,

Richard,

Garin, Geoffrey,

Howel, Ogier,

Lambert,

Naymes,

Thiery, Basin,

Ganelon,

Sampson,

Raoul, Aloris, and Guyllermet.

doo his commaundement. And the moost parte of them that I haue tofore named were wyth hym contynuelly.

¶ Of Fyerabras how he came to excyte thexcersyte of Charles : capitulo [j] 4

Fierabras, son of Balan, was a mighty giant. (50)

He was king of Alexandria, (53) Babylon, Russia, and Jerusalem. (66)

This Fierabras rides furiously up to the camp of Charles, (76)

wishing to find some Christian to fight with him.

THe admyral of spayne named ballan, a paynym moche grete & puyssaunt of body and of peple, had a sone ¹named Fyerabras the moost meruaylous geaunt that euer was seen borne of moder, for of 8 the gretenes & hugenes of hys body and also of his strengthe to hym was none like. the whyche was kyng of Alexandrye & helde vnder hym the contree of babylone vnto the rede see, and he was lord of roussye, 12 & of coulloygne, & more ouer vnder hym was Iherusalem, & reteyned the holy sepulcre of our lord Ihesu Cryst : & by hys grete puyssaunce entred on a tyme in to Rome where he dyd moche euyl & bare away the 16 holy crowne of our lord & the holy naylles & other relyques ynoughe, Of whome thys book shal in thende recouente how they were recouerd. And he was called Fyerabras of alexandrye, whyche after that many warres 20 & bataylles were maad in Mormyonde bytwene the paynyns and thexcersyte of Charles Thys fyerabras moche dyssolute came rydyng by grete furour for to fynde somme cristen man for to fyght ayenst hym ; & 24 came vnto the lyces of Kynge Charles moche furious and eschauffed as he shold fyght al armed and wel fournysshed of wepen, & was ryght euyl contente that he fonde no persone to whome he myght fyght, & nygh 28 vnto the lyces he went to beholde the armes of themperour charles ²whyche were of the aygle shynyng, And he sware by Mahomet his god & by his myzt that he wold neuer departe tyll he had foughten & 32 made batayll to somme crysten man. And he seeyng

¹ B viij. back,

² col. 2.

that no man cam to hym began to erye with an hye
 voys: "O kyng of Parys, coward withoute hardynesse,
 sende to Iuste ayenst me somme of thy barons of
 4 fraunce the moost stronge & the moste hardy, as He challenges
Roland or
Oliver, (96)
 Rolland, olyuer, Thyerry, or ogyer the danoys; &
 swere to the by my god Mahon that I shal not refuse
 vnto the nombre of vj or vij that they shal be receyued
 8 of me. and yf thou make to me reffuse of thys that I
 of the demaunde I promyse the that tofore or it be nyȝt
 thou shalt of me be assaylled & dyscomfyted & I shal
 smyte of thy heed as meschaunt withoute ony fayllyng;
 12 and after I shal lede with me Rolland & Olyuer vnhappy,
 meschaunt, & caytyfs. For oultragiously & follyly as euyl
 and olde thou hast enprysed to come in to thys contreye
 wherfro thou shalt haue cause hastely to departe." These
 16 wordes or semblable spoken Fyerabras wente hym vnto
 the shadowe of a tree and laye there & dysarmed hym
 of the armes of whyche he was cladde, and bonde his
 hors vnto a tree. and whan he was thus at his ease he
 20 began to erye ¹with an hye voys: "o charlemayn,
 kyng of Parys, where art thou now whome I haue
 thys day so ofte called? wythoute more lenger delaye
 sende to Iuste ayenst me rolland or Olyuer, of whom
 24 thou makest so grete counte and been so valyaunte, or
 ogyer the danoys whom I haue herde preysed. And yf
 perauenture one of them dare not come allone hardyly
 late come the two or thre or foure of the moost valyaunt-
 28 est and that they be courageous hardy and wel armed.
 And yf the four dare not come late come fyue, For
 vnto the nombre of vj of the moost valyauntest of thyn
 excersyte I shal not refuse. And I thynke not to
 32 retorne tyl they be confused and destroyed by me. for
 be ye sure that it shal neuer be to me reproche that I
 be fugytyf for ony frensshe man luyng. I haue here
 tofore put to deth by the valyaunce of my persone ten

or any six or
seven French
knights. (102)

He takes off his
arms and lies
down under a
tree, (90)

and repeats his
challenge with
threats.

He declares he has
already slain ten
kings in single
combat. (108)

kynges of grete pyssaunce, and that they coude not
resyste ageynst my strengthe in no wyse.

¶ How Richard' of Normandye sayd' to
Charles what maner man Fyerabras was : 4
ca. iiij

Charles enquires
who the strange
knight is. (115)

Assone as fyerabras had fynysshed hys wordes the
Emperour Charles whyche ¹wel had herde hym
meruaylled moche of hys langage, And demaunded 8
Rychard of Normandye what was that Turke that so had
cryed wyth soo hye a voys vpon the valyaunce of hys
persone. For kyng Charles sayd : "I haue wel herken-
ened what he hath said that he shal not fayle to fyght 12
ayenst vj of the moost valyauntest of myn excersyte."
To whome Rychard Duke of normandye ansuerd : "Syr
kyng, thys is a man meruayllous ryche and one of the
strengest borne of moder : And he is a sarasyn of so 16
grete fyerste that he ne preyseth kyng ne erle ne none
other persone of the world."

Richard tells
him. (120)

Charles swears
that one of his
knights shall
accept the
challenge, (127)

¶ Whan Charles vnderstood hym he began to clawe
his heed, And sware by Saynt Denys of fraunce that 20
he shold not ete ne neuer drynke tyl one of the pyeres
of fraunce shold goo Iuste ageynst hym, And demaunded
of Rychard of Normandye how thys Paynym was
named. ¶ Rychard answerd : "syr Emperour, this 24
paynym nameth hym self Fyerabras, which is moche to
redoubte and hath done moche harme to² crysten men.
He hath slayn the Pope, hanged abbottes, monkes, and
nonnes, and hath defiled chyrches. ¶ And he hath 28
robbed & taken awaye the holy crowne of our lord and
many other relyques³ for whome ye take grete payne.
And he holdeth Iherusalem in grete subiectyon And
the holy sepulere wherin god was buried." Wherupon 32
Charles ansuerd : "of thys that thou hast sayd to me I

¹ col. 2.

² Ed. or.

³ C j, back.

am more angry than I was, but knowe thou for certayn
 I shalle neuer haue loye tyll that my desyre be accom-
 plysshed and that he be vaynquysshed." And of that
 4 fayt al the frensshe men were commoeued and troubled
 And ther was not one that presented hym for to goo to
 hym. And whan charles sawe that noo persone was of
 courage for to goo and fyght agenst thys geaunt Fyera-
 8 bras He sayd to Rolland: "My dere neuewe, I praye
 that thou dyspose the for tassaylle thys turke & that
 thou doo there thy denoyr."

and that he will
 never rest till
 some one does
 so. (129)

Charles asks
 Roland to accept
 the challenge,
 (143)

¶ Of the answer of Roulland to the Emperour
 12 sodeynlye and' what it was: capitulo iiij

WHan themperour Charles had spoken thus cur-
 toysly vnto his neuewe Rolland, Folyly & wyth-
 oute reason Rolland answerd hym thus: "Fayr
 16 vncle, speke neuer to me therof, For I had leuer that ye
 were confused and dysmembred than I shold take
 ar-1mes or hors for to Iuste lyke as ye say. For on the
 last day that we were so nyghe taken of the paynyns,
 20 that is to say of moo than fyfty thousan, we yonge
 knyghtes bare the burthen and suffred many mortal
 strokes, of whych olyuer my felowe is quasi hurt vnto
 the deth. For yf ye had not be socoured of vs the hole
 24 destructyon had been of vs and thende: & whan we
 repayred and were in our lodgys for to take reste at
 euen, whan ye were wel drunken ye maad auaunte
 openlye that the olde and auneyent knyghtes whyche
 28 ye had brouzt wyth you for to ayde vs had moche better
 borne them in the fayt of armes and had more stronge
 bataylle than the yonge knyghtes. ¶ And every man
 knoweth wel how I was that euenyng assembled and
 32 wery of trauaylle that I took in that day. And by my
 faders soule that was euyll sayd of you. ¶ And now it
 shal be knowen how the olde & auneyent knyghtes shal

but Roland re-
 fuses, (145)

reminding Charles
 that he had
 sneered at him
 and his com-
 panions the pre-
 vious night. (148)

Charles in a rage
strikes him in
the face with his
gauntlet, (166)

Roland draws his
sword (168)
on his uncle.

Charles orders
him to be
seized, (176)

but no one dares
to approach
him, (181)

bere them, for by god whyche ought to haue al in his
subjectyon there is noo yonge man in my companye that
euer shal be in my fanour and loue yf he take vpon hym
to Iuste ageynst the Paynym." Also sone as Roulland⁴ 4
had¹ spoken that worde Themperour hys vncle hanyng
moche Indignacion therat¹ smote hym thwarte the vysage
wyth hys ryght gauntelet² that hys nose breste a blood³
habundauntly of the stroke. Thenne Roulland⁴ in a 8
grete furye sette honde on hys swerde whan he sawe
hys blood³, and had¹ smeton hys vncle yf he had¹ not be
lette by them that were presente. And¹ whan Charles
sawe thentencyon of Roulland⁴ he was mervayllously 12
abasshed¹ & sayd¹: "O god³ of heuen, who wold haue
thought that I shold¹ haue had¹ vylonye of Rolland⁴ my
neuue whyche been knytte to-gyder in one fayth ayenst
our aduersaryes? And¹ he cometh rennyng¹ agenst me 16
wyth affectyon mortal—He that is moost nexte of my
blood³ and lignage that here is present, And¹ that more
sommer shold¹ socoure me than any other! ¶ Now I
beseche God³ that on the crosse suffred¹ passyon that this 20
day he be punysshed as he is worthy." And¹ this said
in a grete furour he comaunded¹ the frensshe men &
sayd¹ to them anone: "take ye hym, for I shal neuer
ete tyl he be delyuered¹ to deth." Whan the frensshe 24
men vnderstood¹ the commaundem¹[e]nt of Charles for to
haue accomplysshed¹ it that one looked¹ vpon that other
for to see who wold¹ sette fyrst honde vpon hym. And
whan Roulland⁴ sawe the fayt he withdrewe hym a litel 28
a-parte³ wyth hys swerde in hys honde, cryeng¹ with an
hyghe voys and sayeng¹ to theym: "yf ye be wyse holde
you styll, For I make a-vowe to god³ that yf ony of you
moeue to come to me I shal make of hys heed¹ two 32
partes." wherfore there was not one that durst ne that
was soo hardy to meue ageynst hym in malyce but were
ryght sory & euyl contente of theyr debate. and there

¹ C ij.

² Ed. gaunttetet.

³ col. 2.

vpon the noble Ogier came swetelye to Roulland and sayd to hym : "Syr Roulland, me semeth ye doo not wel for to angre thus your vnele the emperour, whom
 4 by reason ye ought aboue alle other to loue and defende & also supporte." Roulland answerd, whyche thenne was refrayned of hys Ire : "Syr Ogier, I promyse you for a lytel fayt I was determyned to a grete outrage
 8 wythoute aduys and enclyned, wherof now I am sory and me repenteth."

Ogier interposes and settles the quarrel. (182)

¶ How the kyng charles and' Roulland' been
 repleued' by the auctour and' somewhat
 12 excused' vpon the debate aforesayd' : ca. v

VPon the debate of themperour and Rolland hys
 neuewe I wyll a lytyl tarye, and speke fyrst to
 1 the kyng¹ Charles, whyche haste be Instructe
 16 syth thyn Infaneye in alle seyences ful of maners digne of commemoraeyon : whiche knewest the constaunce of the auneyents and the mutabylyte of the yonge peple. why saydest thou on the euene that the auneient and
 20 olde knyghtes in the warre of that day had borne them better than the yonge knyghtes ? And thou knewest wele that Olyuer was gretely hurte by hys valyaunce, in suche wyse that he kepeth hys bedde. And also Rol-
 24 land thy neuewe had borne the grete burthen of the bataylle. And yf he had spoken folily thou oughtest to haue supported hys fyrst moeuyng¹ whiche is not in the puyssaunce of a man. yf thou haddest taken aduys
 28 at the word that sayth : "Vindictam differ donec pertranseat furor : That is to say thou oughtest to dylate thy vengeaunce tyll the furour be passed, Thou sholdest not haue smyton Rolland, Sythe whan he sayd euyl it
 32 was wythout aduys of grete dycreseyon. thou smotest hym semblably, wythout aduys he drewe hys swerde

The author's reproof of Roland and Charles.

Charles ought to have remembered the noble deeds of Roland, and his youth,

and should have restrained his anger, even under provocation.

¹ C ij, back.

ayenst the, And though thou haddest not smeton hym
 thou myghtest well haue reprehended hym of his offence.
 Thou oughtest to remembre ecclesyastes whyche sayth :
 "Nichil agas in operibus iniurie:" whan ¹a man re- 4
 ceueth wronge & Iniurye it is not good that he doo
 that whyche he may doo. And also it is whan a per-
 sone hath wel doon hys deuoyr, And of hym of whome
 he ought to haue hys thanke and preysyng^r is blamed, 8
 of soo moche the more is he euyl contente and wrothe.
 For hys fayt is reputed for nought. In lyke wyse was
 it of Rolland whyche thought more to haue be alowed
 & preysel for the grete deuoyr that he dyd than to here 12
 that the Emperour sayd that thokle knyghtes had doon
 better than the yonge. but now I wyl retorne to the, O
 Rolland, whiche hast been so noble. Fro whens cometh
 in the suche audaeyte to speke ageynst thyn vncle 16
 whyche hath allwaye doon so wel to the that hys werkes
 been worthy to be remembred? To hym which is
 emperour Kynge of Fraunce and lord of so grete cremeur,
 and to thyn vncle as taken debate and ansuerd out- 20
 rageously was it not reason that thou oughtest to suffre
 hym, and he not the? yf he smote the wyth hys gaunte-
 let by maner of correctyon oughtest thou to drawe thy
 swerde to hym? Thou hast not in remembraunce the 24
 obeyssaunce of ysaac whyche he had to hys fader: thou
 were not aduysed of thys that thapostle saith: "ye
 yonge men ²kepe your courage And put not the furour
 therof in exersite." yf the Emperour for hys dysporte 28
 preysed thanneyent knyghtes yet sayd he not that thou
 haddest not doon wel. ¶ And Saynt Poule sayth in
 hys epystle, that a man shold not repreue hym that is
 more auneyent than hym self, but a man ought to en- 32
 tretene and supporte hym as his fader. but the dede is
 suche that a persone reputeth not an Iniurye to hym
 sayd to be lytel ne yf he be hurte that he be pacyent:

Roland ought to
 haue remembered
 the respect he
 owed to his uncle,

according to the
 words of St. Paul:
 'Rebuke not an
 elder, but entreat
 him as a father.'

¹ col. 2.

² C iij.

wherfore it is good^d to thynke tofore or he speke it, And gladly to doo ne say thyng^e but yf it be good^d.

¶ How Olyuer was dysposed to fyght agenst
4 Fyerabras, notwythstondyng that he was
hurt, after many wordes : capitulo vj

8 **M**Oche wroth was Charles wyth Rolland^d hys
neuwe And say^d to hys Peres of Fraunce :
“ Lordes, O how I am in dyuers thoughtes of
my neuwe Rolland^d, whyche wold^d haue Iniuryed^d my
persone, To whome I had^d more affyaunce than to any
man lyuyng^e ! I wote neuer whome I ought to loue, ne
12 whome I ought to hate. And yet further¹ more I haue
noo man now present for to Iuste ageynst thys Paynym
that hath chalenged^d me.” ¶ Thenne aroos vp tofore
hym Naymes the Duc of bayners whych sayd to the
16 kyng : “ Syr Emperour, I praye you & requyre that ye
leue these wordes noyouses. Alle shal be wel And
another shal goo Iuste ageynst the sarasyn.” But neuer-
theles the kyng^e was in grete thought, For there was
20 none that wold^d goo ne take it on hym. ¶ Incontynente
the tydynges of the debate of charles and^d Rolland^d were
brought to Olyuer, whyche was in another place seek
in hys bedde. And also how Fyerabras was comen
24 And that there was no persone present wyth the kyng^e
for to Iuste ayenst hym. And hereupon the noble erle
Olyuer, replenysshed^d wyth a noble courage and wyth
an ardaunt desyre for to playse the kyng^e, whan he had^d
28 herde these tydynges aroos oute of hys bedde and^d began
for to scratche an^d strayne hys armes and^d to fele yf it
were possyble to hym to bere armes.

And he thus dooyng^e his woundes began newly to
32 opene that the blood^d sprange oute of the dystresse.
¶ And not wythstondyng^e alle that as he that sette not
moche therby

Charles appeals to
his knights to
settle who sh^{al}ll
accept the chal-
lenge. (190)

Naymes tries to
cheer him. (196)

Oliver hears how
none can be found
to accept the
challenge. (206)

He calls for his
arms. (210)

His wounds break
out afresh.

¹ col. 2.

For the grete loue and desyre ¹that he had to the kyng^e [he] dyd do bynde hys woundes the beste wyse he myght and after sayd to garin his squyer that he shold brynge hym hys armes, For he wold arme hym 4 for to goo Inst ayenst the saresyn. To whome garyn sayd: "syr Olyuer, in thonour of god take pyte of your owne persone. For me thynketh ye wil willynggly slee your self." Olyuer sayd to hym: "do my commaunde- 8 ment no man ought to tarye to seche hys honour and anaun cement and renom mee. And wyth good ryght I may employe my self for to serue my prynce and syn guler lord, and sythe that I see that noo frensshe man 12 anaunceth hym I shall not faylle at the poynte, for the comyn prouerbe sayth: 'At nede a man knoweth hys frende.' Now anone brynge to me myn armes wyth-oute more taryeng." And so Olyuer dyd doo arme 16 hym by the sayd Garyn hys squyer, whiche sette on his legge harnays, hys hawberke, hys helme, and hys har nays necessarye. And whan he was alle furnysshed he took hys swerde named hanteclere, the whyche swerde 20 he moche loued.

After brought he hym hys hors the moost specyall that he loued whyche was named Ferraunt despaygne. And whan he was brought tofore hym alle sadded ²and 24 brydled The Ioly and gentyl Olyuer sprange in to the saddle wythoute settinge foot in the styrop, and sette hys shelde at hys ease and in hys honde a myghty spere & sharpe whych garyn took to hym. And after 28 smote the hors wyth the sporres so harde that in the keepyng he maad hys hors to bowe vnder hym. It was a good syght to see Olyuer on horsback wyth a moche fyers countenaunce. And they that were presente by- 32 sought Ihesu Cryst our redemar that he shold take hym in hys keepyng. For in that day he shold fyght ageynst the moost stronge and moost fyers paynym that euer

and his esquire
remonstrates with
him, (220)
but in vain.

Oliver insists,

and Garin helps
him to arm, (231)

and brings him
his horse. (240)

Oliver mounts,
(241)

takes his arms,

¹ C iij, back.

² col. 2.

was born of moder or euer was in thys world, That is
 Fyerabras of Alexandrye, sone of the admyral Ballant
 of spayne, of whome we shalle see by the playsyr of
 4 god the termynacyon after. ¶ He beyng thus on
 horsback in grete poynt vpon hys vysage and vpon his
 body he maad the sygne of the crosse in the name of
 Ihesus and commaunded hym self to the wyll of god,
 8 whyche that day shold be to hym in comforte and ayde
 after hys good entencyon. And of euery man he was
 byseen and knowen that he had hys hert hole in hys
 body for to do grete feat of armes: & so rode forth
 12 vnto the lyces of ¹themperour Charles with whom was
 the Due naymes, guyllam de scot, Gerard de mondy-
 dyer, and Ogyer the danoys, wyth other barons of
 fraunce²: & emonge alle other there was Rolland moche
 16 sorouful of the wordes that he had ayenst his vncle the
 kyng, for gladly he wold haue doo the bataylle yf he
 had not wythsayed it tofore the kyng whan he was
 requyred. Thus Olyuer beyng seen tofore Charles was
 20 moche alowed & preysed of one and other & moche
 affectuously byholden. And the said olyuer put down
 his helme and byhelde the lodgyce of the kyng, And
 reuerently came & salewed hym, and after sayd to hym:
 24 "Noble emperour, puyssaunt, redoubted, and my syn-
 guler lord, I beseche you to here me ye know wel that
 there ben iij yeres past that I haue been in your
 seruyce and haue had of you no rewarde ne wages. I
 28 you supplye with al myn herte that now ye wyll rewarde
 me wyth a yefte that I shal desyre." To whom the
 kyng ansuerd: "Olyuer, noble erle, I assure to you by
 my fayth that I shal do it wyth a good wyll. And
 32 assone as we shall be in fraunce there is neyther cyte,
 borugh, ne castel that ye wyl haue ne none other thyng
 that to me is possyble & faysyble that shal be denyed
 to you." "Syr kyng," said ³Olyuer, "I am not comen

commends him-
 self to God, (256).

and rides
 to Charles's
 tent. (257)

Roland regrets
 his refusal of the
 challenge. (260)

Oliver salutes
 the king,

reminds him of
 his long and
 faithful services,
 (268)

¹ C iijj.

² *Ed.* Freunce.

³ col. 2.

and demands to be allowed to accept the challenge of Fierabras. (257)

Charles remonstrates with him. (292)

Charles positively refuses his permission to Oliver,

but Ganellon insists that,

according to the law, Oliver must fight Fierabras.

Charles is obliged to consent,

to you for to demaunde suche thyng. But I demaunde
and requyre of you the bataylle ayenste the paynym so
oute of mesure. And at thys houre I graunte to you
alle my goodes and seruyces & for this yefte to be quyte 4
of them." whan the frensshe men had herde Olyuer
they were all abasshed of hys prowesse & eche of them
loked on other and said emonge them: "A! saynt
marie, what hath Olyuer founden, whyche is hurt quasi 8
to deth & wyl now goo to fyght and bataylle?" "O
Olyuer," answerd charles, "thou hast loste thy wytte,
For thou knowest wel that wyth a spere heed square
and shiarpe thou hast be hurte and wounded mortally 12
and now thou wylt abandonne thy self to a gretter
daunger mortall. beware! Retorne, and take thy reste.
For truste well that for noo thyng I shal suffre the to
do that fayte sythen that thou arte not presently in 16
helthe of thy body." Vpon thys poynte aroos ganellon
and Andrewe the traytres that dyd the trayson as the
laste book shall make meneyon.

¶ And Ganellon sayd: "Syr Kyng, ye haue or- 20
deygned in Fraunce that it, whyche by ij of vs is
lugeð, ought to be holden, and so is it that we ij luge
& ordeyne that Olyuer shalle goo and doo ¹ the bataylle."
wherfore the kyng ful of maltalente, wyth coloure 24
chaunged, answerd: "Ganellon, thou arte of euyl dys-
posyeyon wythoute spekyng that whyche is honourable.
Sythe it so is he shal doo the bataylle & it may none
otherwyse be but that he be dede. But I swere to the 28
my trouth that yf he be taken or put to deth al the
gold of the world shal not saue the but that thou shalt
dye a vylaynous deth & I shal destroye thy lynage."
"Syr Emperour," sayd Ganellon, "god and our lady 32
kepe me;" & after the traytre sayd to hym self secretly:
"God forbede that euer Olyuer retorne but that he haue
hys heed smyton of." and whan thempour sawe that

¹ C' iij, back.

he myght not gaynsaye but that olyuer shokk¹ goo and
 doo the bataylle ayenst Fyerabras he sayd: "I praye
 god of the fyrmamente gyue the grace to do wel & that
 4 thou mayst retorne wyth Ioye," And took hys ryght
 gloue and threwe it to Olyuer, the which he receyued<sup>and gives Oliver
 his glove.</sup>
 wyth grete desyre & wylle in thankynge hym ryght
 humbly and takynge leue of al moche swetely.

8 ¶ How Olyuer was requyred' by his fader
 reynner that he shold not fyght wyth the
 geaunt, but for al that he went forth:
 ca. vij

12 **W**Han that Olyuer was lycenced¹ for to goo do
 hys bataylle and was redy to departe, Reyner
 of genes hys fader came to the kyng and by
 grete compassyon kneled down at hys feet and sayd: <sup>Reyner appeals to
 Charles not to
 allow Oliver to
 fight,</sup>
 16 "Syr kyng, I crye you mercy haue pyte of my sone
 and me. I say as for me ye wyl al dyscomforte me
 whan I see that my sone gooth to perdyceyon seeynge
 the daunger that hys persone is in. I say also that ye
 20 take pyte of his presumptuous yongthe, of hys desyre
 ouer couetous, and of hys body wounded¹ daungerously.
 ye knowe wel that a man that is hurte so sore and that
 hath loste of hys blood may not wel endure bataylle."
 24 But Reyner loste hys payne, For the kyng had gyuen ^{but in vain.}
 to hym hys gloue in sygne of lycence, And not-wyth-
 stondynge these wordes doubted no thyng but that he
 shokk¹ wel do hys deuoyr and valyauntly. And yet
 28 ageyn reynner requyred the kyng and sayd: "Syr kyng,
 in thonour of hym that for vs deyed¹ on the crosse
 suffre not my sone to lust. Alas! whan I shal haue
 lost my sone where shal I become? and ye may wel
 32 fynde other for to take thys bataylle in honde." Them-
 perour Charles answerd: "Reyner, ye knowe wel that
<sup>Reyner again
 protests and
 appeals.</sup>

¹ col. 2.

Oliver bids his
comrades fare-
well.

Charles gives him
his blessing.

I may not gaynsaye that I haue to hym graunted. For
in sygne of ly¹cence I haue gyuen hym my gloue,
wherof Olyner was contente." & thenne Olyuer sayd
wyth an hye voys tofore alle the people: "Syr kyng, 4
and alle ye barons, I beseche you alle of a yefte, that
is that I requyre you yf I haue mesprysed or mysdoon
in dede or in worde ony ayenst you that in the name
of god² ye pardonne me." whan the frenssh men herde 8
hym so speke There was none but that he wepte ten-
derly, and soo takyng³ hys leue wyth his standard⁴
reysed The kyng⁵ blessyd hym in makyng the sygne of
the crosse, And wepyng comaunded hym in the kepyng 12
of the fader of the sone & of the holy ghost.

¶ How Olyuer spake to Fyerabras, whyche
sette noo thyng by hym, with other dis-
putacions: capitulo viij 16

Oliver rides up to
Fierabras, (344)

and demands his
name. (351)

Fierabras tells
him, and boasts
of his exploits.
(362)

O Lyner departed & rode forth on hys waye & taryed
not tyl that he cam where as fyerabras was, which
was al vnarmed and laye in the shadowe. and
whan Olyuer had aresonned hym The paynym turned 20
his heed ayenst hym and dayned vnnethe to loke on hym.
For he setted nought by hym by-cause he was so lytel
of stature to the regarde of Fyerabras. And thenne
Olyuer said to the sarasyn: "Awake, thou, ²thou hast 24
thys day so ofte called vs that I am come hyther. And
I praye the that thou telle to me thy name." Fyerabras
answerd to hym: "by Mahoun, my god, to whome I
owe honour I am the moost ryche man that is in the 28
world borne. Fyerabras of alexandrye am I named: I
am he that thou knowe that dyd doo destroye rome
your cyte, & slewe the Pope and many other and bare
awaye the relyques that I there founde, For which ye 32
take grete payne and laboure to recouer them. And

¹ C v.

² col. 2.

furthermore I holde Iherusalem that fayre cyte, and the
 sepulchre in whych your godd rested." Olyuer answerd :
 "by my fayth, I haue gladly herde the say that whyche
 4 thou hast sayd. And yf it be trouthe that thou hast
 sayd for certeyn now thou mayst repute thy self well
 vnhappy and myschaunt. Now wythoute more talkyng¹ Oliver bids him
 make the redy and arme the . seest thou yonder the arm himself.
 8 frensshe men that doo no thyng but byholde vs? (384)
 wherfore depesshe the, or¹ by the god on whome I by-
 leue I shal smyte the there as thou lyst." whan Fyer-
 abras herde that he spake soo hardyly he began to
 12 lawhe and sayd: "I am wel admeruaylled fro whens
 that cometh to the suche presumpcion to speke so
 hastyly, but for trouthe I shal not remeue fro hens
 tyll ²I knowe who thou arte and of what lygnage.
 16 And whan thou hast tolde to me thy name thou shalt
 see me armed." Olyuer answerd to hym: "O paynem, Fierabras asks his
 know thou for trouthe that or it be nyght thou shalt name and rank.
 knowe what I am. by me sendeth to the charles the (388)
 20 Emperour, my redoubted lord, that for the conservacion³ Oliver calls on
 of thy body and the saluacyon of thy soule thou leue Fierabras to
 the creaunce of thy godd Mahoun, & of other ydolles, renounce Maho-
 whyche ben but abusyon and decepeyon: whyche haue met, (395)
 24 neyther wytte, ne reason, ne feelyng, ne good vnder-
 stondyng . wherfore that thou encline the to consente
 and thynke fro hens forth to byleue in godd almyghty
 the holy Trynyte, the fader, the sone, and the holy
 28 ghooost, iij persones in one essence & of one wyll: and repeats the
 whyche hath made heuen & erthe and al that there articles of the
 in dwelleth: whyche for our saluacion wold be borne Christian faith.
 of the vyrgyn marie. & whan thou shalt haue this (398)
 32 byleue wyth the holy sacrament of baptesme, which is
 vpon this establysshed, thou mayst come to the glorie
 eternal. and yf thou do not lyke as I haue taught the

¹ *Ed.* For.

² C v, back.

³ *Ed.* consecration.

Fierabras is surprised at his presumption, (402)

and asks him to describe Charles and the douzeperes. (408)

Oliver tells him that Charles is without an equal,

and again challenges him. (125)

I am here redy to doo bataylle ayenst the, and of two thynges thou must doo that one. Fyrst, that thou departe oute of thys contree as ouercomen & to bere nothyng with the, or thou must ¹come and fyght ayenst 4 me For tenhaunce thy body & to susteyne thy fals lawe." Fyerabras answerd: "whatsomeuer thou arte thou arte ouer presumptuous to haue Inteneyon for to fyght ageynst me. For surely yf thou see me on 8 fote wythoute armes thou shalt be wel hardy yf thou tremble not for drede to approche me. But by the godd in whome thou byleuest Say to me what man is Charle-mayn, For it is long sythe I herde hym fyrst preyed 12 and redoubted in many contrees: and also that I may haue tydynges of rolland & Olyuer, of Ogger the danoyes and of gerarde de mondydyer, For by my trouthe I wold fayn be acqueynted with them." Olyuer ansuerd: 16 "Paynym, vpon that thou me demaundest I telle to the that Charles themperour is so grete a maystre that there is no man in the World may compare to hym, as wel for the valure of hys persone, of hys counceyl, & of hys 20 maners, as of hys pyssaunce and rychesses Innumerable of regarde. Of hys neuewe Rolland he is wythoute pere, Olyuer lytel lasse than he; and as for the other frensshe men emonge al people humayn they be valy- 24 aunte men. but thyse wordes haue noo place here, depesshe the and arme the, For by the godd on whom I hylene yf thou ²auaunce the not I shalle smyte the wyth thys swerde of stele." Fyerabras began to lyfte vp hys 28 heed and sayd: "By my godd mahomet, yf I thought not that it shold be my dyslionour I shold now smyte of thy heed." Olyuer ansuerd: "I praye the leue thys pletyng, For or it be euen thou shalt knowe what I am, 32 For certeyn I haue enteneyon to plunge my swerde in thy bely." where vpon Fyerabras was not wroth, so moche noble was he, and rested hys heed vpon hys

¹ col. 2.

² C vj.

shelde and sayd to Olyuer: "I sette not therby, but I praye the telle to me thy name & thy lygnage."

Pierabras asks Oliver his name. (441)

Olyuer sayd to hym: "my name is garyn, and am 4 borne in perrogort, sone of a man calleð Iosue, whyche came that other day in to fraunce where I was adoubed knight by the noble kyng Charles and am ordeyned for to defende hys ryght & also to fyght ayenst the.

Oliver tells him he is Garin, a poor knight. (443)

8 wherfor conclude wythoute more taryeng & arme the & take thy hors, for I am redy to doo the bataylle yf thou be soo hardy to abyde me." Fyerabras wold not consente to the bataylle, For hym thought that olyuer was

12 to litel to Iuste ayenst hym and sayd to hym: "Garyn, I demaunde of the wherfore is not comen hyther rolland ne Olyuer or Gerard or Ogyer, whyche been of so grete renommee ¹as I haue herd say?" Olyuer ansuerd:

Fierabras asks him why Ogier or Oliver has not come to meet him. (454)

16 "The cause wherfore they be not comen to the is for they sette nought by the & they haue desdayn to come, but I am comen to the as he that taketh noo regarde to theyr Intencyon and shal do the bataylle ayenst the 20 yf thou wylt abyde it. But I swere to the by saynt Petre the appostle of Ihesu Cryst that yf thou arme the not I shal smyte the to the deth wyth thys darte that I holde in my honde." "Garyn," answerd Fyerabras, "I

Oliver says it is because they despise him. (457)

24 shal say to the that sythe I was adoubed knight I Iusted neuer but ayenst a kyng, an erle, or a baron of grete valure, and thou art departed of a lowe hous for to say that I shold haue adoo wyth the: it shold be to me 28 ouer grete dyshonour yf thou were put to deth by me. but for the goodwylle that I knowe in the whych is moche noble I am contente that thou smyte me and I shal falle doun to therthe, and take thou my hors & my shelde 32 and goo thou to kyng Charles and say to hym that thou hast vaynquysshed me. And yf I do thys for the I do to the grete amytye And thou oughtest for thys tyme to be contente." ¶ On whiche wordes Olyuer coude

Fierabras says he never fights except with a king or a noble, (463)

but offers to give up his horse and shield to Oliver. (470)

not haue pacyence but that he sayd to hym : " Thy fayt
lyeth in noo thyng but in wordes full of ¹folysse pre-
sumpsyon. I am of thys intencion that byfore euen-
songe tyme I shal make thy hede flee from thy shioldres. 4
Oliver threatens
him. (484) I am none hare ne wylde beest for to be aferde, And
thou knowest the comyn prouerbe that sayth that there
is a tyme of spekyng and tyme of beyng style, And of
one and that other one may be reputed a fool. Now 8
come of & depesse the of that I haue sayd the or
ellys I shal slee the." Fyerabras answerd : " I desyre
ne praye the of no thyng but that thou sende to me
Rolland or olyuer or one of thother knyghtes of the 12
Fierabras asks for
one of the douze-
peres. rounde table. And yf one of them be not hardy for to
come, late come ij or iij or iiij attones For by me they
shal not be refused." In makynge these desputacyons
Olyuer which sore was hurte the day tofore his woundes 16
He sees the blood
run from Oliver's
wound, (497) opened by force of rydyng and of chauffyng & bledde
sore so that fyerabras sawe the blood renne down by is
knee, And demaunded of hym fro whens came that
blood that soo renneth down to therthe : " I trowe thou 20
and asks if he is
wounded? Oliver
says, "No." be hurte." Olyuer sayd : " I am not hurte but my hors
is harde atte spore wherof he is bloody." Fyerabras be-
hele & sawe it was not of the hors and answerd :
" Certes, garyn, thou sayest not sooth for thou art hurte 24
in thy body & I knowe it wel by the blood that cometh
2doun by thy knee : but see what I shal do for the :
there been two flagons hangyng on the saddle of my hors
whyche ben full of the bawme that I conquered in 28
Iherusalem, & it is the same of whyche your god was
enbawmed wyth whan he was taken down fro the
crosse and layed in hys graue. hye the, and goo
drynke therof, & I promyse to the that Incontynent 32
thou shalte be hole and thezme thou shalt mowe defende
the wel wythoute daunger." ¶ Olyuer answerd that
he wold not & that he sayd was folye. Thenne

Fierabras offers
to cure him with
the holy balm,
(510)

but Oliver re-
fuses.

¹ C vj. back.² col. 2.

fyerabras ansuerd that he was a fool wythoute reason,
And that it myght happe to repente hym.

¶ How after many dysputacyons Olyuer ayded'
4 arme Fyerabras, and' of the ix meruayllous
swerdes, And' how olyuer named' his name:
ca. ix

8 **W**Han fyerabras had long abyden lyeng' wyth-
oute arsyng' for Olyuer he satte vp and
after sayd: "Garyn, I demaunde the wyth-
oute hydyng' of what strengthe is Rolland & Olyuer
that been soo moche redoubted' of paynems, & of what
12 gretenes ben they of?" Olyuer answerd: "as towchyng
to rolland he is a lytel lasse of body than ¹I am, but of
courage he is right hardy to fyght and so chyualrous
that there is no man lyuyng in the world lyke to hym.
16 For he neuer faught yet ayenst ony man in the world
but he vaynquysshed hym. and as for Olyuer thou
mayst wel apperceyue that he is a man moche semblable
and lyke to me and of the same gretenes that I am."
20 Thenne sayd Fyerabras: "by the fayth that I owe to
my god appollyn & to Termagaunt thou tellest to me a
thyng wherof I am moche abashed. For yf they
were suche foure as thou tellest to me, I wold not refuse
24 them ne leue them tyl I had put them to deth wyth my
swerde." Olyuer coude no lenger forbere ne haue
pacyence vnto the delays of fyerabras but made redy
to smyte hym, wherfore Fyerabras sayd to hym: "thou
28 wylt haue no pyte on thyn owne persone,² By mahoun
my god yf I aryse & take my hors Charles thy kyng' ne
alle thy goddes³ shal not redeme the but that thou shalt
Incontynente be slayn. For onely yf thou see me tofore
32 the on my feet thou shalt be moche corageous yf thou
tremble not for fere."

Fierabras asks
him to describe
Roland and
Oliver. (525)

Oliver tells him.

Fierabras says he
would not be
afraid of four
such. (536)

¹ C vij.

² Ed. personr.

³ Ed. goodes.

Oliver at last
induces Fierabras
to rise. (516)

He is 15 feet
high.

He bids Oliver go
back and send
Roland, or Ogier,
(562)

but Oliver refuses.

Fierabras asks
Oliver to help him
to arm.

Oliver does so.

Was not this a
noble example of
chivalry and
courtesy?

¶ Olyuer answerd: "thou hast vaunted the ouer-
longe to doo thyng whiche thou neuer sawest in thy
lyue. For better it were to speke by mesure, for by
ouer ¹moche spekyng¹ otherwyse than trouthe may 4
brynge the soone to myschyf." Herof was fyerabras
strongely despyteous And roos on hys feet in a grete
fyersnes, whyche was by comyn estymacyon xv foot
longe. And yf he wold haue be baptysed and bylene in 8
Ihesu Cryst ther had neuer be seen a man of his valure.
And whan he was a-foot he had grete dysplaysyr by
cause he had not a valyaunte man to Iuste agenst hym,
and sayd to Olyuer: "In trouthe I haue grete pyte of 12
thyn affaire for the noblesse of the courage that I see in
the. I am yet contente for this present tyme that thou
retorne And sende to me Rolland, or Olyuer, or Ogyer,
or Gerard de mondydyer, and expressly say to Olyuer 16
that I shall not passe thys auauntgarde tyl I haue
conquerd hym." Olyuer myght no lenger abyde the
paynym for yf it had not be for hys honour he had
smyten hym dyuers tymes vnarmed. And whan he 20
must nedes fyght Fyerabras called Olyuer and prayed
hym that he wold helpe to arme hym. Olyuer de-
maunded yf he myght truste hym. Fyerabras ansuerd:
"helpe me hardyly, For I swere and assure the that 24
neuer whyle I lyue shal I be traytour to no man
lyuyng." And vpon that promyse olyuer dyd his
diligence ²to arme hym, and he took fyrst lether of
arabye and cladde hym therwyth, & after hys cote & 28
his habergeon of stele wele boucled & polysshed: &
after sette on hys heed an helme garnysshed wyth
precyous stones rychely. But wel consydered the
facyon of thys paynym and of this cristen man there 32
was grete loyalte & curtosye bytwene them whyche
were assembled for to make mortal warre and eche to
slee other, and yet they dyd eche to other synguler

¹ col. 2.

² C vij. back.

seruyce. Fyrst, the paynym hað grete pyte for to
 destroye Olyuer For he was not hys pere ne egal to
 the regarde of hys persone. And on that other parte
 4 whan he sawe hym hurte and the blood descende to
 therthe he wold haue gyuen to hym of the precyous
 bawme. Semblably Olyuer, whan he fonde hym dys-
 armed he hað slayne hym wythoute grete payne yf he
 8 hað wold, and after he was soo curtoys that he ayded
 to arme hym that shok fyzt ayenst hym. ¶ O, what
 grete loyalte of noblesse was bytwene them whyche
 were of fayth and creaunce contraye! I suppose that
 12 god shok be wel pleased yf there were suche confyaunce
 emonge crysten men and so ful of naturel noblesse.
 But I retorne ageyn to my mater. Whan Fyerabras
 was wel armed he than¹ked moche Olyuer, And after
 16 gyrde hys swerde named plourance.² and in the arson
 of his sadyll he hað tweyne other of whom that one was
 named baptysme and that other grabam, the whyche
 swerdes were maad in suche wyse that there was none
 20 harnoys but they wold breke and cutte a-sondre. And
 who that wyl demaunde the manyer how they were
 made & by whom [I wyl saye] after that whyche I
 haue founden by wrytyng. ¶ On a tyme there were
 24 thre brethern of one fader engendred, of whome that
 one was named Galaus, that other Munyfycans, & the
 thyrd was called Agnisiac. These iij brethern made
 ix swerdes, eche of them thre. Agnisiac the thyrd
 28 brother maad the swerde named baptesme, whiche
 hað the pomel of gold and wel enameled, & also
 plourance,² and after Grabam; whyche thre swerdes
 fyerabras hað as I haue sayd. Munyficans, that other
 32 brother, made another swerde whyche was named
 durandal, Whyche Rolland hað. that other was called
 saunognye and that other Cortan whyche Ogyer the
 danoyis hað. ¶ And galaus, that other brother, maad

Would that there
 were such between
 all Christian
 men!

Fierabras takes
 his three swords,

made by one of
 three brothers,

by another of
 whom Durandal
 and Cortan were
 made,

¹ col. 2.

² *Ed.* plousance.

and by the third
Joyous and
Floberge.

Fierabras takes
with him the two
vessels of balm.

Of the nature of
his horse.

Fierabras wishes
Oliver to retire.
(556)

Oliver refuses.
(565)

Fierabras con-
fines Oliver on his
faith and loyalty
to reveal his true
name. (637)

the swerd that was named Floberge, another called
haulteclere, and that other Ioyouse, whyche Charle-
mayn had for a grete speecyalte. and these ^{liij} brethern
aforesayd were smythes & wrought the sayd swerdes. 4
And in thys poynte Fyerabras mounted on hors backe
And took hys two barylles by hym ful of bawme, And
henge aboute his necke his shelde whiche was heuy and
bended wyth yron and stele by meruayllous strengthe. 8
And in the myddle of the same shelde was paynted hys
god Appollyn. and after that he had commaunded hym
to hys god he took his spere in hys honde, whyche was
shiarpe & mortally heded with stele. It was meruaylle 12
to see the corpulence of the sayd Paynym which sat on
hys hors named feraunt of spayne, grete, thycke, &
pommellyd, whyche had a speccial condycyon : For whan
his mayster in fyghtyng put to the grounde hys aduer- 16
sarye this hors maad gretter warre wythout comparyson
than hys mayster. and thus they beyng on horsback
Fyerabras sayd to Olyuer : “O garyn, gracyous and
curtoys, yet I admoneste the for the gentylnesse that 20
thou hast doon to me that thou wilt retorne without
fyghtyng, For I haue pyte of thy valyaunte courage.”
Olyuer answerde : “alwaye thou spekest of grete folye
for I shal not departe for to be in daunger to be dys- 24
membred. For I am not he that thou wenest to make
aferde : for ²by the helpe of the blessyd Ihesus thys day
shalt thou be yelden or deed or lyuyng vnto charles the
emperour.” Whan Olyuer had so spoken Fyerabras 28
was meruayllously abasshed of thys man that wold not
lete for menace that he maad to hym, but wold haue
the bataylle ayenst hym & sayd to hym : “Thou art a
cristen man and hast grete fayth at the mysteryes by 32
you ordeyned, but I coniure the by the fonte in whyche
thou were baptysed, and by the fayth that thou hast
gyuen to the crosse wheron thy god henge and was

¹ C viij.

² col. 2.

naylled, And by the loyalte that thou owest to charles
 themperour, to rolland, and to the other pyeres of
 fraunce, thou say and telle to me the veryte of thy ryght
 4 name and of thy lygnage." Olyuer answerd: "Certes,
 Paynem, he that enduced the to speke to me in suche
 wyse hath wel taught the, For gretter ne more hyely
 myghtest thou not adiure me. Wherfore knowe thou
 8 that I am Olyuer the sone of Reyner, the Erle of Genes,
 the moost espeeial felowe of rolland, and am one of the
 twelue peres." "In fayth," sayd Fyerabras, "I alwaye
 thought wel that thou were another than thou saydest
 12 to me, seen thyn ardaunt courage and that I coude not
 make the aferde vpon the fayt of bataylle. And how,
 sir Oliuer, ¹are ye hurte in the body? it shold be grete
 dyshonour for me to ouercome you in bataylle & destroye
 16 you. For I acounte you but a dede man whyche shold
 be a grete reproche, wherfore retorne ageyn for we haue
 don for this tyme: For alle the golde in the world I
 wold not doo suche a shame as to Iuste ayenst you."
 20 Thenne ansuerd Olyuer: "certeynlye ye shal. For by
 my hede whan we shal be assembled ye shal haue no
 courage to Iape ne playe wyth me for I shal make you
 wel to fele that I am noo dede man." And after Olyuer
 24 admonested hym swetely in this manere and sayd:
 "O paynym, or we procede any ferther now I admonest
 the that thou byleue in god of heuen almyghty whiche
 hath made the and fourmed, to whome al thyng¹ owen
 28 honoure and synguler creaunce. For he that taketh
 not aduys is borne in an euyl houre. And forsake
 Mahoun and thy goddes ful of abuse and decepyon, &
 dyspose the to be baptyset, & thou shalt haue to thy
 32 frende the grete charles and a speeyall felowe of Rolland
 the chyualrous. And furthermore al the dayes of my
 lyf I shal neuer forsake thy companye." fyerabras
 ansuerd to hym: "thou remembrest a grete folye.

Oliver tells him,
 (650)

wnerupon Fiera-
 bras presses to
 retire on account
 of his wound.

Oliver again begs
 Fierabras to be-
 come Christian.

¹ C viij, back.

The Saracen
refuses.

For for no thyng¹ I shalle not byleue in your god ne shal¹ forsake ne abandoune Mahoun. But on thys day yf thou arte frende of rolland, as thou sayest, so desplaysaunt ne sory was he neuer as I shal make hym for 4 the."

¶ How Olyuer and¹ fyerabras began to fyzt, & of the prayer of Charles for Olyuer, & of other maters: capitulo x 8

Pierabras offers
Oliver some of
the balm,

but he refuses it.

The fight begins.
(602)

The French pray
for Oliver's
success,

and especially
Charles.

At the first onset
their spears are
broken,

Fyerabras & olyuer were longe on horsback and it was so that fyerabras wold¹ not lete hys hors renne ageynst Olyuer, But sayd¹: "my frende, I praye the *part* thou drynke of my barylles & by the 12 vertue of the bawme that is therein Incontynent thou shalt be heled¹ & shal mowe wel defende thy self ayenst me." "God¹ forbede," sayd¹ olyuer, "that by drynke thou be conquerd¹ of me but by franke bataylle and 16 harnoyss fourbysshed." And thys sayd¹ they lete theyr horses renne wyth a grete courage for to Iuste at vtter- aunce. And as they came that one ageynst that other the frensshe men whyche were in their lodgys had¹ grete 20 fere and¹ drede leste it shold¹ mysfalle to Olyuer. And emonge al other charles al wepyng¹ sayd¹: "O blessyd Ihesus, I requyre the that at this stroke thou haue pyte of Olyuer my ²baron in suche wyse that I may see hym 24 ageyn alyue & in helthe!" and¹ after feruently came in to hys chapel hydyng¹ his vysage wyth hys mantel and¹ kneled¹ before the crosse and¹ embraced¹ the crucefyx wyth grete teeres, sayeng¹: "My lord god, of whome I 28 see here the remembraunce, I hysee the to helpe Olyuer, whyche for the exaltaeyon of the crysten fayth is in daunger." Thus in contemplacyon of Charles fyerabras and¹ olyuer gaf so grete strokes vpon theyr 32 sheldes that the hedes of their speres were by force bowed¹ and¹ entred¹ that the fyre sprange out on al

¹ col. 2.

² D j.

sydes, and the shaftes of theyr speres were trouchonned that the pyeces flewe in the ayer. The reynes of the brydles of theyr horses wente oute of theyr hondes.

4 Bothe tweyne were so astoned of the stroke and theyr eyen so troubled that in a grete whyle they knewe not on whos syde they were torned. and after that bothe were comen to them self Fyerabras drewe plouraunce

and both are stunned.

8 hys swerde that henge by hys syde, And Olyuer took haulteclere meruayllously shynynge & cam vpon Fyerabras and on hyghe on hys helme gaf hym so grete a stroke that the floures and precyous stones wherof it

Oliver cuts off a part of Fierabras' helmet, (616)

12 was ennobled and garnysshed made to flee to the grounde; and with the same stroke in descendynge he touched hys sholder, but the lether of capadoce saued hym. And the paynym was smyton so harde and sore

16 that bothe hys feet were oute of the styroppes and almoost was ouerthrowen, wherof the frensshe men sayden al wyth one voys: "A! saynt marye, what a stroke hath Olyuer gyuen² to thys paynym!" "ye,"

and nearly unhorses him.

20 sayd rolland, "meruayllously he smote hym! ¶ Now wold god of heuen," sayd Rolland, "that I were now vnder the shilde of my gentyl felowe Olyuer, For of me or of the paynym shold shortly be seen the ende."

24 ¶ To whom the Emperour answerd: "Ha! euyl gloton, I haue wel herde the spoken felon coward. It is not now tyme that thou so say, For atte beginnyng thou woldest not goo, wherof many tymes shalt thou be of

28 me reproched." vpon whych thyng rolland ansuerd no thyng but that he shold do as it plesed hym. fyerabras al astoned of the stroke & replenysshed of grete wrath with his swerd named plouraunce came wyth a course

Fierabras strikes Oliver on the helmet,

32 vpon olyuer, & gaf hym a stroke³ vpon his helme so sharply that he trenched moo than ve maylles, and hurte euyl hys hors and smote of the spore of his foot & a parte of hys thye, wheroute the blode ranne

and wounds his horse. (591)

¹ col. 2.

² *Ed.* gyuen.

³ *Ed.* steoke.

Oliver calls on
God and the
Virgin for help.

Fierabras again
offers to let him
go,

on account of his
wound,

but Oliver defies
him. (597)

habundantly & the swerde of fyerabras ¹was al bloody :
of whiche stroke olyuer was moeued & troubled that he
had fallen ne had hys sadel haue been, For he was
bowed afterwarde that he was al to broken. And his 4
hors began to halte of the stroke & whan he was comen
to hym self wyth an hye voys began to crye : ¶ “O
lord god, my creatour, o what an euyl stroke haue I
receyued ! O vyrgyn marye, moder of Ihesus, haue 8
pyte of me ! For ouer fyersly cutteth the swerde of
thys paynym. yene me grace that I may ones haue
hym :” and made vpon hym self the sygne of the
crosse. & after fyerabras sayd to hym : “Olyuer, by 12
Mahoun my god, wyth thys stroke I maad the aferde :
now mayst thou wel fele how I can playe, & I haue no
mernailla though thou commaunde the to thy god, but
I am euyl contente that I haue hurte the ouer sore with 16
þ^e stroke. ¶ Neuertheles be sure that thou shalt not
see the sonne goo to reste for thou begynnest now
to chaunge colour and thy fyerce manere : neuer-
theles I am contente that thou retorne, and that shall 20
be for the the best tofore thou knowe more fully my
strengthe : for I warne the of one thyng that whan I
see my blood yssue out of my body thenne doubleth
my myght and my strengthe. And I wote wel that 24
charles loueth ²the not moche whan he sendeth the to
me, yf he had lodged the in a fayre bedde & whyte
slietes thou haddest been moche better.” whan Olyuer
herde hym so saye he was replenysshed with a feruent 28
courage & began to lyfte vp hys heed and sayd : “O
Paynym, dysmesured al day thou vauntest the for to
brynge me to thende of my dayes. I praye to god
almighty that he wyl reioye my courage. kepe the wel, 32
I despye the ! we haue ouer long pleted.” vpon these
wordes they ranne to-gydre, smytyng meruayllously
eche other vpon their helmes in suche wyse that boucles,

¹ D j, back.

² col. 2.

naylles, and^r crochettes, precious stones, or faueryes, and
 floures been hewen, broken, and^r flowen to the ground.
 the fyre yssued^r oute largely, makyn^r grete bruyt with
 4 the swerdes vpon their harnoyes. In this whyle Charles
 was in grete medytacyon and^r thought that the quarele
 of Olyuer was trewe and^r Iuste and^r that god ought to
 preserue hym, and^r whan he thought that Olyuer myght
 8 deye As Inpacyent of a perfayte fayth he sayd^r: ¶ “O
 glorious god^d, for whome we take payne, I praye the to
 conserue oliuer that he be not slayn ne taken. For I
 swere by the soule of my fader that yf he be now slayn
 12 of thys paynym that neuer in fraunce in ony chyrche
 shal ¹ clerke ne preest be reuested^r ne enhabyted^r, but I
 shal do brene monasteryes, chyrches, aulters & cruce-
 fyxes.” “Alas,” sayd^r Duc naymes, “Syr kyng, leue
 16 these wordes vayne and^r ydle, & praye god^d for Olyuer
 that he be in his ayde for hys holy mercy.” Al thys
 whyle perseuered^r the ij champyons fyghtyng and smyt-
 yng^r eche on other in suche maner that Fyerabras wyth
 20 hys swerde brake the cercle of Olyuers helme and made
 hym falle on hys vysage, and^r hys hors had^r be slayn yf
 he had not lepte a syde. and^r Olyuer was hurte in hys
 body and^r speccially in the breste and^r had^r thenne loste
 24 soo moche of hys blood^d that he was moche feble,
 whyche was no merueylle, seen that he had resysted^r
 ageynst the moost terryble man that euer was borne of
 moder.

Their armour is
 cut to pieces.

Charles prays for
 Oliver's success,

and vows if he is
 killed every
 church shall be
 burnt.

Naymes reproves
 him.

Oliver is very
 weak from loss of
 blood.

28 ¶ How Olyuer made his prayer to god' whan
 he felte hym hurte : capitulo xj

32 **O**lyuer the noble erle beyng in this malancolye of
 the grete woundes that he had^r in hys body took
 his recomforte sayeng in this manere: “O glory-
 ous god^d, cause & begynnyn^rg of al that is aboue & vnder
 the fyrmamente, which for your owne playser fourned

Oliver offers up a
 prayer,

¹ D ij.

our fyrst fader Adam and^r for ¹hys companye gauest
vnto hym Eue, by whome al humayn generacyon is
conceyued^r, gynyng^r to them lycence to ete al maner
fruytes reserued^r onely one, of whyche Eue by the ⁴
recounting the
fall of Adam,
moeuyng of the serpent caused^r Adam to ete, wherefore
they loste paradys, & by the seductyon of the fendes of
helle many haue ben deceyued^r & dampned : wherof ye
had^r pyte of the perdyeyon of the world^r and^r came for 8
to take flesshe humayn in the wombe of the glorious
the annunciation,
vyrgyn marye by thammuncyacion of the holy Aungel
Gabryel, and^r were borne as it pleased^r you. And^r anone
after the thre kynges camen to adoure & make obeys- 12
saunce and^r wyth golde, encence, and^r myrre made to
you their presentes. After for you herodes made to be
the slaughter of
the Innocents,
slayne many chyl dren, whiche now been in Ioye per-
manable. And^r whan ye were in age by you deter- 16
my ned^r ye went in the world^r prechyng^r to your frendes.
Thenne after ward by thennyous Iewes ye were hanged
the Crucifixion,
on the crosse, in whiche so hangyng longyus the knyght
by the Induction of the Iewes pereyd your syde ; & 20
whan he byleued in you & wesshe hys eyen with your
precious blode he recouerd his syzt fayre & clere &
cryed you mercy wherby he was saued. After by your
frendes ye were layed in the holy sepulture : ²the thyrd^r 24
the Resurrection,
day after aroos and^r took ageyn lyf and^r descended^r in to
helle, And^r took out Adam and^r Eue and al them that
were worthy to haue paradys. And^r the day of your
and the
Ascension.
meruayllous asceneyon ye ascended^r in to heuen in the 28
presence of al your apostles. Thus my god^r, my maker,
as thys is trouthe and^r I byleue it verayly and^r fermly,
be ye in my comforte ageynst thys myscreaunte that I
may vaynquyssh^r hym in suche wyse that he may be 32
saued^r." And^r this said he blessyd^r hym with his swerde
in makyng the sygne of ^pe crosse in the name of god^r
the holy trynityte, and^r smote his hors vpon the hope of

He crosses him-
self.

¹ col. 2.

² D ij, back.

the helpe of god. and Fyerabras sayd to hym lawhyng:
 "Olyuer, fayre frende, I praye the that thou hyde not
 fro me the oryson that thou hast said now, for by my
 4 god termagaunt I wold gladly here it." "Now wold
 god of heuen," sayd Olyuer, "that thou were in suche
 grace that thou sholdest bylene it also fermly as I doo,
 For I assure the I shold loue the thenne as moche as I
 8 doo Roulland."

Fierabras laughs
 at him,
 and asks what his
 prayer has been.

¶ And Fyerabras ansuerd to hym: "by my god
 Mahoun and Termagaunt, thou spekest now of a moche
 grete folye?"

12 ¶ How after a grete bataylle Olyuer conquerd
 the bawme & ¹ dranke therof at hys ease,
 and how he fyl to therthe whan hys hors
 was slayn: capitulo xij

16 **F**yerabras beyng wroth of the wordes of oliuer in
 grete Ire sayd to hym: "kepe the wel fro me, for
 I deffye the!" "I am redy," sayd Olyuer, "for
 to god I commaunde me." & so thenne they recountred

20 to-gyder so sharply and so hard strokes they gaf that
 the fyre myzt haboundantlye be seen sprynge oute of
 theyr harnoys. Theyr horses bowed vnder hem and
 the erthe trembled of the bruyt in the medowe vnder

24 mormyonde. Fyerabras took hys swerde in hys honde
 and smote Olyuer there as he was euyl hurte in the
 breste vnder the pappe, & of that stroke the eyen
 torneck in hys heek, And had hys face alle chaunged.

28 And thenne ageyn he cryed on god and on the virgyn
 marie that he wold saue his soule. Fyerabras by grete
 curtosye sayd to hym: "Olyuer, vnderstonde me,
 descende down surely and goo take of the bawme and

32 drynke at thyn ease, and anone thou shalt be al guar-
 ysshed and hole, and thenne mayst thou the better

The struggle is
 renewed (602, so
 fiercely that the
 ground shakes.
 (607)

Fierabras wounds
 Oliver in the
 breast.

Fierabras again
 offers Oliver some
 of the holy balm,

defende the ageynst me and thou shalt recoure newe
 but Oliver refuses it. strengthe." But olyuer for noo thyng that he coude
 do though ¹he shold dye he wold not, For by trewe
 fighting he wold haue it. And anone came that one 4
 ageynst that other and smyten in suche wyse that
 Oliver pierces Fierabras' thigh. Fyerabras was hurte daungerously, For olyuers swerde
 entred in to his thye an halfe foot depe, and of the
 blood that yssued oute alle the grasse was reed. And 8
 whan he sawe hym so hurte he dranke of hys bawme
 and was anone al hool, wherof olyuer was moche sorou-
 ful, by cause therof he coude make none ende of thys
 paynym. And the freysshe men that saw this made 12
 to god their prayers deuoutly that he wolde conserue
 that day Olyuer, And in especyal Charlemayn whiche
 emong al other loued hym moast entyerly. But whan
 Olyuer sawe the paynym al hole & for the bawme 16
 so comforted, by the ayde of god he came to hym
 and smote hym vpon the helme soo harde that the
 stroke descended vpon the sadel & cutte the corde by
 Oliver cuts the cord by which the vessels are tied. whych the barylles were bounden and fastned, and the 20
 hors of fyerabras was aferde of the stroke and made a
 lytel course by the playsyr of god. Thenne Olyuer or
 the paynym toke ony hede bowed to the grounde and
 took vp the barylles & dranke at hys ease and largely, 24
 & anon he was al hole & reconfermed in newe strengthe,
 & thought that ²yf by aduenture fyerabras were more
 hurte by hym and myght ageyn haue hys barylles
 that in thende it myght euyl happe and come to hym. 28
 wherfore he beyng nyghe vnto a grete ryuer took the
 barylles & threwe them therin whych were anone
 sonken. And as it is redde at alle the festes of saynt
 Iohan these ij barylles ben shewed aboue the water 32
 euydently. whan fyerabras sawe that the barilles were
 loste all most for angre he was oute of hys mynde &
 by grete reproche sayd to Olyuer: "O euyl man that

¹ D iij.² col. 2.

thou arte, thou hast loste my barylles whyche were
 more worth than al the golde in the world: but I
 promyse the that or it be euen they shal to the ben
 4 dere solde, For I shall not cesse tyl I haue smyton of thy
 heed:” and thys sayeng^t he came ayenst hym, but
 Olyuer as he that doubteth hym not soo moche as he
 dyd^t tofore eschewed hym not but put hym at the
 8 defence wyth his shielde to auoyde the stroke. Neuer-
 theles Fyerabras smote hym so hard *pat* hys helme was
 desmaylled & broken, but he was not hurte, & the
 stroke descended so inpytuously *pat* he cutte asondre the
 12 necke of oliuers hors, & [he] fyl to grounde and^t thenne
 was Olyuer on fote. but a grete myracle it was of the
 hors of fyerabras that maad no semblan^te¹ to renne
 vpon hym as he had ben taught, lyke as I haue sayd^t
 16 byfore, but helde hym styлле aboute hys propre custome.

Fierabras reviles
 him for doing so,

rushes at him,

and breaks his
 helmet,

and kills his
 horse. (588)

¶ How Fyerabras and’ Olyuer foughten to-
 gyder afote mervcyllously, and’ of the
 prayer that Charles maad’ for Olyuer:
 20 capitulo viij

MOche sorouful were the frensshe men whan they
 sawe Olyuer on fote, and^t wold^t haue armed^t
 hem for to socoure hym, But Charles wold^t not
 24 consente for to mayntene hys honour & hys trouthe.
 ¶ And thenne kyng^t Charles kneled^t down to therthe &
 maad^t his prayer to god that he wolde^t comforte Olyuer
 whyche was thus dyspourueyed^t of his hors. whan
 28 Olyuer sawe hym self on fote he was moche sorouful &
 came a foure paas nyghe vnto Fyerabras, and^t sayd^t to
 hym: “o kyng of Alexandrye, thou hast borne the
 foule this day ageynst me. In the mornyng thou hast
 32 so moche preysed^t thy self that thou hast sayd^t yf v
 knyghtes came ageynst the thou woldest abyde and^t

The French wish
 to help Oliver,

but Charles for-
 bids them.

Oliver reproaches
 the Saracen for
 killing his horse.
 (598)

¹ D iij, back.

conquere them, and thou knowest that the kyng that sleeth an hors ought to haue no parte of therytage."

Fierabras declares it was accidental, and offers to give him his own horse, but Oliver refuses.

Fierabras jumps off his horse, and they fight on foot.

Reyner appeals to Charles to send help to Oliver, or at least to pray for him.

Fyerabras answered: "I knowe wel that thou ¹sayest trouthe, but I dyd it not wyth my wylle. Neuertheles 4 to thende that thou be not euyl contente wyth me I shal descende down of my hors & shal gyue to the my hors pomeld: And I promyse the thou shalt be well horse. And knowe thou that neuer in my lyf 8 I was so abashed as whan he sawe the at ertlie that he strangled the not, for I neuer put man to the ertlie and thys hors present but that anone he was by hym slayn & dede." Olyuer answered: "I promyse the that I shal 12 neuer take thyn hors but yf he be first by me conquered and Iustly wonne." wherupon fyerabras was soo moche noble that for the valyaunce of Olyuer sayd: "Certeyn for the noblesse that I knowe in the I wyl do that I 16 neuer dyd for man:" and sprange of his hors & stode a-foote & was contente to fyght ayenst hym a foote, by-cause he had no hors of his owne. and the sayd fyerabras was moche heyer than Olyuer. and by 20 one accorde they Iusted afoote that one ayenst that other so meruayllously that it was wonder that bothe twayne remayned not in the felde a-swoune of the trauaylle that they toke. Thus contynnueng the bataylle 24 which coude take none ende they spaken many reproches and despytous wordes that one of theym vnto ²other. The kyng Charles seyng al thys had grete pyte on Olyuer. Thenne the Erle Reyner, fader of Olyuer, whyche was 28 moche sorouful came & kneeled at the feet of Charles and sayd: "O noble emperour, in thouour of god take remors of my sone whome I see lykly anone to dye. Atte leste make prayer to Ihesus our maker that he be in ayde to 32 hym that I may see hym ryghe to me in helthe." ¶ Incontynent Charles seyng thys sayd: "O lord god, yf ye suffre that Olyuer be onercome and that my ryght at

¹ col. 2.² D iiij.

thys tyme be loste and^d defyled, I make anowe that al
 crystyante shal be destroyed. I shal not leue in
 Fraunce chirche ne monasterye, ymage ne aulter." &
 4 after kneled^d down with bothe his knees¹ to the grounde
 & prayed^d in this manere: "My creatour, whyche for
 our sanacon was borne of the glorious vyrgyn marie
 in bethleem, as I wel by-leue, that of your glorious
 8 byrth al the world was enlumyned, whiche abode in thys
 work^d ful xxxij yere & more, & made atte begynnyng^t
 Adam and Eue, of whom we ben comen, & that was in
 paradys tenestre a place moche delectable. And there
 12 by you were alle fruytes abandoned to them except one
 onely, whyche was of knowyng good & euyl, as it plesed
 you to ordeyne: of ²whiche adam ete & was dysobey-
 saunt, for whom to the reparacion of his misdede & for
 16 to redeme hym fro eternal captyuyte & vs also ye were
 contente to take the deth in the tree of the crosse, after
 that the traytour³ Iudas solde you for xxx pens: & on
 a friday ye were payned^d & your handes & feet mortally
 20 naylled, & crowned with a moche sharpe crowne of
 thornes: and^d after Longyus smote you in the ryght
 syde to the hert, whiche was blynde & after that he
 had leyd on hys eyen of your precyous blood he sawe
 24 moche clerely: & after ye descended in to helle & toke
 out your frendes, & sythe aroos fro deth to lyf, & tofore
 al your apostles ye ascended^d in to heuen & lefte for
 your lyeutenaunt saynt Peter thapostle in erthe; and
 28 ordeynest baptesme for the regeneracyon of vs and^d to
 make vs crysten for to haue saluacyon. O lord, as alle
 thys is truthe and^d that I byleue it stedfastly, so on thys
 day be thou in ayde and^d socoure vnto Olyuer for to
 32 preserue hym that he be not slayn ne vaynquysshed."

¶ He thys sayeng^t & other deuoute wordes in hys
 secrete oratorye Our⁴ lord sente to hym an aungel fro
 heuen whyche sayd^d to hym: ¶ "O Charles, Emperour

Charles at first
threatens to de-
stroy every church
if Oliver is killed,

and then prays
for Oliver's suc-
cess,

recounting the
Fall,

the Crucifixion,

the piercing of
our Lord's side
by Longius,

the descent into
hell,

the Ascension,

and the ordination
of Baptism.

An angel appears

¹ *Ed.* knees.

² *col.* 2.

³ *Ed.* traycour.

⁴ *Ed.* Out.

and tells him that
Oliver will be the
victor.

Fierabras aims a
stroke at Oliver,

which he dodges,
and wounds the
Saracen.

Oliver's sword
flies out of
hand.

He tries to recover
it, but cannot

through fear of
Fierabras.

The French are
eager to help
Oliver,
but Charles will
not allow them.

of noblesse, knowe thou for trouthe that I am sente
from ¹god for to say to the that thou doubte no thyng
of Olyuer, for wythout faylle he shal wyne the bataylle;
though it be late, but he shal vaynquysse the paynym." 4
thys sayd, the aungel departed and charles thanked
god deuoutelye for hys glorious medytacyon. Neuer-
theles after many bataylles bytwene fyerabras and
Olyuer maad, and grete menaces by grete furour, wyll- 8
yngt to haue gyuen to Olyuer a grete stroke oute of
measure. But Olyuer whyche sawe the stroke comyng
denaunced hym in suche wyse that he gaf two euyl
strokes to Fyerabras, wherof Fyerabras was passyng 12
angry vpon Olyuer, and Olyuer on hym, so that bothe
were ryzt actyf neuer to departe tyl that one of them
were vaynquysshed and destroyed. & at that tyme
Olyuer was soo coueytous in smytyng that his honde in 16
whiche he helde hys swerde was a-slepe and swollen for
the payne that he had of smytyng; and he desyryng to
smyte hys enemye at vtteraunce hys suerde flewe a-ferre
fro hym out of his hande, wherof he was sore moeued 20
and abashed—and it was no mernaylle—and moche
courageously ranne for to take vp his swerde, And
layed hys shelde on hys hede for to preserue it. But
not wythstondyng the paynym smote ²hym twyes so 24
myghtyly that he brake hys shelde in dyuers places
and hys hauberke, so that he was sore astonyed for that
tyme And doubted soo moche the paynym that he durst
not take hys swerde : and moche sodeynlye the frensshe 28
men which sawe so Olyuer dyspourueyed of his swerde
armed them anone and were in purpoos to renne vpon
the sarasyn for to socour olyuer. but Charles wold not
consente that any man shold goo sayeng to them that 32
god is almyghty for to saue and mayntene hym in hys
good ryght, for yf he had not gaynsayed it more than xiij
thousand men were thenne redy for to haue rescowed

¹ D iij, back.

² col. 2.

- hym. and notwithstandyng¹ al thys the paynym dyd²
 but laughe & said to Olyuer: "In trouthe, Olyuer, I haue opteyned³ vpon the a lytel of myn entente, but
 4 wherfore darst not þou take thy swerde I knowe now
 wel that thou art ynough⁴ vaynquysshed sythe that thou
 art so aferde that thou darst not stoupe for all the
 tresour of the world. and I am wel contente for t.
 8 apoynte wyth the that is that thou renye the fayth that
 thou holdest, the baptesme that thou hast receyued⁵ &
 the god in whom thou byleuest, and for whome thou
 hast had al thys payne, & byleue in Mahoun, my god⁶
 12 ful of bounte, & ¹I shal suffre the to lyue & more ouer
 I shal be contente to gyue to the my sister to wyf to
 whom thou shalte be rychely maryed⁷. Hyr name is
 Florypes, the fayrest of moder borne, & after we shal con-
 16 quere Fraunce or thys yere be paste, And of one of the
 royames I shal crowne the kyng." Olyuer ansuerd⁸ to
 hym: "Paynym, thou spekest to me of grete folye, for
 god forbode that euer I shold⁹ be of entencion to forsake
 20 my god, whyche hath created & fourmed¹⁰ me, and his
 holy sacrements which haue been establysshed¹¹ for my²
 sauacyon, for to byleue in mahoun and in thy goddes
 ful of abusyon: whiche haue neyther strengthe ne
 24 vertue but cause of dampnacyon." Fyerabras sayd¹² to
 hym, "by mahoun my god, thou art alwaye moche
 obstynat that ne for payn ne for torment thou wylt not
 denye thy fayth, & of one thyng which is more grete
 28 thou³ mayst wel auaunte the. For neuer was I of
 persone so trauailed ne greued¹³ as I am of the. ¶ Thou
 oughtest wel to be praysed¹⁴. I am contente that thou
 take thy swerde hardyly and surely for withoute com-
 32 petent wepen thou mayst not preuaylle ne more than a
 woman." Olyuer answerd¹⁵: "Paynym, I can not say
 the contrarye but that thou offrest to me seruyce and
 bounte, but for the ⁴valewe of x thousand marke of

Fierabras mocks
at Oliver,

and offers, if he
will renounce
Christianity, to

give him his sister
Floripas in mar-
riage.

Oliver says, "God
forbid!"

Fierabras declares
he never met any
one so obstinate.

Fierabras then
offers to let him
pick up his sword,

¹ D v. ² Ed. fo rmy. ³ Ed. thon. ⁴ col. 2.

but Oliver refuses, golde I wyl not take it, ne for to deye therfore. For yf I had recouerd my swerde by thy curtosye And it happed that thou were vnder my puyssaunce and thou thenne demaundest of me amytye & frendshyp & thenne 4 [I] put the to deth it shold to me be vylete and reproche. And at thys tyme my lyf and my deth be in the wyll of god to whom I haue gyuen my self ouer. But and yf I may wynne my swerde thou shalt bye it dere & here 8 deye, For other thyng shal thou not haue." ¶ "By my fayth," sayd Fyerabras, "thou art moche surquydrous & glorious, wherfore be thou sure that shortely thou shalt be confused descomfyte and matte." 12

and declares he
will win it back
in fair fight.

¶ How at thys bataylle Fyerabras was van-
quysshed by Olyuer after that he had
recouerd one of the swerdes of fyerabras :
capitulo viiij 16

WHan Fyerabras herde that oliuer was so fyers
of fayt and of courage he had grete meruaylle.
For he wold not haue hys swerde but yf he
myght by Iuste warre conquire it, wherfore the paynym 20
dysmesurably came ageynst hym and helde in hys
hande plorance hys swerde. Thenne it was no mer-
uayle though olyuer was aferde to abyde hys enemye he
beyng dyspourueyed of swerde & of shelde, For that 24
was broken in two partyes. but as it playsted to god he
looked besyde hym & sawe the hors of fyerabras and on
the arson of the sadel were ij other swerdes of whych
I haue spoken afore. And anone Olyuer ranne ryght 28
quyckely and took one of the swerdes whych was named
baptisme, whyche had the blade moche large and shone
meruayllously, & after came ageynst the paynym & put
tofore parte of hys shelde suche as was lefte. and whan 32
he was nyghe hym he began to say : "O kyng of

Fierabras comes
against Oliver,

who, looking
round in fear,

sees the Saracen's
horse, on which
are two swords.

He runs and seizes
one, Baptisme,

Alexandrye, now is tyme to compte. For I am pour-
neyed of your swerde of whych I shal make you wroth
& kepe you wel from me for I haue deffyed you."

and defies
Fierabras,

4 Thenne whan Fyerabras sawe it and had herde hym so
speke anone began to chaunge colour and sayd: "O
baptym, good swerde, I haue kepte the many a day for
one of the beste that euer henge by my syde or by any
8 mans that is lyuyng." And after behelde olyuer sayeng:

"By my god Mahoun, I knowe the a man of grete
fyerste. I wold that thou woldest take thyn owne
swerde and late me haue myn and thenne late vs fyght

who asks him to
give up Baptism,
and take his own
sword in ex-
change,

12 as we haue begonne." "by my hede," sayd Olyuer,
"that shal neuer be by my wylle, for tofore I make
any pacte with the I shal assaye and approue thys swerde
vpon thy persone. kepe the wel fro me For ouer long

but Oliver refuses,

16 haue we sermoned." Thys sayeng & other thynges
Olyuer came as a lyon hungry ayenst fyerabras & smote
hym fyrst, but he myzt not attayne hym on the hede
but that he recountred first the shelde of the paynym,

20 whyche he brake and al to-frusshe^d euyl that the half
flewe in the felde. Thenne fyerabras was sore aferde of
that stroke For aboue alle thys the swerde wyth that
stroke entred nygh half a foot within therthe. Thenne

and with a blow
breaks the shield
of the Saracen.

24 olyuer blessyd hym that had forged that swerde and so
wel tempred, and after many menaces rygorous they
were in partye descouerd of theyr helmes. And whan

They both lose
their helmets.

Olyuer sawe the Paynym Fyerabras in the vysage fyers
and courageous he sayd: "O lord god of heuen, maker
of heuen & of erthe, that thys paynym is noble and ful
of cruelte. Now wold god that Charles had hym in

Oliver is astonish-
ed at the appear-
ance of Fierabras,
and prays for his
conversion.

his power and yf he wold be baptysek Rolland and I
32 shold be hys pryue felowes. O glorious vyrgyn marie
moder of god, praye our lord Ihesu Cryste thy sone
that he gyue grace to thys sarasyn that he may byleue
in the cristen fayth, for by hym it may be moche

¹ col. 2.

² D vj.

Pierabras smites
Oliver on his
shield,
and breaks it in
pieces.

Oliver cuts the
Saracen on his
shield,

and nearly stuns
him.

They abuse each
other. (701)

Pierabras wounds
Oliver (732), and

declares his time
has now come.

enhanced." Fyerabras ansuerd in thys manere:
"Olyuer, leue suche wordes: telle me yf thou wylt
fyght like as thou hast enterprysed." "ye," sayd
olyuer, "kepe the wel fro me for I deffye the," and 4
ranne vpon hym: and Olyuer was smyton fyrst vpon
his shelde by suche fiersnes that he smote his shelde in
pyeces nyghe to hys fyste, and it was meruaylle that he
cut it not of: wherfore Fyerabras sayd that he had 8
put hym in suche caas that he shold not longe lyue in
thys world. Olyuer sayd noo worde but came with his
swerde ayenst the paynym Fyerabras moche furiously.
¶ Thenne the paynym that sawe þe stroke come threwe 12
hys shelde ayenst olyuer wherfore anone it was quartred,
and was so astoned that the eyen in hys heed were al
troubled of the payne and the fyre was seen sprynge
oute of the swerdes and sheldes moche habundantlye. 16
and thus in smytyng^r fyerabras sayd in this manere:
"now is the houre come that thou shalt neuer haue ayde
of thy god Ihesus in whome thou byleuest, [but] that
anone thou shalt be deed sythe thou felest thy self ouer- 20
comen. And Olyuer anone ansuerd: "Ihesus is wel
myghty ¹for to shewe hys puyssaunce. But anone thou
shalt knowe that Mahoun ne Termagaunte shal not
mowe ayde the ne be so myghty but that thou shalt be 24
deed, I shal wel gyue the knowleche." And herupon
came that one vpon that other. And olyuer was smyton
on the helme al vnto the flesshe in suche wyse that al
that the swerde araught it share and passed thorough, & 28
thenne he sayd to olyuer: "I swere to the by my god
that I haue wel araught the and smyton. Neuer shal
charles ne Rolland see the be thou wel sure." Olyuer
ansuerd: "O Fyerabras of alexandrye, be not thou so 32
proude for or I departe fro the I shal rendre the dede
or vaynquysshed, & god graunte to me that whyche I
haue alwaye desyred!" And therupon eche smote

¹ col. 2.

other so merueylously that the bodyes of them bothe
 swette for anguysshe and payne. Fyerabras smote
 olyuer vpon the helme soo harde that the stroke came
 4 to the flessch, and yf god had not wrought he had be
 slayn at that tyme. wherfore Olyuer as a man enraged
 came ayenst the paynym & the sarasyn lyfte on hyghe
 hys s̄hilde so that he was al dyscouerd vnder the arme
 8 and hys flanke was there vnarmed. Olyuer was wyse
 & took good hede and came lyghtly & smote ¹fyerabras
 in hys flanke so myghtyly & contynued in suche wyse
 that he thrested his swerde in one of hys flankes wel
 12 depe, & hys swerde hym self & the place was alle bybled
 of the blood. Thus was Fyerabras hurte in suche
 manere that almoost hys bowellys yssued oute of his
 bely, For thenne at that stroke olyuer employed al his
 16 strengthe for to make an ende of the bataylle so longe
 foughten.

Oliver aims a
 blow at Fierabras;
 who, raising his
 shield too high,
 leaves his side
 uncovered. (737)

Oliver thrusts his
 sword in between
 the ribs,

so that the Sara-
 cen's bowels al-
 most fall out. (745)

¶ How fyerabras beyng vaynquysshed' by-
 leued' in god', and' how he was borne by
 20 Olyuer, And' how Olyuer was assaylled'
 of the sarasyns and tormented': capitulo xv

After that the Paynym was smyton and hurte
 mortally as I haue sayd, And he seyng that he
 24 myght nomore resyste ayenst Olyuer, by the
 vertu of god he was enlumyned in suche wyse that he
 had knowleche of the errour of the paynyms and lyfte
 vp hys eyen vnto heuen and began to escrye the holy
 28 trynyte and the grace of the holy ghoost. And after
 looked on Olyuer and sayd to hym: "O noble Olyuer
 & valyaunt knyght, in thouour of god on whome thou
 byleuest and to ²whome I consente I crye the mercy
 32 and requyre the that I dye not tyl I be baptyse^d &
 yelden vaynquysshed vnto Charles the Emperour

Fierabras finding
 himself vanquish-
 ed begs for mercy,

(753) promising
 to become a
 christian,

and to be bap-
 tised, (755)

¹ D vj, back.

² col. 2.

whyche so moche is redoubteð. For I shal bylene in
 the crysten fayth & shal yelde the relyques for whyche
 ye be assemblyd and haue taken soo moche payne.
 And I swere to the that yf by thy defaute I dye sarasyn 4
 I make the culpable of my dampnacyon, And yf thou
 take not me in to thy garde I shal lose my blood.
 Thou shalt see me deye tofore thyn eyen wherfore in
 the honour of god haue pyte on me." Olyuer had so 8
 moche compassyon of hym for hys soor that he sore
 wepte, and after he layed hym in the shadowe vnder a
 tree and there bounde his mortal woundes in suche
 wyse that he staunched hys bledyng. And after the 12
 paynym prayed hym that it myght plesse hym to bere
 hym awaye For hym self myght not goo. but whan
 Olyuer sawe that he was so heuy he sayd that it was
 not to hym possyble to bere hym. Fyerabras enforced 16
 hym self moche & came nyghe to hym, "O noble and
 redoubteð Erle Olyuer, in the honour of god lede me
 to charles or I be dede for I am nyghe at myn ende,
 for al my body bledeth. take that hors and mounte 20
 theron and come as nyghe to me as thou may and yf I
 may lye thwart tofore the vpon the sadel thou mayst
 lede me; & take my swerde by thy syde. ¶ Now
 hast thou foure that been moche worthe. and hye and 24
 depesse the, For thys day in the mornyng I lefte in
 the wode that thou there seest here by fyfty thousand
 men whyche been al my subgettes, & comanded them
 that none shold moeue tyl I were retorneð fro the 28
 bataylle." Whan Olyuer vnderstood hym he was al
 afrayed and abasshed for fere, but not wythstondyng
 he sayd: "Syr kyng, sythe that it plesse you I am
 contente," & took hym thwart the hors as it was sayd 32
 & went forth on the waye in grete sorowe. And
 sodeynly departed out of the wode where as were the
 subgettes of Fyerabras a moche fyers paynym named

- bruyllant of Mommere. And after hym Sortybrant of
 nonymbres, and the kyng of Mantryble; after hym
 maradas, Pynan, & Tenebras, & wel fyfty thousand
 4 sarasyns after. whan Olyuer sawe theym come he smote
 the hors wyth the spores but the charge was so heuy
 that he myȝt not goo so faste as his enemyes came to
 hym. Whan the frensshe men sawe the paynyns come
 8 in so grete nombre anon lyghtely they armed them.
 And emonge other rolland, Gherard of mon¹dydyer,
 Guyllan the scot, naymes of bauyere, Ogier, Rychard
 of normandye, Guy of bourgoyn, Geffroy lantiguy,
 12 Basyn, the duc Thyery of ardeyne, And Aubert, And
 semblably Reyner of genes fader of Olyuer faylled not.
 Olyuer saw alonge the medowe and sawe come to fore
 thother brullant of mommyere which rode on an hors
 16 as swyft as a grehounde and made grete bruyt emonge
 the other, For it semeð as it had be thonder and
 tempeste; and bare in hys honde a faus dart with a
 grete hede of stele square and sharpe whyche was alle
 20 enuenymed wyth the blood of a crapauld and was
 ryght daungerous. whan Olyuer sawe him he was al
 amoued and abashed and sayd to Fyerabras in thys
 manere: "Sir kyng, ye must needs descende; I may
 24 no farther conduyte you, wherfore I am meruayllously
 sory and dysplaysaunt. For I knowe that I must nedes
 be oppressyd; ye see it wel. And yf they may
 attayne I shal be put to deth, And Charles shal neuer
 28 see me whyche shall be to hym grete dyscomforte."
 Thenne anone Fyerabras cryed with an hye voys: ² "O
 noble Olyuer, wyl ye now leue me? Ye haue conquerd
 me, to you I am yeuen and yelden. it shal not be
 32 reputed noblesse determyned whan ³I am youres and
 ye forsake me. Alas poure sorouful and caytyf that I
 am, yf I deye paynym what shal come of me? Virgyn
 marie, moder of god, haue pyte on me vnworthy that I

The Saracens
break out of the
ambush. (812)

Oliver spurs his
horse, but in vain.

Roland and others
rush out to his
help.

Oliver being hard
pressed,
tells Fierabras he
must set him on
the ground.

Fierabras begs
him not to leave
him.

¹ col. 2.

² *Ed.* veys.

³ D vij, back.

am to retorne me to you!" And after he sayd to
 Olyuer: "I am conquerd by the and haue promysed
 to the that I shal be baptysed. Yf thou leue me thou
 oughtest lytel to be preyed." Olyuer ansuerd: "Fy- 4
 erabras, thou spekest as a knyght. But I anowe to god
 and to the courte of heuen that I shal not leue the, I
 shal take the bataylle in honde for the and shal deffende
 the as longe as I shal be on lyue: thou mayst wel truste 8
 therto." & there vpon he took the hauberk of the
 sarasyn and wyth suche as he myzt haue he armed
 hym, & prestly he abylded hym and put on his heed an
 hatte of fyne stele, and helde hys swerde drawen named 12
 haultelere, wyth whiche he coude wel helpe hym. &
 herupon came anone brullant wyth his faus darte &
 atteyned Olyuer in the breste & gaf hym an euyl stroke
 so that the dart brake. theene said fyerabras: "Syr 16
 Olyuer, ye haue doon ynough for me, For ye be hurte.
 late me descende down and laye me a-parte out of the
 waye to thende that I be not defoulled of these sara-
 syngs, ne taken and destroyed." Therof had Olyuer 20
 grete compassyon & layed fyerabras in the shadowe of
 a pynapple tree ferre out of the waye. and whan he wold
 haue fledde he sawe aboute hym wel x thousand sarasyns
 and sayd: "Alas! god Ihesus, my creatour, thou 24
 knowest myn enteneyon. I requyre the to gyue me
 grace that I deye not at thys tyme present vnto the tyme
 that for the exaltacion of thy fayth I may be wyth Rol-
 land my felawe:" & in the name of Ihesus drewe out 28
 haultelere and came in to the waye, & the first that he
 recountred was the sone of the grettest lord that was
 there, and gaf hym suche a stroke that he clefted hym to
 the breste and [he] fyl down dede. & Olyuer was abyll 32
 & delyner, and took fro hym hys shielde whiche was al
 newe: for in the bataylle tofore maad he had loste hys,
 & also he had his spere & lete hys hors renne emonge

Oliver promises
not to desert him,

and arms himself
in Fierabras'
armour. (868)

Brillant charges
at and wounds
him in the breast.

He sets Fierabras
down (825), and
tries to escape,

but seeing it is in
vain,
utters a prayer,

draws his sword,
and turns to meet
the Saracens. (833)

the myscreauntes. And atteyned at the fyrst stroke
 Clorgys & smote hym vnto the hert. And in retornyng^t
 he slewe thre sarasyns & they ranne tofore hym as sheep
 4 tofore the wulf whiche is hongry. Thenne came on
 hym marabas, Turgys, Sortybrant of conymbres, and
 the kyng Margaris, and they cryed with an hye voys
 to-gydre : “ by Mahoun our god, thou frensshe man thou
 8 shalt not escape vs ; kepe the wel ¹for by vs thou shalt
 deye ! ” And thenne cam Olyuer emonge his enemyes and
 smote and slewe on al sydes. And the sarsyns smote on
 hym in suche wyse that it was grete meruaylle that he
 12 was not slayne and ouercomen but by force of ²shotte
 and of strokes hys hors was slayn vnder hym. And
 he beyng on the erthe as sone as he myght he aroos
 and beyng afoot sette hys shelde tofore hym whyche he
 16 had gotten, and helde fast haultclere whyche was alle
 hys comforte for to socoure hym. And alwaye whome
 he raught fyl down and was slayn. It is not redde in
 any book that euer ony man so hurt as he was bare hym
 20 so wel and dyd so grete portemente of armes.

He slays Clargys,
and three others.

He is surrounded,

and his horse slain
under him. (891)

He defends him-
self bravely.

¶ How Olyuer was taken & blynfeld' pyteous-
 ly, & myght not be socoured' by the
 Frensshe men : ca. xvj³

24 **O**lyuer was a[1] allone on fote emonge the sarasyns
 ageynst whome he made grete resystence & mer-
 uayllous : but it is not a thyng possyble that he
 myght escape fro theyr handes, for wyth glaues, with
 28 swerdes and with faus dartes of yron they pressyd hym
 so sore that hys shelde was perced in ⁴moo than xxx
 places : & whan hys hauberk was broken & perced wyth
 foure sharpe dartes they perced and wounded hym in
 32 his body meruayllously. Wherefore by veray force &
 for feblesse he fyl to the erthe & there they took hym

His shield is
broken, (896)
his coat of mail
cut to pieces.

He is overpower-
ed, bound, &
blindfolded. (906)

¹ D viij. ² Ed. and. ³ Ed. xvij. ⁴ col. 2.
 CHARL. ROM. III. G

moche outerageously, and after blynfelde hys eyen & bonde hym straytely soo that he myȝt not see, ne wyst not where he was & they sette hym vpon a good hors & bonde hym surely. And whan thys valyaunt olyuer 4 was thus dyspourueyed fro al helpe, fro al syȝt, fro al hope, and fro al comforte, it is good to wete that he was in grete desplaysaunce, For he knewe not what they wold doo wyth hym. Thenne wyth an hye voys by a compas- 8 syon of hert he sayd: "O Charlemayn kyng of noblesse Emperour of valure, where art thou now & knowest thou not where I am? seest thou not what I do? remembreth not me, Noble felawe Rolland? thou art 12 all a slepe. am I deaf or how I may not here the? is there none of you crysten that remembreth me?" These and suche other complayntes makynge the kyng Maradas sayd to hym: "Frensshe man, whatsomeuer 16 thou be thou spekest of folye, For I shal not ete tyl thou be hanged." These sarasyns ranne wyth olyuer, hys eyen blynfelde and hys hondes¹ straytly bounden, in the garde of four fals tyraunts. Thenne vpon thys in 20 especyall came Rolland, Thyerry, & al the peres & charles hym self also, but thys was ouer late for to saue Olyuer. wyth grete cryes they cryed on god & on al the sayntes of heuen. And wyth grete Ire Rolland smote 24 Corsuble in the brest, Gherard of mondydyer came ayenst Turgys, Ogyer smote athenas, And Rychar Amanedys; Guy of bourgoyne atteyned brullant. There was none of the peres of fraunce but that ouer- 28 threwe hys man and made so grete dyscomfyte of the sarasyns that they were al empesshed to holde them to-gyders and to goo theyr waye, but the other paynyns that conduyted Olyuer wente alwaye forth. And in 32 thys bataylle was slayn guyllam, gualtier, & other ynow of valyaunte peple & many other of the moien peple & others, and laye on the grounde. And gherard de mon-

He cries on
Charles for help,
(912)

and on Roland.
(913)

Maradas mocks
him. (914)

Roland and the
other douzperes
charge the Sara-
cens: (932)

each kills a Sara-
cen. (945)

Guyllam, Gual-
tier, and others
are slain (965),
and

¹ D viij, back.

- dydier, the sone of Duke Thyerry, and geffroy langeuyn they bonde dylygently to theyr horses & rode aweye wyth them hastely. but whan charles sawe theym thus
- 4 ladde for angre he loste almoost hys wytte, And wyth an hyghe voys cryed: "saue, kepe, and socoure the barons. O knyȝtes desloyal, that ye be slowe! yf they lede awaye the barons ¹neuer shal ye fare wel." whan the
- 8 Freusshe men herde Charles thus moened as enraged smote theyr horses wyth theyr spores and wente down of a mountayn. And there was Rolland fyrst that helde hys swerde durandall drawn for tauenge hym fyersly,
- 12 and hym that he atteyned was sure to passe by the deth. For he was al enraged by cause that they ledde awaye his felowe Olyuer, & smote a paynym that he clefte hym to the myddle of hys body. at that tyme
- 16 rolland bare hym myghtely: by cause of the multytude of the paynyns he myght not passe forth for to socoure the barons prysonners and chaced them more than v myle ferre & coude not approche them. & thenne
- 20 were many good knyghtes deed, morfounded, and very. And not wythstondyng Rolland sware that he wold neuer retorne tyl the barons of fraunce were taken fro the handes of theyr enemyes. But he myght not do it,
- 24 For the nyght came on & wyst neuer whyther to goo. The sarasyns that were tofore went fleyng alwaye at theyr playsyr. ¶ Thys seyng Charles wyst not what he shold doo ne say, For he doubted that the paynyns
- 28 made a watche & a ryere garde for to close them, ¶ And therfore by force they must leue the felde in ryȝt grete ²dysplaysyr & anguysshe; and so al they retorne.
- The second' partye of the second' book con-
 32 teyneth xvij chapytres & speketh of the tormente of the barons of fraunce, & how they that were taken spaken to ballant thadmyral of spayne.

Gerard and Geof-
frey taken prison-
ers. (973)

The French try to
rescue them. (982)

Roland in the
front.

They chace them
for more than five
miles,

till night came
on, (1013)

when they were
compelled to turn
back. (1020)

¹ col. 2.

² E j.

¶ How Fyerabras was fownden by Charles,
and after was baptysed' and' heled' of his
wonde : ca. primo

On his way back
to the camp
Charles finds
Fierabras lying
under a tree.
(1037)
He reproaches
him.

After that charles knew that he myght not haue 4
ageyn Olyuer ne the other prysoners it was force to
hym to retorne wyth hys people for the nyght was
thenne to them greuous ; & also in retornyng^t they
fonde fyerabras vnder a tre languysshynge, to whom þe 8
kyng said : O unhappy paynym, I ougt wel to hate the
for by the been my men prysonners and loste. thou hast
take fro me oliuer one of the best byloued that I had
emonge al thumayn creatures : hym þat hath be synguler 12
to mayntene my good name. & by the in the ende in
stede of Ioye thou yeldest me sorowe." whan fyerabras
vnderstode hym he sore syghed & sayd : "O ryche
emperour & noble, the moost myghty of human lygnage, 16
In thouour of ¹god I crye the mercy & pardone me.
It is trouthe that Olyuer hath conquerd me, I shal not
hyde it, and I haue promysed hym that I shal be
crystned. I haue left & forsaken al my goddes and yelde 20
me to Ihesus the creatour of the world. And I requyre
the yet that I may be baptysed, and yf I were heled of
my woundes I shal enhance to my power the crysten
fayth & many sarasyns shal be maaed crysten ; and by 24
my moyan the holy sepulcre & the holy reliques shal
be delyuered, for whome ye take grete payne and
trauayle. And also I make an oth to you by god in
whom I now hyleue that I am more heuy & sory for 28
Olyuer that noble knyzt whiche is taken prysonner
than I am for my body whyche is mortally wounded, &
by the grace of god we shal haue hym ones ; wherfore
conclude we that I be crystened, For yf I deye sarasyn 32
it shal be to you reproche." ¶ And vpon thys Charles,
whyche had grete compassyon on hym, made hym to be
borne in to hys lodgyng by his barons. and whan they

Fierabras begs for
mercy, (1042)

promises to be-
come Christian,
(1046)

and to give up the
holy relics. (1056)

Charles has pity
on him and causes
him to be carried
to the camp.
(1067)

- saw hym so hugely *membred* they al were abasshed of his gretenes and largenes, for whan he was vnarmed he was one of the semelyest men that euer was. ¶ And
4 al the Frensshe men gaf grete loes and honour ¹to Olyuer that had foughten & ouercomen suche a man; and as he was vnclothe^d partye of hys woundes opened and began to blede wherof hys hert faylled & fyl down
8 a-swoune, & rolland anone lyfte hym vp. And in al haste they made redy a fonte, & sente for tha[r]chebyssshop Turpyn and Naymes, which were moche Ioyous of this that the paynym shold be crystend. & after that
12 the baptesme was redy the godfaders gaf hym another name & was named floren, (but as longe as he lyued he was called Fyerabras,) and thenne he was layed in a bedde honourable. And at the laste ende of hys dayes
16 he was a saynt and god shewed for hym myracles, and is now called Saynt Floren of Roye. And thenne anone charles made hym to be vysyted by his medycynes & surgyens wel expert, & sercheden al his woundes, and
20 as god wolde they fonde none of his bowellys entamed ne hurt, wherfore the leches were sure for to delyuer hym al hole wythin ij monethes next after comyng. In makyng thys vysytacion the Emperour charles was
24 present & sayd to fyerabras: “yf now olyuer & the other barons were here present tofore the we shold wel be contente.” And charles was thenne al peneyf and heuy moche thynkyng vpon hys ba²rons prysoners, but
28 he maad no more semblaunte.

All the French admire his size and figure. (1076)

He is baptised and named Floren. (1087)

After his death he became a Saint.

Charles orders his own physicians to attend to him. (1092)

They assure him that Fierabras will be well in 2 months. (1097)

¶ How Olyuer & his felowes were presented to ballant thadmyral and cruelly passyoned in pryson: capitulo ij

- 32 **T**He Sarasyns after they had the barons of fraunce tofore named for prysoners they taryed not but ranne tyl they came in to a ryche cytee named

The Saracens carry Oliver and the other prisoners to Aigremore. (1114)

¹ E j, back.

² col. 2.

Agrymore ; and at the entre of the sayd cyte they sowne^d and blewe vp trumpes makyn^g grete bruyt. whan ballant thadmyral, fader of Fyerabras, sawe them he came vnto them & fonde there brullant of mommyer, 4
 to whome he sayd : “ O brullant my frende, telle to vs of your tydynges, how ye haue borne you in my warre and affayres. haue ye taken Charles the emperour whyche so moche is redoubted, & his peres of fraunce be they 8
 dysecomfyted?” Brullant sayd to hym : “ O syr admyral, the tydynges that I brynge you been alle otherwyse, and^t of lasse valewe than ye say. by Charles the kyng we haue been almost defeated^d and^t dyscomfyted. For 12
 of hys puyssaunce it is a meruayllous thyng. Fyerabras your sone is with hym vaynquysshed^d by one of his barons and is made crysten, & he was taken vaynquysshed & dysecomfyted in loyal batayl without doying 16
 ony treson.”¹ whan thadmyral vnderstode this he fyl to therthe al in a traunse, And^t or he came ageyn to hys mynde it was a grete whyle for the sorowe that he had^t of hys sone. and^t whan he was releued he cryed^t wyth an 20
 hye voys : “ O dolaunt vnhappy that I am ! ha ! poure caytyf ! what shal bycome of me ? O Fyerabras, my ryght dere sone and heyer, whyther art thou gone ? Fro whens cometh thys trespaas ? wherfore were thou 24
 taken whyche neuer in bataylle were wery ne had reproche ? ¶ O what euyl tydynges been brought to me of the ! yf he be crysten I am sory that he lyueth : I had moche leuer that he were dysmembred^d and^t put to 28
 deth : ” & thenne as a man feble for sorowe fyl down to the grounde and cryed^t : “ O brullant of mommyere, what is betyd of the noble kyng of Cordube and^t of my neuewe bruchart ? sythe my sone fyerabras the ledar and^t captayn 32
 of all, yf it be trewe that he be lost I shal smyte oute the brayne of Mahomet the god^d whiche hath promysed^t to me so moche good^d, to whome I haue gyuen my self and^t yolden.” Thus sayeng^t alle in a rage he tormented^t

¹ E ij.

Balan enquires
what tidings they
bring. (1124)

Bruillant tells
him of their
defeat. (1129)

and of Oliver's
victory over
Fierabras. (1132)

Balan laments
over his son,
(1134)

and threatens to
smash his gods.

- hym self greuously vpon the grounde.¹ And whan
 thadmyral was a lytel coled of hys grete yre He de-
 maunded of Brullant: "whiche is the knyzt that hath
 4 vaynquys-²shed fyerabras my sone?" brullant answerd:
 "Syr admyrall, your sone hath be conquerd by yonde
 knyght:" in shewyng Olyuer whiche was so fayr & wel
 formed & membred & had emonge al other his eyen
 8 bended. Now anone sayd thadmyral of spayn: "hye
 you & brynge hym to me for I shal neuer ete tyl he be
 dysmembred." whan the frenssh men vnderstode that
 he wold do put Olyuer to deth, whiche was al theyr
 12 comforte, begonne to wepe greuously, & olyuer whiche
 vnderstode it sawe them waylle he reconiforted them
 sayeng, in suche manere that the sarasyns wyst not
 what they sayd, "My lordes & my brethern, ye knowe
 16 our necessite, yf thadmyral myzt know that we be of
 the peres of fraunce our lyues shal be sone termyned,
 for no thyng shal he take pyte of vs but that we shal
 deye shamefully. wherfor I praye you that we al say as
 20 I shal begynne:" to whome alle the other frensshe mer-
 prysonners dyd consente, & wold say & do lyke as he
 counceyllled them. after that thadmyral had comanded
 them to come tofore hym the paynyns vnarmed them
 24 & bonde faste theyr bondes & blynfelde theyr eyen,
 wherof they were moche greued & daungerously hurt:
 & anon thadmyral furiously demaunded olyuer: "pou
 frenssh man, beware that pou³ lye not but say to me the
 28 trouthe how thou arte named & hyde it not." Olyuer
 ansuerd & sayd: "syr, I am named eugynes, sone vnto
 a yeman of poure lygnage, and was borne in lorayne &
 cam on a tyme to the courte of Charles emperour,
 32 whiche gaf to me armes & after adoubed me knyght:
 & also my felawes that ye see tofore you ben poure
 knyghtes aduenturous & haue enterprysed payne to
 serue our kyng, by cause þat by our seruyce we myzt
 be auanced & haue somme good guerdon & rewarde."

Balan enquires
 which of the
 French knights
 overcame Fiera-
 bras. (1144)

Bruillant points
 out Oliver. (1146)

Oliver warns his
 companions not
 to tell their
 names. (1155)

Balan demands
 Oliver's name.
 (1166)

Oliver answers,
 "Eugynes, the
 son of a poor
 yeoman," (1168)

and says that all
 his companions
 are poor knights.
 (1171)

¹ *Ed.* grouude,

² col. 2.

³ E ij. back.

Balan is vexed at this, (1172)

and orders his chamberlain to bind the French

to a pillar that he may shoot at them.

Bruillant interposes, and reminds him that the day is far gone,

and, moreover, Charles might give Fierabras in exchange for the prisoners. (1181)

Balan assents, and orders them to prison. (1184)

“O Mahoun,” sayd thadmyral, “now I am wel deceyued. I supposed by my god that I had had fyue of the valyaunttest erles of fraunce & of the grettest, & thought I had the kayes of fraunce by the moyen of these 4 barons,” & anone called barbacas his chamberlayn and sayd to hym anone: “depresshe the, take these frensshe men and despoyle them & bynde them harde to that pyler & after brynge me my dartes wel sharped wyth yron, & 8 I shal shote at them and smyte hem at my playsyr.” thenne aroos brullant & sayd: “syr admyral, I praye you that at thys tyme that ye do not that enterpryse, for it shal not be wel doo. ye see wel that it is in the euen- 12 tyde & ouer late to do Iustyce, & so ye myght be blamed, seen that your seynorye ne your lor¹des be not here now present. wherfore I praye you that at thys tyme ye do no thyng to them tyl to-morowe atte houre that 16 eche man knowe it, & your Iugement shal the better be approued. For I knowe wel that they haue deserued it wel euidently. And on that other syde yf charles the emperour wold yelde ageyn to you Fyerabras your 20 sone wyth his good wylle ye myght semblably remyse to hym these frenssh men that ye now haue.” “for your loue,” sayd thadmyral, “I am contente,” and sente for Brutamont whych was kepar of the pryson, and gaf 24 to hym grete charge to kepe the frensshe men and that he be wel sure of them, and that he sette them in suche place for to lerne how they haue wrought folylly for to come it to hys kepyng! 28

¶ Of the pryson wherin that the Frensshe men were lodged, And how they were vysyted by the fayre Florypes doughter of the admyral, and of the beaulte of hyr: ca. iij 32

AFTER that ballant thadmyral of Spayne had commaunded that the Frensshe men were sette in

¹ col. 2.

- greuous pry³son brutamont the geayler made Olyuer & his felawes to anale down in to a pryson moche daungerous, whyche was so depe and strayt in the grounde
- 4 that no lyzt myght be seen : in the which were put & nourysshed serpentcs, crapauldes, and other beestes venomous and detestable ; in whyche place al stenche was compryse⁴. and there passed a streme of the salte
- 8 see whiche had hys entree wythout conduyt, by whiche water myght one passe whan the tyde was passed. & or the kepar of the pryson went he blynfeld⁵ them & skiet the dore aboue them, & they beyng in this fylthe
- 12 and stenche anon the water came so habundantly that the poure frenssh men were in the water vnto their sholdres. Thenne the woundes of olyuer began to smerte by cause of the salte water that it perced hys
- 16 hert. ye may wel thynke the payne was grete, But in espeeal of olyuer, which was hurt mortally in many places & had grete necessity of remedye, & he was in a place where al his paynes were renewed & his woundes
- 20 opened : for anon as he felte hym bayned in the salte water he fyl down a swoone & had be dede that tyme ne had be gherard de mondydyer who susteyned hym. & ye may demaunde me how they were not drowned
- 24 seeyng⁶ that the water grewe alwaye. ²ye shal vnderstonde that in that pryson of aduenture were two grete pylers wel xv fote hye vpon whiche by grete force they gate vp olyuer which myzt not helpe hym. & whan
- 28 olyuer was sette therupon in grete anguysshe he waylled & sayd : “ o poure man & vnhappy put vnder by fals fortune ! O Reyner my dere fader, for goddes sake what do ye ? knowe ye where I am ? thynke ye what I make ?
- 32 knowe ye my sorowe ? ye shal neuer see me.” this sayeng & other lamentable wordes of desolacyon the valyaunt man Gherard sayd to hym : “ Syr oliuer, wayle nomore : vnto suche a knyght as ye be it apperteyneth

Brutamont takes the French knights to a deep dungeon,

full of serpents and other creatures. (1195)

The tide rises as high as their shoulders.

The salt water causes Oliver's wounds to smart.

They save themselves from drowning by climbing a pillar.

Oliver laments over his fate.

Gerard cheers him,

¹ E iij.

² col. 2.

not to make suche complainte. reioyce we our self & traiste we in god, whych I wold it plesed that now we that be here were aboue at large al armed & eche a good swerde in his hande onely : for I make a vowe to god 4 that or we shold be put in to this pytte vaynquysshed I shold put to deth iijC sarasyns or moo." the frensshe men beyng on these pylers of marble afore sayd in suche wyse sayeng & other wordes Florypes the syster 8 of fyerabras & doughter of thadmyrall herd them & had grete compassyon of þ^e complayntes that Olyuer made. this douzter was yonge & not maryed, was wel comprysed of body ; resonable of lengthe, ¹whyt & rody as rose in 12 maye. hyr heyre was shynyng as the fyne golde, & hir vysage termyned in lytel of lengthe : and hyr chere lawhyng, hyr eyen clere as fawcon mued, & sparklyng lyke ij sterres. the vysage had she deuysed moche egally, 16 her nose strait whiche was wel semely ; the ij browes whiche were aboue the eyen appyeryng made shadowe ; hyr chekys rounde, whyt as the flour de lys, a lytel

her mouth small : tyssued with reed ; & vnder the nose was her mouth 20 roundette, enhaunced in competent space, fro the chynne al wel proporeyoned to the remenaunte of the hede : with litel sholdres strait & egalle : & tofore aboue the gyrdle hir pappes were reysed after the facyon of ij 24 apples, rounde and euen as the coppe of a l[i]tel montayn. And she was cladde wyth a robe of purple meruayllously ryche fylled & pouldred with sterres of fyn golde, whyche was made of one of the fayrye, & it 28 was of grete vertu for the persone that had it myght neuer be poysoned of herbe ne of venym. And florypes was so fayre wyth hyr abylluments that yf a persone had fasted iij or iiij dayes with out etyng, & he myght 32 see hyr he shold be replenysshed & fylled. & more ouer she bare a mantell whiche was made in the yle of colchos of a woman of the fay-²rye (there as Iason gate the

and wishes he had his sword, and could get at the Saracens.

Floripas hears their cries and groans. (1202)

She is young and well made : with lips like a rose in May :

her eyes like a falcon's :

her shoulders straight, and her breasts like two apples.

So fair is she that a sight of her would satisfy a man who had fasted 3 or 4 days.

Her mantle was made by a fairy at Colchos.

¹ E iij, back.² col. 2.

fiese of golde, as it is redde in the destructyon of troye
 almost at the begynnyng) whiche mantel had so swete
 an odour that it was meruaylle. wherfor of the beaute
 4 of this damoysele eche man meruaylled. & as I haue said
 tofore she had wel herde the complaynt of the frensshe
 men in pryson & in espeeial of Olyuer of whome she
 had grete pyte, and departed fro hyr chambre with xij
 8 maydens hir subgettes, & entred first in to the halle
 where as the paynymys were moche desolate for fyerabras
 whiche was taken & many other grete lordes whiche
 were deed. & whan the doughter had demaunded
 12 tydynges they tolde hyr þat hir broder fyerabras was
 taken & vaynquysshed; wherfore anone she made a
 grete crye and syghed for anguysshe. thenne was al the
 sorowe renewed for hyr sake emonge them, & whan she
 16 had cessyd a lytel of wepyng she sente anone for bruta-
 mont & sayd to hym, "what be they that I haue herde
 speke in the pryson that ben so sorouful?" ¶ "Madame,"
 said the porter, "they be frenssh men longyng to
 20 Charles the Kyng whiche neuer cesse to destroye our
 lawe, slee our peple, repreue our creaunce, and sette a
 nought our goddes: & haue ben aydyng to slee Fyera-
 bras your broder. emong whom ther is one of grete
 24 valure whyche is one of the best made men that euer
 was knowen, and hath ben so myghty that he conquerd
 in loyal batayl Fyerabras." Anone florypes had enuye
 to here hym speke & sayd to brutamont: "I wyl speke
 28 with hem; come and opene the pryson, for I wyl
 knowe of theyr fayt." brutamont answerd and sayd:
 "Madame, ye shal pardonne me: ye may not see them
 by cause of the fylthe and dysfioneste of the place: it
 32 apperteyneth not to you. and on that other syde your
 fader hath deffended me that noo persone shal approche
 the pryson. And I remembre me now wel that oftymes
 by a woman I haue knowen somme shame & deceyued."

Floripas enters
her father's hall,

and is told of her
brother's capture.

She asks Bruta-
mont who the
prisoners are.
(1216)
He telis her. (1219)

Floripas wishes to
see and speak with
them, (1226)

but Brutamont
refuses to open
the door. (1228)

Floripas is en-
 raged, (1234)

and with a staff

strikes him on
 the head and kills
 him, (1251)
 and throws him
 into the dungeon.
 (1257)

Floripas opens
 the door,

and asks the
 prisoners who
 they are. (1266)

Oliver answers
 her. (1268)

Floripas offers to
 release them if
 they will promise
 to do what she
 wishes. (1280)

Oliver promises.
 (1284)

when floripes vnderstood she was for angre almoost fro
 hyr self and sayd to hym : " O enyl glouton despytous,
 oughtest thou to yeue me suche langage? I promyse
 the that I shal make the to be payed shortly," & called 4
 hyr chamberlayn whyche gaf to hyr a staffe, and she
 made semblaunte to opene the pryson and brutamont
 gaynsayed it, & sodeynly she, seying the porter wyth-
 stonde hyr, gaf hym suche a stroke on the vysage pat 8
 she made hys eyen flee oute of his heed, & after he fyl
 down & there she slew hym & threwe hym wythout
 knowyng of the sarasyns in to the pryson where the
 frensshie ¹men were : wherof they were sore aferde and 12
 abasshed when they herd hym, wenyng to them that it
 had be the denyll which wold haue tempted & deceyued
 them. Thenne anone florypes dyd doo lyght a torche &
 dyd do open the pryson & put in the lyght tofore hyr for 16
 to see the prysonners, & cam nyghe to the pyler & sayd
 to them : ¶ " O ye lordes, telle to me what ye ar & how
 ye be named : hyde ye no thyng fro me." Olyuer
 ansuerd & said : " My fayr lady, we ben of fraunce & 20
 men of charlemayns, & hane ben brougt hyther to thad-
 myral, which hath comaunded vs to be here in thys cruel
 prison : & moche better were it for vs that he dyd vs to
 be dysmembred & dye than tabyde in this place." the 24
 curtoys florypes, not-withstandyng pat she was not
 crystened, had so grete noblesse & so grete compassyon
 and said to them : " I promyse yon that I shal put you
 out of this pryson, so that ye promette & swere that ye 28
 shal helpe me to that that I shal say to you." Olyuer
 ansuerd : " therof, madame, I you assure, & that ye
 shal fynde vs all suche by effeete as ye shal desyre, &
 faythful & trewe. For neuer were we other ne neuer 32
 shal be. & be ye sure that we shall neuer fayle you as
 longe as we shall haue lyf in our bodyes, so pat we be
 furnysshed of armes & been ²aboue for to meddle wyth

¹ col. 2.² E iiij, back.

the sarasyns, I shal make to them a grete dyscomfyte."

"vassal," sayd the doughter, "ye may auaunte you ouer moche: yet ye be there and wel ferre for to be oute

Floripas begs him to be quiet. (1293)

4 and yet menace ye them that ben at theyr lyberte. It is better a man wysely to be styлле than folyssshly to speke." Gherard sayd to the lady: "Damoysel, I shal saye to you one worde. he that is deteyned and strongly

Gerard excuses him. (1296)

8 empesshed singeth gladly for to forgete his payne and melancholye." And Floripes byhelde gherard the curtoys whyche excused Olyuer of that whyche he spake ouer hardyly, but thys was not grete meruaylle.

12 For of the Ioye that olyuer had whan the lady said to hym that they shold be put oute of pryson hym thought thenne to be out and armed at his free wyll. But the lady sayd to gherard: ¶ "In trouthe, syr, ye can wel

Floripas compliments Gerard. (1302)

16 say and excuse your felowe redyly. And I byleue veryly that ye can wel playe with maydens of eage in somme chaumbre vnder curteynes & dysporte you in loue: I trowe ye knowe how and what maner." Guillan

20 the scot answerd and sayd: "by my sowle, madame, ye say soth, & of hym ye haue wel deuyned: for fro hens vnto iijC myle ye shal not fynde hys pere.

¹¶ How the frensshe men were put oute² of
24 pryson and were vysyted by the noble
mayde Floripes and of the beaulte of hyr
chaumbre: capitulo iiij

28 **W**Han the fayr Florypes had spoken at hir playsyr wyth the barons prysonners she called hir chamberlayn and made hym to brynge a corde & a stafte bounden ouerthwart, & after lete it down. And whan the frensshe men sawe it they made fyrst Olyuer to goo
32 vp, & the lady and hyr chamberleyn drewe hym vp by grete force: & after that the other wente vp lyghtly

Floripas sends for a rope,

and with it draws up Oliver,

and the others after,

¹ col. 2.

² *Ed.* outo.

Floripas leads them by an old disused passage to her chamber, (1319)

which was built by Methusaleh.

It stands on a rock surrounded by the sea, (1332)

and has a wonderful garden.

Maragond, Floripas' governess, recognises Oliver and the other French knights, (1352)

and threatens to tell the Emir, (1358)

Floripas pitches her out of the window. (1362)

ynough. and¹ after she ledde them by an olde gate and secrete, and wythoute knowyng of ony paynym she made them to entre in to hyr chambre, wherof theentre was made meruayllously after the sarasyns werke. 4
 About the chyef yate was made by grete seyence the heuen & the sterres, the sonne, the mone, the tyme of somer & of wynter; wodes, montaynes, byrdes, beestes, & fysshe were there paynted² of all fygures and lyke- 8
 nesse by meruayllous facyon: & after somme scripatures the sone of mathusale dyd¹ do make it. And thys chambre stood vpon a blacke rocke al enuyrouned² wyth the see, and¹ in one of the quarters ¹was a gardyn 12
 pretoyre meruayllously fayr wherin floures ne fruytes faylled² neuer, & there of al maladyes and sekenesses sauf onely of the maladye of deth was founden comforte and¹ good² helpe. There within grewe mandegloyre. 16
 And with the fayre Floripes were in the gallerye these ladyes, Clarmondyne, florette, Florymonde, & many other fayr vyrgynes. And hir maistresse named² maragonde sayd to Florypes: "A, madame, I knowe wel 20
 these frensshe men. yonder goodly man that ye there see is Olyuer, whyche is sone to Reynier of genes and¹ broder to Audeyne, one of the fayrest that is borne of a woman. And¹ thys is he that hath vaynquysshed fyera- 24
 bras thy broder. & that other is gherard of Mondidier, which oftymes hath be praysed² & honoured². And¹ there is willyam de scot: & the camuse whyche is the hyudmest is geffroy langeuyn. but I praye to my god 28
 mahomet that he curse me yf I ener ete or drynke tyl I haue tolde your fader my lord² thadmyrall." Floripes anone chaunged al her colour whan she herde these wordes, & moche secretly she reteyned² hyr Ire ayenst 32
 hyr & called thys woman to hir by the wyndowe, & gaf hyr so grete a stroke that she fyl to the grounde: and¹ called² her varlet whyche cam to ²hyr prestly and¹ threwe

¹ E v.

² col. 2.

- the woman in to the see. For Florypes redoubted moche hyr fader & his malyce. & whan thys olde woman tombled in to the see Florypes sayd to hyr :
- 4 ¶ “Now goo, thou olde & despytous wretche; thou hast thy guerdon. I am now sure that the frensshe men that ben here ne shal neuer be encombred ne in daunger by the.” and herof the barons made grete Ioye ;
- 8 & thenne Floripes the noble lady came vnto the Frensshe men and kyssed them swetely, & whan she sawe oliuer, whyche was al bloody, and knewe wel that he was hurte she sayd to hym : “Syr Olyuer, ne doubte ye not for
- 12 I shal rendre you anone al hole and in good helthe :” & wente to the mandegloyre and took a lytel : & anone as oliuer had vsed it he was al hole & reduced in to good helthe. The barons beyng in this noble chambre
- 16 anone had good fyre, and after were fette to the table and wel pourneyed of al good vytaylle and delycyous metes, of whyche they had grete nede by cause of the grete hungre that they thenne had endured. and after
- 20 mete they had the baynes chauffed, And thenne they bayned and refayted them at theyr ease; and at the comyng out of theyr baynes they were wel adoubed wyth mantels ryche of sylke & golde broudred. & thenne
- 24 Floripes sayd : “lordes barons, ye knowe wel how I haue put my self in grete daunger to brynge you oute of pryson mortal, and ye be here in surete as ferre as no man hath herde vs. For yf of aduenture it were
- 28 knowen it shold turne vs to euyl. I am not in doubte Olyuer whyche is here present hath ouercomen my brother, to whome naturelly I ought to do reproof. I knowe you wel alle, be ye nothyng abasshed : ye knowe
- 32 wel that ye haue promysed that my secrete shal be hydde emonge you.” and after the sayd Florypes sayd : “lordes, I shal say to you there is a knyght in fraunce² whome I haue longe tyme loued : he is named guy of

The French knights are delighted. (1374)

Floripas sees the blood from Oliver's wound, (1380)

and heals him with a draught. (1389)

The knights are supplied with food, baths, and clothes. (1395)

Floripas reminds them of what she has done for them. (1396)

Floripas tells them she has long loved Guy of Burgundy, (1411)

¹ E v, back.

² Ed, frannee.

whom she had
seen first at Rome
with Lucifer,
(1414) and over-
came him.

For his sake she is
willing to become
a Christian. (1123)

Gerard says they
will do anything
if she will give
them arms.

Floripas gives
them a damsel
a-piece.

All this was very
noble of Floripas,
but shows the
natural curiosity
of women,

bourgoyne, whiche is the moost godelyest man that I knowe & is of the parentage of Charlemayn & of the myzty Rolland. ¶ On a tyme when I was at Rome I sawe hym, & sythe that tyme I haue gyuen to hym myn 4 hert. whan my fader the admyral destroyed Rome, lucafar of bandas which was moche redoubted emonge the Paynyns & the sayd guy of bourgoyne Insteden togyder, but the sayd guy valyauntly smote hym down to 8 the erthe from hys hors, whyche moche plesyd me, And took in gree the valyaunce of hym in suche wyse that yf I haue ¹hym not to husbond I shal neuer marye. And for the lone of hym I wyl be baptysed 12 & byleue in the god of crysten men." With these wordes the frezsshe men were moche Ioyous, and gyuen grete thankynges to god for the good wyll of thys fayre mayde. and Gherard de mondydyer sayd to hyr : 16 "Madame, I swere to you that yf we now were armed & were in the halle emonge the sarasyns we shold make on them a grete dyscomfyture." But florypes was wyse and sayd : "lordes, late vs thynke wysely on our 20 affayres. And sythe that ye be in surete take a litel reste. Loo, here vj maydens of grete noblesse : Eche of you take one for hys owne, for the better to passe wyth the tyme : & reste and take your playsyr, And I 24 shal warante you. For as for myself I shal neuer haue to do with man but wyth Guy of bourgoyne to whome I haue gyuen my herte." Neuertheles for to consyder wel this chapytre there was a grete werke comprysed 28 whan fyrst florypes the curtoys which was a paynym had desyre to speke wyth the freusshe men. alle this toucheth wel the desyre & wyll of wymmen for to knowe newe thynges and tydynges, but as moche as 32 touched the werke that she dyd ayenst the kepar of the pryson & how they were taken ²oute That was the werke of a man wel approued, and it had ben grete

¹ col. 2.

² E vj.

damage yf these barons had abyden in pryson. But the
 fayth of persones doth grete alegement of tormente, for
 the sayntes of heuen by theyr holy fayth haue obteyned
 4 heuen, and many other terryen men victorye of theyr
 enemyes. and wyth good ryght he that fyghteth for the
 fayth, and it happe that he be deteyned, the mercy of
 god is nyghe for to delyuer hym. The cause wherfore
 8 they were delyuerd fro pryson was come fro ferre, that
 was of rome, for guy of bourgoyne whome she had in
 loue, and was contente for to be baptysed and byleue in
 god for to haue the sayd guy in maryage to hyr hus-
 12 bond. wherfore it may not wel be comprysed how loue
 in thys damoyssel was fixxed and comprysed of longe
 affectyon, the which was cause of sauyng of the pry-
 soners whyche were, as I haue sayd, in grete daunger.

and the knights
 had to thank her
 love for Guy for
 their release.

16 ¶ How kyng' charles sente to Ballant thad-
 myral, seuen peres of Fraunce whyche
 wold' not haue goon : capitulo v

20 **T**He Duc of genes, fader of Olyuer, which myzt not
 slepe ne ete ne drinke for the sorowe that he
 had for this sone, whan he myght no lenger
 endure, he came to kyng charles, and sayd to hym :
 "Syr Emperour, for the loue of god haue pyte on me !
 24 ye knowe my sorowe : ought I to lose olyuer my sone,
 for whome I am in contynuell anguysshe ? yf I haue
 none other tydynges, I shal deye or ij dayes of melan-
 colye, or of force I must put my self on the waye to goo
 28 thyder." whan charles vnderstode hym, he was moeued
 and full of compassyon for the melancolye of Reyner,
 & sente for Rolland and sayd to hym : "Fayre neuewe
 rolland, vnderstonde me. To-morne in the mornynge
 32 thou must goo to Aygremore, & shalt say to ballant
 thadmyral wythoute ony hydyng, that he delyuer to the

Reyner is in great
 grief for his son,
 (1425)

and says he must
 go and find him.
 (1431)

Charles tells
 Roland that he
 must go to Balan,
 the next morning,

and demand from him the relics and the release of his prisoners. (1136) the crowne of Ihesu cryst & the other relyques for which I haue taken grete payne : And after aske of hym my barons whom he holdeth in pryson. And yf he wythsaye the, say to hym that I shal hym do be 4 drawen vylaynously, & after hange hym by the neeke, his eye[n] bounden as a theef." whan he had said, Roland answerd : " Syr kyng and fayre vncle, haue mercy on me ! I am wel sure that yf I goo, verayly I shal 8 neuer see you." ¶ The duke naymes was there, whyche sayd : " syr emperour, take hede what ye doo. Roland is your neuwe ; ye knowe of what ¹ valewe he is of. yf he goo thyder, he shal neuer come ageyn." " And I 12 assure you," sayd Charles, " that ye shal goo wyth hym, and bere my letters that I sende to thadmyral." Thys sayd, Basyn the genewey came forth, and sayd to hym : " & how, syr, wyl ye thus lese your knyghtes ? I am 16 certayn that yf they goo as ye haue sayd, that there shal not one retorne." ¶ Charles sware by his eyen in his heed, that basyn shold goo wyth the other tweyne, and so ther shal be thre. Thyerry, duc of ardayne, sayd 20 lyke to thother ; therfore he was ordeyned to goo also. Ogier, (1140) Ogier the danoys semblably sayd they ought not goo ; and therfore he was ordeyned to bere them felywshyp. Richard of Normandy, (1160) Rychar of Normandy came to the emperour and 24 sayd : " Syr kyng, I am al abasshed how ye haue noo pyte of your knyghtes, whyche wyllingly ye wyl make them to deye. I wote wel yf they goo thyder, ye haue loste them." " by the god on whome I byleue," sayd 28 charles, " ye shal goo wyth the other ; and thenne shal ye be vj for to bere my letters to ballant thadmyral whome I soo moche hate." And after, he behelde gny of bourgoyne, and sayd to hym : " come to me : ye are my 32 cosyn, and of my next parentage ; ye shall be the seuenth for to doo my message to thadmyral of spayne. ² And ye shal say to hym that I purpose to baptyse hym, &

Roland remonstrates,
as also does
Naymes. (1146)

Charles says
Naymes shall go
too. (1152)

Basyn protests,
and Charles orders
him to go also,
(1154)
and likewise
Terry, (1172)

Ogier, (1140)

Richard of Nor-
mandy, (1160)

and Guy of Bur-
gundy. (1188)

¹ e vj, back.

² e vj, back, col. 2.

that he holde of me his Royame, hys townes and hys
 cytees, & that he delyuer to me the relyques for whome
 I take on me soo grete payne and trauaylle. And yf he
 4 gaynsaye it, say ye to hym that I shal doo hange hym,
 and make to dye vylaynously." "alas!" sayd Guy of
 bourgoyne, "ryght dere syr and emperour, I knowe now
 wel that ye wyl lese me. yf I goo, I am sure I shal neuer
 8 retorne." & thenne at euen they went al to souper.
 And on the morne, assone as the sonne aroos, the seuen
 barons aforesayd came tofore Charles, And syr Naymes
 said for them al: "Emperour of noblesse, redoubted in
 12 al places, we been here for tobeye thy commaundement.
 We praye the that thou gyue vs lycence and congie for
 to departe; & yf there be ony persone here present, or in
 al thexcersyte, that hath trespaced to vs, we pardonne
 16 hym, & semblably yf we haue offended to ony, In
 thonour of god that it be pardonned to vs." with these
 wordes all the frensshe men that were present began to
 wepe for pyte. And charles sayd to the barons:
 20 "Ryght dere and wel byloued, vnto god of heuen I
 commaunde you; and the meryte of his holy passyon
 and of the holy crosse be in your ayde & comfort."
 And so they departed on theyr waye hastely, transport-
 24 yng them vnto the straunge contreye.

Guy begs off,
 but in vain.

In the morning
 the messengers
 appear before
 Charles, (1499)

who commends
 them to God,

and so they
 depart. (1503)

¶ How the admyral sente xv kynges sarasyns
 to Charles for to haue ageyn fyerabras,
 which were recountred' by the peres of
 28 fraunce, and' slayn: capitulo vj

IN aygremore was thenne ballant thadmyral, al
 sorowful and angry, & had sente for xv kynges sara-
 32 sains for to haue theyr counceyll, whiche at hys
 commaundement came: & one maradas, the moost fyerce
 of the xv, spake fyrst to ballant and sayd: "Syr admyral, Maradas asks

why they have
been called toge-
ther. (1516)

Balan tells them
that they must go
the next morning
to Mormyonde,
(1522)

and demand from
Charles the sur-
render of Fiera-
bras, and homage
for France. (1526)

Maradas pro-
tests, but says
they will go.
(1538)

They arm them-
selves, (1546)

and start. (1548)

wherefore hast thou sente for vs ?" ballant answerd and
sayd : " lordes, I shal say to you þ^e trouth. Charle-
mayn of fraunce requyreth of me grete folye. For he
wyl that I be subgette to hym, & that I holde al my 4
londes of hym. but thys shal not be ; and he is a moche
fole, me thynketh, to enterpryse suche folyes. It were
better to hym to take hys playsyr to slepe, & reste in
his chambres hys olde body, & praye god in his 8
chyrches, and ete suche as he hath. Neuertheles I
counceyl you that ye goo to hym to mormyonde where
as he is lodged, and say to hym that I comaunde ¹hym,
olde dotard, that he hyleue in mahoun our god wyth- 12
oute delaye ; & aboue that, for to sende and yelde to me
ageyn my sone Fyerabras, for whome I am deteyned in
grete anguysshe and sorowe. And furthermore I wyl
that he holde of me al Fraunce and hys regyons : and 16
yf he do not as ye shal deuyse, I shal goo fetche hym
wyth an hondred thousand men armed. And yf by
aduenture ye fynde in your waye any crysten man, smyte
of his heed wythout any mercy : " whan thadmyral had 20
sayd, Maradas answerd : " Syr admyrall, I knowe now
wel that ye wyl haue vs destroyed, for the frenssh men
ben moche felons. And yf we say that ye haue purposed,
he shal sone make an ende of vs, for we shal be dys- 24
membred. but hyleue ye not that I say thys for coward-
yse or for to eschewe your commaundement, but that I
wyl accomplysse it. For I haue suche courage, that yf
by aduenture I medle wyth these crysten men, I shal 28
put to dethe ten or I be wery. And yf I do not as I
haue sayd, I wyll that ye do smyte of my hede." alle
his felawes sayden that eche of them shold do as wel
as Maradas ; wherefore wythoute more delyberacyon they 32
wente to horse-backe, wel arme, & grete speres in theyr
hondes, with penouns ²reyse, puyssauntly, and Iour-
neyed forth on theyr waye, and rested not tyl they

¹ e vij. col. 2.

² e vij. back.

- passed the brydge of mantryble; & assone as they myght,
 they passed ouer. And the freysshe men afore named
 came and recountred those sarasyns. And fyrst, due
 4 Naymes espyed them, & sayd to his felowes: "O lord
 god of heuen, what enterpryse hath these sarasyns made!
 See ye not them, how they come ayenst vs wyth grete
 puyssaunce? aduysse we vs what is best to doo." Rolland
 8 sayd: "my lordes, ne doubte ye noo thyng. Beholde,
 and see them; they be not passyng¹ xx or xxx; late vs
 ryde straye to them." They alle were of hys oppynyon,
 and ryde forth fast ayenst them. ¶ Of the partye of
 12 the sarasyns was Maradas puyssaunt & wel armed,
 whyche went and sayd to the freysshe men: "how be
 ye so Infortunat and cursd to come and mete wyth vs,
 and ye be cristen?" Duke Naymes ansuerd: "what
 16 someuer thou be, thou spekest vylaynously and ouer
 folysshly: we be men longyng to þ^e redoubted emperour
 Charles, and goo in hys name to do a message to Ballant
 thadmyral." Maradas sayd to hym: "ye be in daunger:
 20 wyl ye defende you or doo otherwyse?" Naymes
 ansuerd: "we wyl defende vs by the helpe of Ihesu
 our maker." maradas said: "which¹ of you dare Iuste
 ayenst me?" "I am al redy," sayd Naymes. Maradas
 24 sayd: "thou art moche presumptuous; For yf I had
 suche ten as thou arte, I wold confounde² them al wyth
 my swerde, and bere theyr hedes to thadmyral, wythout
 getely to wery me." and after sayd to hys felawes:
 28 "herkene hyther, syrs, I wyl that no persone of you
 moeue, For I allone wyl conquere them alle; and after
 I shal present them to ballant thadmyrall." whan rolland
 had herde, he was almoost araged for anger, and after
 32 sayd to Maradas: "thou hast folyly spoken and thought
 thyng whyche thou shalt neuer see. or it be euen, þou
 shalt knowe what we can do. kepe the fro me, for I
 deffye the." And whan he had thus sayd, he broched

After they had
 passed Mantrible
 Naymes sees them
 coming, (1555)
 and is frightened.

Roland advises
 them to fight.
 (1563)

Maradas chal-
 lenges them, (1568)

and asks if any of
 them will fight
 him. (1576)

Naymes offers to
 do so, (1577)
 but Maradas
 mocks at him,
 and says he is too
 old. (1579)

Roland is enraged
 at this,

¹ e vij, back, col. 2.

² *Orig.* confounde.

charges at him,
(1589)

and cuts him
down with
Durandal. (1605)

The other Sara-
cens try to avenge
his death,

but are all slain
save one, - 1621

who escaped and
carried the news
to Balan. (1627)

hys hors wyth his spores sharply. And they recountred
soo harde with their speres square & sharpe, that it was
grete mervayle that bothe were not dede with þ^e stroke,
theyr hawberks were al to-broken. And wyth theyr 4
swerdes they smote the helmes rycheley wrought.
Rolland was so furyous, that he¹ helde durandal, and
araught maradas vpon his helme, that he descerkeled and
departed it; & after by grete force reconer^d hys stroke 8
vpon hys bare hede, and clefte it vnto vnder hys brayne:
and al dede ma²radas fyl down to therthe. whan the
other sawe kynge Maradas dede, and that Rolland wolde
haue borne awaye hys heed, they loke^d eche on other as 12
al abasshed, and concluded to take vengeaunce on the
frensshe men, and ronnen vpon rolland for to haue put
hym to deth, but he deffended hym ouer meruayllously.
And there-vpon that one partye came vpon that other, 16
& helde them in bataylle so valyauntlye, in especyal
the frensshe men ayenst the sarasyns, that alle the
paynims were slayne, & none saued of the xv, but one,
whiche fledde whan he sawe his felowes dede, and went 20
for to shewe how they were destroyed by the frenssh
men, & neuer cessed tyl he came to thadmyral. To
whome thadmyral sayd: "Syr kynge, ye be wel hasty
to retorne! telle me now how ye haue done." That 24
other sayd to hym: "syr admyrall, by mahoun, it gooth
ryght euyl. beyonde the brydge of mantryble we
recountred seuen glotons of fraunce, which were men of
kyng Charles al enraged, and sayd that they came in 28
hys name to do a message vnto you. & after, they ranne
vpon vs, and haue doon theyr deuoyr so gretely ayenst
vs, that al be dede sauf I, whyche am escaped wyth
grete payne for to come and shewe to you." whan 32
thadmyral vnderstode thys, he was almost dede for
sorowe of the deth o' hys kynges aforesayd.

¹ *Orig.* he he.

² e viij.

³ e viij, col. 2

¶ Of the meruayllous bridge of Mantryble ;
of the trybute there payed' for to passe
ouer, and' how wyth fayr wordes the
4 frenssh men passed ouer the said brydge :
capitulo vij

8 **W**Han the frensshe men aforesayd had put to deth
the sarasyns, they were al tranaylled and wery,
and wente and rested them in a medowe al
grene and ful of swete floures : and after sayd the duc
naymes : " my lordes, I counceylle you that we retorne
to Charles, and say to hym how we haue doon ; & I wote
12 wel that he shal be wel contente whan he shall knowe
how we haue gouerned vs." Thenne Rolland answerd
and sayd : " How, Syr naymes, speke ye of retornynge ?
Speke not therof, For as longe as I may holde durandal
16 in my hond, by the playsyr of god I thynke not to
retorne. For we wyl doo our message to ballant thad-
myral, how someuer it be. and late vs do one thyng
wherof euery man shal speke. late eche of vs take one
20 of these hedes, and we shal presente them to thadmyral."
Naymes sayd to hym : " syr 'rolland, it semeth that
ye be oute of your wytte. For yf we do so, we shal be
anone slayn." Thyery and the other were of thoppyn-
24 yon of Rolland ; and so eche of them toke an hede, and
rode forth on theyr waye. Duc naymes was the fyrst
that wente & behelde the brydge of mantryble, whyche
was meruayllous, as ye shal here, and sayd to his felowes :
28 " lordes, ye shal vnderstonde that beyonde the brydge is
Aygre more, where we shal fynde thadmyral." Ogier
the danoys sayd : " vs byhoueth fyrst to passe by thys
brydge, whych is moche daungerous. There ben xxx
32 arches of marble wel spaeyous & brode, whyche been
soulded wyth leed and cyment, & with grete barres of
yron : vpon² whyche brydge been grete towres wyth

The French rest
themselves,
and debate what
to do. (1649)

Naymes proposes
to return, (1653)

but Roland will
not agree,

and suggests each
should take the
head of one of the
Saracen kings
and present them
to Balan, (1662)

to which they all
agree.

Ogier describes
the bridge of
Mantryble. (1678)

¹ e viij, back.

² Orig. wpon.

The walls of the bridge are ten ells, and 20 knights can go on it abreast.

The river under is called Flagot, (1699)

and runs so fiercely that no boat could live in it.

The bridge-ward is a giant, Galafré by name. (1700)

Roland says he is not afraid to cross, (1710) in spite of the giant,

but Naymes says he will manage to cheat him. (1717)

fayr pylers rychely ordeyned, & the walles ben of grete
 strengthe. For at the lowest may wel be mesured ten
 ellys a brede. hyt is soo brode that xx knyghtes may
 goo arme in arme at their ease. & there is a drawebrydge 4
 for to drawe vp, whiche descendeth wyth ten grete
 chaynes of yron. And aboue on hye is an egle of golde
 moche replendysshiaunte and shynynge lyke the sonne,
 that it semeth that it were a flame of fyre, whyche is 8
 seen a large myle ferre. and the ryner that passeth vnder
 is named fla'got, whyche is byneth the arche by mesure
 xv foot, and remeth so Inpytuously as a quarel out of an
 arbalastre, in suche wyse that neyther bote ne galeye 12
 may passe ouer, for the grete cours of the water. And
 more ouer this brydge is kepte wyth a geaunte for
 thadmyral, whyche geaunte is named Galafré, one of the
 moost terryble of humayn people. And he holdeth a 16
 grete axe of stele for to destroye them that wyl doo
 ayenst hys wylle. And who that wyl speke wyth
 thadmyral must nedes passe by hym." "Seygnours,"
 sayd rolland, "doubte ye no thyng, I praye you: care 20
 not for passynge ouer the brydge, For I swere to you
 that as longe as it shal please god to kepe my body, &
 that I may holde durandal in my honde, I shal not doubte
 ony paynym the valewe of a peny, what somener he be. 24
 And by god that henge on the crosse, I shal smyte the
 porter yf he come tofore me, what somener shal happe."
 Due naymes of bauyere reprysed hym: "Rolland, ye
 speke not wysely. It is not good to gyue a stroke for to 28
 receyue therfore fyftene: late me do; For by the playsyr
 of god and of hys sayntes, I shal say to hym suche
 lesynges and other thynges that we shal passe wyth
 onte daunger." whan the frensshe men came tofore the 32
 brydge, the porter toke an hondred knyghtes, & came
 & aualed the lytel brydge wyth as many guysarmes &
 other glayues of defence. The fyrst that went byfore was

- duc naymes with hys whyte heeres, for he was older than any of the other. Anon the porter passed ouer & toke Naymes by the honde, & drewe hym ouer, & after
- 4 sayd to hym: "whyther wilt thou goo?" Naymes answered: "I shal say you the trouth. we be men of charles, the noble emperour, & goo to Aygremore to do a message to ballant thadmyral. But certeynly he hath
- 8 quytte his contreye of fals peple, for it is not longe tyme passed that on the felde we fonde xv gloutons, whyche wold haue taken fro vs our lyf & our horses. Neuertheles we haue gouerned them in suche manere that
- 12 here ben the hedes. beholde them wel what they be, yf ye byleue me not." whan the porter herde hym, he was almoost oute of hys wytte for angre, & sayd to Naymes: "vassal, vnderstonde me! ye must paye the passage of
- 16 the brydge tofore al thyng." Duc Naymes sayd: "porter, demaunde what ye ought to haue, & we shal contente you." "by mahoun," sayd the porter, "it is not a lytel. For I aske of you xxx couple houndes,
- 20 after, an C maydens chaste & of good maners, an C fawcons mewed, an C palfroyes in good poynte & rested, and for enery foot of the horses a marke of fyn gold; & atte last I must haue ii[ij] sommyers charged
- 24 with golde & syluer. thus ought ye paye, or ellys come not here. and he that may not paye the trybute tofore deuysed, he must lese hys heed wythoute other excusacyon." duc Naymes was not abasshed, Notwithstondyng
- 28 that he knewe the occasyon that the porter sought that they shold deye, by cause that it was not possyble to paye that he had deuysed: & answered to the porter in this manere, and sayd: "Syr porter,
- 32 yf I owe noo more than ye haue sayd, ye shal be contente or mydday be passed. Our bagayge cometh after vs, and harnois more in nombre than an hondred thousand, where there be maydens fayr, &

Naymes rides in front.

Galafre stops him and asks his business. (1726)

Naymes says they are messengers from Charles to Balan. (1727)

Galafre demands his toll,

30 couples of hounds, 100 maidens, 100 falcons,

100 steeds, and 400 marks of gold

and 4 packhorses laden with gold. (1740)

Naymes says that Galafre will find all this and more in their baggage, which is following them. (1748)

gentyl fawcons, & dogges grete plente, hawberks, helmes, and good sheldes wythoute nombre, And many other Jewellys noble and ryche : take of them as it shalle playse your wylle.” ¶ The portyer supposed that he had 4 said trouthe, and was wel contente, and lete the brydge down, and after they passed ouer lyghtly. Rolland, which myght not forbere lawhyng, sayd : “ In trouthe, syr Due Naymes, ye haue wel spoken, for by lesynges 8 we passe thys brydge.” and rolland came ¹ behynde alle the other ; & whan they were a lytel forth vpon the brydge, Roulland encountred a Turke, and sythe sayd in his courage : “ A, lord god of paradys, late me do a 12 thyng wherof thou mayst be honoured, and alle thyng happe wel,” and withoute sayeng of ony worde to his felowes, he lyghted down from hys hors, and toke thylke turk by the myddel, and threwe hym hastely in to the 16 ryuer. ¶ Due Naymes loket behynde hym, and sawe the paynym falle, and was moche angry, and sayd : “ lord god of heuen, I trowe the deuyl is in the body of Roulland ! he can haue noo pacyence in hym. and yf god 20 helpe vs not, he shal cause vs al to be slayn and vylaynsly deye.” For Rolland was so fyers of courage that he toke none hede of the tyme ne the place how to gouerne² hym, but wold alwaye auenge hym on his 24 enemye where he myzt fynde hym.

Galafre believes him and lets them pass. (1755)

Roland meets a Saracen,

and throws him over into the river. (1761)

Naymes rebukes him.

¶ How the barons came and' spake to the Admirall, and' how they dyd' theyr message : capitulo viij 28

The French knights enter into Aigremore. (1768)

THe barons afore sayd, whan they had passed the brydge and were nyghe vnto aygremore, where as ballant was, they entred in to the towne in ³good ordynaunce, and wyth countenaunce of fyersnes and of 32 noblesse. And they sawe in the stretes, fawcons and

¹ f j, back. ² *Orig.* gruerne. ³ f j, back, col. 2.

other byrdes of proye vpon the perches, grete oxen and
 buefs slayn & flayn, fayre hangyng, and grete swyn
 strangled; and they recou^{nt}red a sarasyn whome they
 4 demaunded where thadmyral was. And he shewed hym
 to them, where he satte vnder a tree in the shadowe. and
 thenne they alyghted, and duc Naymes sayd: "my fayre
 lordes, I shal bere the letter and shal speke fyrst, and ye
 8 after." Roulland was there, and present hym, and wold
 by force haue spoken fyrst. & duc Naymes sayd to hym
 "Say not one word, for ye be al fro your self, wythoute
 hauyng attemperaunce. but god do not to vs grete grace,
 12 ye shal make vs alle to deye or the day be passed."
 And herupon they entred and presented them al tofore
 the admyral wythoute ony reuerence. And duc Naymes
 of bauyere spake fyrst in thys manere: "The maker of
 16 alle the world, to whom onely ouzt to be gynen creaunce
 entyere and honoure, saue and kepe the noble kyng
 charlemayn, puyssaunt, stronge & wyse emperour, rol-
 land & olyuer, & al the other pyeres of fraunce, and
 20 confounde, fro the toppe of the hede vnto the plantes
 of the feet, the Admyral¹ here present, as moche as
 tofore yesterday hys subgettes were euyl pourueyed be-
 yonde þ^e bridge of mantryble. we fonde fyftene glotons
 24 on the felde, which wold haue taken from vs our horses
 and do to vs vylonnye, but, god of heuen be thanked,
 they bought it gretely and dere." ¶ Whan the Admy-
 ral vnderstoode this langage, vnnethe he myght kepe
 28 hymself fro enragyng. And there tofore hym came
 the kyng that escaped, of whome I haue spoken tofore,
 and sayd to thadmyral in thys manere: "Ryght dere
 syr, thynke to aduenge you. These been the seuen
 32 glotons of whyche I tolde to you, whyche haue slayn
 your kynges, and haue doon to you suche vylonnye."
 The admyral Ballant ansuerd: "late them be for thys
 tyme:" and sythe after sayd to Naymes the duc², that

A Saracen shows
 them the way to
 Balan. (1772)

Naymes says he
 will deliver the
 message. (1776)

They present
 themselves before
 the Emir.

Naymes begins
 his message by
 cursing Balan and
 his men.

Balan is enraged.

The Saracen king,
 which had
 escaped,
 tells him who the
 French knights
 are.

¹ f ij.

² Ed. duc.

he shold^t fynyshe hys message. And the duc ansuerd
 that he so do wold^t gladly, and^t sayd^t in thys manere :
 “The grete noble kyngⁱ of Fraunce commaundeth the
 that thou rendre to hym the crowne, with whyche the 4
 blessyd Ihesu Cryste was crowned wyth, and^t the other
 relyques for whome he hath taken grete trauaylle and^t
 payne ; & also his knyghtes whom thou holdest in
 pryson folysshly. and^t yf thou do not as I haue to the 8
 deuysed, Charles shal make the ¹to be hanged^t by the
 necke on a gybet and^t strangled vylaynously.” Thad-
 myral ballant, replenysshed^t of an enteneyon moche
 oultrageous, sayd^t to Naymes the duc : “Thou hast 12
 gretely defouled^t me by oultrage, and^t I haue wyllingly
 herde the. Goo forth and^t sytte down by yonde pyler,
 & these other shal speken whom I haue not yet herde.
 Mahomet my god^t, to whome I haue gyuen myself, 16
 gyue me an euyl deth yf euer I ete or drynk tyl I see
 thy hede flee fro thy sholdres.” The duc Naymes
 ansuerd : “yf it playse god^t my maker, & his blessyd
 moder, þou shalt haue made a lesyng.” After hym 20
 spake Rychard^t duc of Normandy, & said : “vnder-
 stonde me, syr admyral ! Charles the kyng, with his
 berde florysshed, comandeth the by me, y^t thou do the
 baptyse for tamende thy ryght euyl lyf, & that thou 24
 sende to hym the relyques that thou hast in thy puy-
 saunce, & also that thou rendre to hym hys knyghtes,
 whyche thou holdest wythout reson for prysoners. & yf
 thou do not as thou hast herde, charles shal do hange 28
 the by the necke on a gybet & strangle þe, & shal neuer
 haue mercy on the.” Thadmyral ballant supposed^t to
 haue knowen hym, & sayd^t thus : “mahomet, in whom
 I byleue, curse the ! thou resembllest wel Rychard of 32
 normandy, whych slewe my ²vncle corsuble. Now
 wold^t Mahoun the god^t that he were here ! he shold^t
 neuer ete mete tyl he were dede. Goo and^t sytte down

Naymes delivers
 the message,
 demanding the
 sacred relics,
 (1808)

and the release of
 the prisoners.
 (1810)

Balan in a rage

bids him stand
 aside, (1826)

swearing that he
 will have him put
 to death.

Richard of Nor-
 mandy delivers
 the message (1846)
 to the same effect.

Balan recognizes
 and curses him,
 (1860)

and bids him
 stand aside with
 Naymes.

¹ f ij, col. 2.

² f ij, back.

- by thy felowe, vnto I haue herde thy felowes." Aftyr
 thys thenne came basyn the genewey, & stode tofore
 ballant and sayd: "Ballant admyral, the noble charles,
 4 aboute al humayn creatures redoubted, commaundeth
 the to rendre to hym the relyques whyche haue been
 requyred of the, or ellys he shal do hange and strangle
 the as a theef proued." whan he had sayd thus, he went
 8 and satte wyth the other. And after came thyerry, due
 of Ardayne, & dyssymled his chyere & countenaunce
 of manere. whan thadmyral sawe that he had the re-
 garde so hydous, he was moche abasshed, and supposed
 12 that he had ben a deuyll. And after, thyerry sayd:
 "herkene to me, admyral, & reteyne wel my wordes.
 Charles, the noble emperour redoubted, commaundeth
 the that thou sende to hym the relyques which thou
 16 barest awaye fro Rome, & also sende vnto hym hys
 barons whyche thou hast in thy power, or ellys be thou
 sure that he shal do dysmembre the, & doo hange the
 vylaynsly by the necke." Thadmyral answerd: "vas-
 20 sal, I praye the to telle to me, and hyde it not, what
 man is charlemayn, and of what force & strengthe¹ is
 he, of the whiche I haue herde moche preysed &
 vaunted?" Thenne the due Thyerry ansuerd: "I telle
 24 to the, admyral, & lete the wete, that Charles is noble &
 hardy, curtoys and of good lyf. And be thou sure, that
 yf he were present here wyth hys excersyte, moche sone
 he shold gyue the a buffet vpon thy vysage. And on
 28 that other syde, he setteth nomore by the than of an
 okle hounde dede, or of a roten apple." Incontynent
 the ballant the admyrall bygan to lawhe for felonnye, &
 after sayd to Thyerry: ¶ "My frende, by thy fayth
 32 that thou owest to thy god, say to me now the trouth.
 yf I were now in thy wylle and subgectyon, as thou
 arte in myn, by thy fayth what woldest thou do wyth
 me?" "by my fayth," sayd Thyerry, "I shal not lye.

After him Basyn
 repeats the mes-
 sage, (1864)

and after him
 Terry of Ardane,
 (1874)

at whose appear-
 ance Balan is
 frightened, (1888)

He asks Terry to
 describe Charles
 to him. (1892)

Terry tells him
 that Charles is
 noble and brave,

and cares no more
 for Balan than for
 a dead dog or a
 rotten apple.

Balan laughs

¹ f ij, back, col. 2.

and calls the fifth messenger.

Ogier presents himself and delivers the message, (1910)

and after him Roland repeats it fiercely, (1806)

Balan swears he will neither eat nor drink till Roland is hanged, (1820)

Roland mocks at him.

Guy of Burgundy comes forward,

I shold¹ doo hange the by the necke, and¹ strangle the vylaynsly on a gybet or it were yet nyght.” ¶ “Vas-sal,” sayd¹ the Admyrall, “thou hast sayd¹ grete folye. For by Mahommet my god, in lyke wyse shal I doo of 4 the, as thou hast sayd¹ of thy self. Goo thou and sytte by thy felawes.” ¶ Thenne after hym came the good¹ Ogier the danoyis tofore hym, and¹ sayd¹: “O Admyral of Spaygne, vnderstonde what Charles, the moost noble 8 of humayn creatures and moost ryche ¹wythoute comparyson, demaundeth of the. Rendre and¹ yelde to hym the relyques whyche thou hast borne awaye, or ellys he shal do dysmembre the, and¹ doo the deye shamefully.” 12 Thadmyral, beyng¹ al wroth, made hym to sytte wyth the other. After hym, rolland¹ the courageous came tofore Ballant thadmyral, wythoute doynge¹ to hym ony reuerence, and¹ sayd¹ to hym: “Thou sarasyn, vnhappy 16 & cursed, take hede to my wordes! Charles, the noble kyng¹ and¹ Emperour redoubted¹, sendeth to the by me, that thou byleue in god¹ Ihesu cryst, the maker of al the world¹, & in the glorious vyrgyn marie his moder; and¹ 20 do the to be baptyse¹d, and¹ thynke to rendre the relyques whiche thou occupyest and¹ atteynest ayenst hys wylle. And also see that hys barons be rendred¹ and¹ delyuerd hole and¹ in good¹ poynte. For yf thou do otherwyse 24 than I hane sayd¹ to the, Charles the valyaunte shal make the to be hanged¹ as a theef.” Thadmyral sayd¹ to hym: “thou hast rebuked¹ and¹ blamed¹ me proudly, but I swere to the by Mahoun, my god, & by Terma- 28 gaunte, that I shal not ete tyl thou be hanged¹ & strangled¹.” Thenne Roulland¹ answerd: “for trouthe, sarasyn, yf thou abyde to that houre, thou holdest faste ouer longe. Thou shalt not do so, ²For I doubte the 32 not the valure of an olde dede hounde & drowned¹.” ¶ Guy of bourgoyn came after hym tofore ballant thadmyral, and¹ sayd¹ to hym in thys manere: “Charles

¹ f iij.

² f iij. col. 2.

- commaundeth the that thou make to hym obeysaunce, and repeats the
 and that thou restore the relyques and¹ hys barons ; and message,
 thenne shalte thou do as a wyse man : and² yf thou wylt
 4 byleue me, I wyl wel counceyl the. Byleue in god¹ Ihesu
 Cryste, whyche is almyghty, wythoute endea¹nd¹ wythoute
 begynnyng. And¹ yf thou bylenest my counceyl, thou
 mayst be in his grace. And lo ! what thou shalt do : take
 8 of thy robe, thy hosen, & thy shoon of thy body, and goo
 in thy sherte, and¹ bere on thy body a sadel of an hors,
 and reste not tyl thou come before the face of Charles,
 and¹ humbly presente thy self to hym, & crye for mercy to
 12 god¹ thy maker almyghty, for thyn errours and¹ oultrages.
 ¶ And¹ crye hym mercy in the honour of god¹ almyghty ;
 and¹ yf thou doo not thus as I haue sayd¹, he shal make the
 be hanged¹, brente, or drowned, and¹ shamefully¹ to dye.”
 16 ¶ The Admyrall was more determyned¹ and¹ araged¹
 than he had¹ been tofore, and¹ sent anone for Brullant de
 Mommyere, Sortybrant de Conymbres, and¹ for the
 other that were of hys² counceyl, and¹ demaunded theyr
 20 aduys and¹ counceyl vpon these thynges aforesayd¹.
 Anone sortybrant sayd¹ to hym : “Syr admyral, I
 counceylle you that anone they be dysmembred¹ and
 slayn, and¹ after ye may goo and ryde with your strengthe
 24 oueral, and come to mormyonde where charles is
 pensyf : yf ye may take hym, ye shal put hym to deth.
 ¶ After ye shal descende in to fraunce, & doo you be
 crowned¹ there as kyng.” “by mahoun,” sayd ballant,
 28 “ye haue wel sayd¹. Now be it doon after your deuyse :
 goo in to the pryson, & brynge wyth you the other theyr
 felowes, for to do after the enterpryse.” And¹ thus as I
 haue sayd¹, Thadmyral was of entencyon to make of the
 32 frensshe men aforesayd¹, after that is tofore deuysed¹.

¶ How by the moyen of florypes al the
 frensshe men were saued’, and’ lodged’ to-

¹ *Orig.* shamefluy.

² f iij, back.

gydre, and' the relyques shewed', and other
thynges : capitulo ix

Floripas appears
and asks her
father who the
French knights
are. (1977)

Balan tells her,

and asks her ad-
vice what he is to
do with them.
(1986)

"Cut off their
heads, and burn
them," says
Floripas.

Balan assents,
and proposes to
do so at once,

but Floripas says
it is dinner-time,

and asks for them
to be given into
her charge. (2000)

Sortibrant warns
Balan that women
are not to be
trusted. (2013)

Floripes the curtoys, after that she had wel secretly
herde al the debate toforesayd, she came out of hyr 4
chambre, and salewed hir fader, & demaunded
of hym: "What been these knyghtes sette there
a'parte?" Thadmyral ansuerd: "my doughter, they
be borne in fraunce: the whyche haue sayd to me 8
wordes of grete Importaunce ful of reproches, and haue
blamed me and offended gretely, more than I can telle
you or say. What counceyl gyue ye to me that I ought
to do wyth them?" The doughter sayd: "I shal say 12
to you, my fader, that ye wythoute longe taryeng do
smyte of theyr heedes, for they haue wel 'deserued it.
And do smyte of theyr hondes, & brenne them in a fyre
without your cyte." "my doughter," sayd the admyral, 16
"ye haue ryght wel sayd: ryght soo shal it be doon.
Goo ye in to the pryson, and brynge to me the other."
"good fader," ansuerd the doughter, "it is tyme to dyne,
and yf ye wyl begynne to do Iustyce, ye may not ete 20
tyl mydday be passed." This doughter sought none
other thyng but occasyon by fayr wordes, accordyng to
the wylle of hyr fader thadmyral, for to brynge al the
frensshe men to-gyder wyth them that were prysonners. 24
¶ And after sayd to hyr fader: "gyue to me these
Frensshe men! I shal make theym wel to be kepte;
and after your dyner ye shall do Iustyce wyth lasse
tedyacyon, and thenne your people shal be assembled." 28
¶ To the whyche the Admyral consented, And was
contente thyt his doughter² shold haue them in kepyng.
Alwaye sortybrant, which knewe the mutabylyte of
wymmen & thynconstaunce, sayd to Ballant: "Syr 32
Admyral, it is noo thyng couenable that vpon thys
fayte ye ought to truste in a woman, by cause of theyr

¹ f iij, back, col. 2.

² f iij.

mutabylyte, & ye haue oft herd say ensaumples. and
 also ye knowe the trouthe how many haue ben deceyued
 by wymmen." Moche angry & euyl content was floripes
 4 of the wordes of Sortybrant And sayd: "horson Tray- Floripas in a rage
threatens Sorti-
brant. (2016)
 tour, desloyal, pariured, yf I thought not it shold torne
 me to ouermoeche blame, I shok gyue to the suche a
 buffet on thy vysage, that the blode shold auale down
 8 habundauntly." And after these wordes thadmyral was
 euyl contente of thys debate. And therupon she took She conducts the
French knights to
her chamber.
(2024)
 the freysshe men & ladde them in to hyr chambre wyth-
 oute ony lenger taryeng. And goyng by the waye Syr
 12 naymes the duc sayd: "A god of heuen, kyng of
 eternal glorye, who is he that euer sawe a more fayrer
 lady in hys lyf? Moche wel shok he be Inspyred with Naymes is struck
with the beauty
of Floripas.
 the grace of god that shal haue hyr in hys courage in
 16 loue." Rolland was euyl contente and sayd to Naymes:
 "What hondred thousand of deuyls hath maaed you to
 speke now of loue? It is not now tyme to speke of
 suche thynges." ¹Duc Naymes sayd thus: "Syr Rol-
 20 land, dysplese you not, For I was ones amerous." the
 douzter sayd to them that they were not assembled to
 plede that one ageynst that other. and also sone as they
 were wythin the chambre, the doughter made to shette
 24 faste the yates, & anone rollandimette wyth Olyuer, and
 enterbraced eche other & kyssed wyth franke and
 tender herte in wepyng moche tenderly, and alle the
 other semblably; & Rolland sayd: "Alas, Olyuer, my Roland and Oliver
embrace each
other. (2030)
 28 faythful felowe, how is it with you sythe I last sawe
 you?" "Ryght wel," answerd Olyuer. and eche de-
 maunded of other of theyr feates, of the contreyes, and
 of theyr lordes & tydynges. Now ye may thynke that
 32 they were gladdle eche of other that they were al
 togyder in good poynte by the moyen of Florypes
 the fayr lady, whyche dyd grete socours to crysten-
 dom, whan by hyr, hyr wysedom and dyscrecyon the

¹ f iijj, col. 2.

captayns of the crysten fayth, as moche as toucheth the excersyte of bataylle to destroye the myscreauntes and paynyns, ben founden alle togyder in surete, whyche fyrst were comen in to the houndes of theyr 4 enemyes mortall.

And here we can see how great is the power of woman when she sets her heart on a thing.

Floripas asks of the French knights their promise to assist her in her desires, (2039)

to which they agree. (2043)

She asks Naymes his name: (2049) he tells her. (2051)

Then she asks Richard's name: (2056)

and after Roland's.

¶ But it is grete scyence for to eschewe the wylle of a woman, whan by effecte she putteth hyr entente ¹to a thyng, that her hert dyrectly draweth, and taketh 8 no regarde to the ende of her entente but onely that she may achyue hyr enterpryse and determynacyon. Florypes retched of noo thyng but that she myzt haue tydynges certeyn of gny of bourgoyne, to whome she 12 had gyuen hyr hert, and was contente to be crystened for the loue of hym. Thys fayr Florypes, whan she sawe these barons to-gydre, she sayd to them: "lordes, I wyl that ye alle of one accorde promyse to me the fayth 16 of loyalte that ye shal ayde and helpe me of that I shal demaunde you, & toward me ye shal truly bere and endeuoyre you." "Ryght gladly;" ansuerd duc Naymes, "and also ye shal assure vs that we shal be here in 20 surete withoute any doubte of any man lyuynge." she was contente, & they were contente, and promysed fydelyte that one to the other. whan this was doon, the doughter came to duc naymes for to knowe what 24 he was, and demaunded of hym hys name. the duc sayd to hyr: "Madame, I am called Naymes of bauyere, Man and counceyllour to Charles the Emperour redoubted." "Alas!" sayd the douzter, "your kyng^{is} 28 sory for you." After she came to Rycharde and demaunded of hym how he was named. he ansuerd to hyr: "dame, ²I am Rycharde of Normandye." the doughter sayd to hym: "Mahomet curse the¹ thou putttest to 32 deith on a tyme corsuble myn vncle. But for the loue of these other thou shalt be in no daunger." Florypes came after to rolland, and prayed that he wold telle hys

¹ f iij. back.

² f iij. back, col. 2.

- name. "I am named rolland," sayð he, "sone to due Myllon, & am neuewe to charles, sone of hys syster." Roland tells her. 2061)
- Anone the doughter cryed hym mercy & kneled down
 4 to hys feet, and Rolland toke hyr swetely vp. ¶ After,
 the doughter sayð: "ye knowe what ye haue promysed
 to me. I shal say to you myn entencyon. It is trouthe Floripas tells the knights how she has long loved Guy of Burgundy. (2072)
- 8 work, whyche is named guye of bourgoyne, of whom I
 wold gladly haue tydynges." rolland sayð: "I swere to
 you by my hede that he is here in your syght, & that
 there is not bytwene you tweyne the space of foure foot
 12 of mesure." "Seynours," sayð she, "I praye you that I
 may knowe hym, and that he be gyuen to me, for of hym
 is alle my playsyr." Rolland ansuerd and sayd: "syr
 guy of Bourgoyne, come ye hyther to thys mayde and
 16 receyue hyr Ioyously." Guy of bourgoyn ansuerd:
 "god forbede that euer I shold take wyf, but yf she
 were gyuen to me by Charles themperour." ¶ Whan
 Florypes ¹vnderstode hym, anone she chaungeð colour,
 20 and sware [by] mahommet hyr god that yf he gaynsayed
 it she shold make them alle to be hanged by the necke
 on a gybette. Rolland exhorted Guye that he shold
 do hyr wyll, and vpon that he aduaunced hym, & hath
 24 graunted. Thenne florypes sayð: "the sone of god of
 crystyante be preysed and honoured, For I haue tofore
 myn eyen the moost grettest playsyr that euer myn
 hert desyred. For his loue I shal byleue in Ihesu Cryst,
 28 & shal do me be baptysed:" & after, she approched to
 hym for to treate a lytel the desyre of hir hert, and
 she durst not kysse hym on the mouthe, but on hys
 chekes & chynne, by cause she was a paynym. Thenne
 32 florypes Ioyously and by grete loue came vnto a cheste
 and opened it tofore the barons, and spredde a fayr
 cloth of sylke. And after she dysclosed and shewed the
 relyques of whyche I haue spoken tofore, emonge Floripas kisses him, (2112)
and after produces the sacred relics, (2114,

the crown and
the nails,

whome was the glorious crowne wyth whiche Ihesu
cryste was crowned with in the tyme of hys passyon,
and the holy naylles whyche perced hys holy handes
and feet: and after sayd to Rolland: "Loo! here is the 4
tresour that ye haue so moche desyred." Whan the
frensshe men sawe thus tofore them the relyques, For
loye they alle wepte ¹moche tenderly, and one after the
other wente & kyssed them, knelyng moche humbly; 8
& after, they were layed in to the cheste where as they
had ben tofore.

which the French
knights devoutly
kiss. (2132)

¶ How Lucafer neuwe of the admyral vyo-
lently entred' in to the chambre, & after 12
was slayn of duc Naymes in blowyng of
the cool: capitulo x

Lucifer enquires
of Balan if it is
true that Fiera-
bras is a prisoner.
(2117)

BAllant thadmyral beyng moche wroth & syttyng
at the table, A paynym fyers & proude, a speecal 16
frende of thadmyral, named lucafer of bandas,
sayd to thadmyral affectuously: ¶ "Syr admyral, is it
trouthe that I haue herde say, that Fyerabras, your sone
and my ryght dere brother, is taken and vaynquysshed, 20
whiche was the beste knyght that euer was a-lyue?"

Balan says it is.
(2152)

Thadmyral said to hym: "by my fayth I shal not
hyde it fro you. A frensshe man hath conquerd hym
—whome Mahoun confounde!" Brullant of Mommyere 24
made grete deffence, and the kyng of Sulye. They bare
them soo wel that they brought to vs fyue of the
gloutons of fraunce, knyghtes of Charles, whyche ben in
pryson. and sythe ryght now we haue other seuen whiche 28
ben comen as messagers ²fro the sayd charles, which
haue vytupered and blame vs gretelye in reprochyng
our lawe & despysyng my goddes. Florypes my
doughter hath conduyted them in to pryson." "Syr," 32
sayd lucafer, "ye do grete folye. Wymmen al day for

but that he has
twelve French
knights prisoners,
in charge of
Floripas. (2165)

Lucifer says he is
wrong to trust
them to a woman,
(2166)

¹ f v, col. 2.

² f v, back.

lytel thyng ben chaunged and torned fro theyr thougt.
 neuertheles for the more surete, yf it playse you, and by
 your comaundement, I shal goo to them, and shal knowe
 4 what they be, and of what condycion." "Goo forth,"
 said thadmyral, "ye say ryght wel, and make my
 doughter to retorne wyth you." herupon lucafer, moche
 proude and replenysshed wyth grete fyersnes, cam in to
 8 the chambre where the dougter was and the frensshe
 men, wythoute demaundyng to opene the dore but
 lyfte vp his ryght fote, and smote it so strongly
 wyth hys foot that the barres & lockes flewe vnto
 12 the grounde. Whan Flerypes saw that she was al
 abasshed, And anone sayd to Rolland: "Syr noble
 knyght, I am ryght euyl contente of the vyolence that
 is thus done to me. this is he that shold be my husbond
 16 ageyn my wylle. I requyre you in as moche as ye
 wyl do me playsyr that ye wyl auenge thys dyshonour,
 For I complayne me wythoute makynge ouermoche euyl
 semblaunte." to whome Rolland answered: "doubte
 20 ye no thyng, madame, For, or he departe hens, he shal
 knowe that he hath euyl doon. And I promyse you
 that he bought neuer locke so dere ne of the prys as he
 shal for the brekyng herof." Hereupon Lucafer entred
 24 in to the chambre, and behelde the frensshe men al
 armed wythout ony doubte that he had to them. And
 came fyrst to due Naymes whych was dyscouered and
 bare hede, & wythoute other delyberacyon took hym by
 28 the berde, and drewe hym to hym so boystously that
 almost he had ouerthrowen hym, & after sayd to hym:
 "of whens art thou, veyllard? hyde it not fro me."
 The duke Naymes answered: "paynym, I am of bauyere,
 32 and that is my contree, and am specyall counceyllour of
 Charlemayne, And al these barons that ben here been al
 erles and grete lordes, and ben comen for to shewe to
 ballant the admyral a message fro the sayd charles,

and that he will
 go see if they are
 safe. (2168)

He goes to Flori-
 pas' chamber,
 and bursts open
 the door with his
 foot. (2180)

Floripas calls on
 Roland to avenge
 this insult. (2186)

Roland promises
 to do so. (2195)

Lucifer enters,
 (2197)

and first seizing
 Naymes by the
 beard, (2204)

demands his
 name, (2207)
 which Naymes
 tells him, (2208)

redoubte^d Emperour; & by cause that we haue not
spoken to hys entencion he hath made vs prysonners.
Neuertheles take your hande from my berde, ye haue
holde me longe ynough; And be ye sure that I say not 4
al that I thynke." ¶ The paynym ansuerd: "I am
contente thy folye be pardonned the; but I demaunde
of the by thy loyalte, what maner folke ben they of
¹fraunce, and of what enterpryse, and what playes vse 8
they whan they been in your royaume?" "In trouthe,"
sayd the duc, "Whan the kyng hath dyne^d, who that
wyl may goo playe where hym lyst. Somme ryde
oute on horsback, & somme goo in to the feldes and 12
synge, other make good chere at tables, at the chesse, &
other playsaunte games. and in the morne euery man
gooth gladly & hereth masse at the houre whan it is
sayd, and been wel charytable to gyue almesse to p^e 16
poure peple largely and customably. Also whan they
goo to bataylle they been fyers and hardy, and been not
lyghtly vanquysshed. Suche been the peple in the
contreie of crystente." lucafer began to lawhe and 20
sayd: "by my god Mahoun, vylayne & olde dotard
that thow arte, thow spekest folysshly. It is no
thyng so of your feat, ne frensshe men be of no
valure but yf they can blowe at the grete cole." "In 24
trouth," said the duc, "I herde neuer therof." the
Paynym ansuerd: "I shal teche you the manere," and
he approched to the duc nyghe by a grete fyre,
and in goyng^t Rolland made sygne to the duc that he 28
shold bere hym wel. Anone lucafer toke the grettest
bronde that was on the fyre, And blewe so sharply that
the fyre flewe alle aboute habundantly, and after ²said
to duc naymes that he must also blowe. The Duc took 32
the bronde, and knewe wel the manere that the paynym
wold hurt hym, and approched to hym, and blewe the
bronde so puyssauntly that it fyl al on a flame and came

and asks him to
let him go. (2214)

Lucifer asks him
to describe the
French and their
games. (2216)

Naymes says
some hunt, (2221)

some play chess
or tables, (2224)

and that they are
all brave and hard
to conquer.

Lucifer asks him
if he knows the
game of the "grete
cole?" (2230)

Naymes says,
"No."

Lucifer takes a
coal and shows
him how to blow
it. (2236)

¹ f vj.

² f vj, col. 2.

to the vysage of the Paynym, in suche wye that it brente
 al hys berde. Whan the paynym sawe that, he was
 almoost out of his wytte for angre. The Duc Naymes
 4 wyth that smote hym wyth the bronde in the necke
 that he brake the bone, and so raught hym wyth so
 grete myght that his eyen flewe oute of hys heed^t to the
 grounde, and sayd^t to hym: "Fals creature that thou
 8 arte, Whome I byseche god^t confounde, thou wendest to
 haue made me to muse in thy folyes. Now lye there
 wyth sorowe." Rolland said to hym: "by my fayth,
 syr due, ye can wel playe and^t blowe atte cole. blessyd^t
 12 be that arme that gaf that stroke!" ¶ "Lordes," sayd
 due Naymes, "yf I haue maad^t hym to vnderstonde hys
 folye ye ought not to blame me. ye haue seen how he
 truffed^t wyth me." Florypes the curtoys came ner vnto
 16 due Naymes, And^t sayd^t: "Certes, syr, ye be worthy to
 be honoured. I see wel that Lucafer hath no more
 charge to playe wyth you at the cole; he is now at his
 ease; I see wel that he remeueth not. And I wote
 20 now¹ that he neuer shal haue grete desyre to espouse
 me. For by force he wold^t haue had^t me and my fader
 had gyuen me to hym, but neuer wold^t I haue suffred^t it,
 but rather haue myn hede smyton of, or suffred vylayn-
 24 ous deth."

Naymes blows
 one so as to burn
 Lucifer's beard,
 (2218)

and then kills him
 with the brand.
 (2218)

Roland praises his
 play. (2253)

Floripas thanks
 him, (2256)

and declares she
 would never have
 married Lucifer.

¶ How, by the counceyl of floripes, the frensshe
 men dyslodged^t thadmyral fro his paleys
 wyth grete bataylle, and^t how by enchaunte-
 28 ment a gyrdle was taken awaye fro the
 douzter: ca. xj

Florypes was wyse, and had^t consyderacyon that
 Lucafer, whyche was dede, was wel byloued^t wyth
 32 thadmyral, and^t sayd^t to the frensshe men: "lordes,
 knowe ye for trouthe that my fader loueth more thys

Floripas reminds
 them that Lucifer

¹ f vj, back.

was Balan's
greatest friend,
and would surely
be missed,

and advises them
to arm them-
selves, (2270)

and suddenly
attack the Sara-
cens. (2275)

They arm, and
start out two and
two at night fall.
(2280)

Roland in front,

first slays Cor-
suble, (2289)
and Oliver Cold-
roe. (2291)

The Saracens fly.
(2299)
Some jump out of
the windows.
(2300)

man than ony man lyuyng. he abydeth for hym to
come to dynere, & wyl not be at ease tyl he shal be
retorneð. and yf by aduenture he knowe what is doon
ye shal be here encombreð and assaylled, and al the 4
golde of the world shal not redeme you but that ye shal
be dede. Wherefore I counceyl you that ye doo arme
you and put you in poynte. take lyztly your helmes and
your shieldes, For people that been armed be moche re- 8
doubted of other vnarmed, therefore I wyl not that ye
¹ be closed ne shette herin, Whan ye come in the paleys
where thadmyral is, See that ye bere you and behaue
you soo that ye be maysters and lordes of the place, 12
and thenne shal ye be wel lodged." Whan the dought-
ter had thus sayd, they were ryght wel contente, &
prestly armed them, and gyrde their swerdes aboute
them, And two & two yssued oute of the chambre, and 16
goon corageously as lyons, boystously as wulues hungry,
in suche wyse as they that wold abyde them ought sore
to doubte and haue grete fere. And they went oute
at the tyme that the sonne wente vnder, & bytwene 20
nyght and day. And the foremost of them in the waye
was rolland, and the other folowed hym ryzt fyersly for
to fyght. Roulland cryed to hys felowes that eche
man shold do hys parte, & slee al the paynyns and sara- 24
syns that they fonde in the paleys, whyche faylled not.
Roulland smote corsuble mortally; Olyner put to deth
the Kynges Coldroe. Ther was not one but that they
alle bare them wel. The soupper whyche was wel 28
appoynted anone was torne vp so down & caste to the
grounde; cuppes of golde and of syluer flewe and
sowned in the place; Sarasyns goon to therthe slayn and
dysmembred: Other lepe out of the ² wyndowes, whyche 32
after were founnden dede: Other were all to-hewen,
shildres & legges smyton of. Thadmyral, all araged, put
hym self to flyght oute of a wyndowe and lepe down in

¹ f vj. back, col. 2.

² f vij.

- to the depe dychē. Rolland went, after whyche hað
hym gretely at the hert, & supposed to haue smyten hym,
And atteyned the marble stone of the wyndowe in suche
4 wyse that his swerde entred a foot depe. "Brother,"
sayd Olyuer, "the admyral is escaped fro you." "Cer-
teyn," ansuerd Rolland, "thereof am I euyl contente."
Neuertheles they dyd so grete portement and bare them
8 so wel that they were lordes & maysters of the chyef
toure of the castel & palays. And after shetted fast
the yates and were alle sure wythoute daunger. Sauf
they myght haue noo mete. This passed a lytel whyle
12 the Admyral was in the dyches al affrayed, and yf there
hað not be somme for to haue drawen hym oute he had
neuer departed; and began to crye to his men that they
shold come to hym to drawe hym oute. Brullant of
16 mommyere and sortybrant of conymbres drewe hym
out. And after that sayd Sortybrant: "Syr Admyral,
byleue me another tyme: Alwaye atte tayl of an olde
dogge kepe you." Thadmyrall answerd: "I praye you
20 scorne me nomore, I shal wel aduenge me or two
monethes be passed. Doo sowne to assaulte for tassaylle
the toure." Sortybrant sayd: "it is reson that your
wylle be doon; but the nyzt is ouer nyghe; by myn
24 aduys it is better to abyde tyl to morowe, And thenne
your excersyte shal be assembled for to werke more
surely." thadmyral was contente, and sayd by grete dys-
playsaunce: "Ha, fayr Lucafer! neuer shal I see you
28 more, I haue loste alle my ioye. O ye frensshe men,
accursed be ye! ye haue taken hym awaye fro me, but
by Mahoun my god, to whome I haue gyuen my lyf, to
morne shal the syege be layed tofore the toure. And I
32 shal neuer departe for none euyl wether that shal come,
Ne for thyng that may be, tyl the toure be taken and
the walles layed on the erthe. And I shal make the
frensshe men to be drawen at the taylles of my horses;

Balan escapes by
a window. (2311)

The French are
masters of the
castle, (2321)

but have no food.
(2325)

Balan, who had
fallen into a ditch,
calls for help.
(2330)

Sortibrant and
others rescue him.
(2335)

He swears venge-
ance.

Sortibrant advises
him to wait for
daylight. (2352)

Balan laments
over Lucifer.
(2355)

He is sure the
French knights
cannot hold out,
as they have no
provisions, (2365)

nor can Charles
send them any
help. (2367)

In the morning
the Saracens
assemble, (2369)

they cover four
square miles.

Balan engages
Marvin, "a moche
fals theef," to
steal the magic
girdle. (2387)

Marvin agrees.
(2397)

And¹ after I shal make florypes the putayn to be brente
in a fyre openly, and I am wel sure that they shal yelde
them, For they be not vytaylled² scars for foure dayes.
And¹ of that other parte I knowe wel they may haue no 4
socours of no man whatsomeuer he be. For we holde
the stronge brydge of mantryble, & they may haue noo
socours but yf it come ouer that brydge; & of that other
parte, charles shal¹ haue noo tydynges of his barons ne 8
shal not knowe whether they be dede or a-lyue, or in
lyberte or in subiectyon." & here vpon they concluded¹
and¹ went to their lodgys tyl on the morne. And¹ on the
morne erly, thadmyral sente for al hys subgettes & 12
concluded¹ to laye the syege, and sware to holde it
seuen yere longe but yf he had¹ of them his wylle.
Thenne come there so many paynyns in the contreye
aboute that theyr lodgyses helde foure myle of space. 16
ye may thynke in what daunger the freysshe men were,
whyche were but twelue persones onely, and¹ had¹ none
other conduyte ne comforte but to be wythin assyeged¹
in grete peryll of famyne. Neuertheles alwaye where 20
as the sarasyns dyd greteley theyr deuoyr for to entre,
yet they coude no thyng gryeue them¹. Thadmyral called¹
one marpyn, a moche fals theef emonge alle humayn
creatures, & sayd to hym: "Marpyn, by the berde that 24
I bere on my chymme yf thou mayst do soo moche as for
to stele awaye the gyrdle that Florypes bereth, I shal
rewarde and gyue to the largely of my golde & syluer,
& thou shalt be my grete frende. For yf I may haue 28
it, I am sure that the freysshe men shal sone be dede
for hungre, and thenne may they nomore greue me."
¶ That gyrdle was of suche vertu that² as longe as it
shold haue dured wythin the toure, they wythin shold¹ 32
neuer haue be famyne¹. "Syr," sayd the theef, "abyde
tyl it be nyght, & I swere to you that to morne,
or the sonne aryse, I shal shewe to you the gyrdle, &

¹ f vij, back.

² f vij, back, col. 2.

- shal deliyuer it to you." & herupon, whan it was nyght, he entred secretlye in to the dyches, whyche were ful of water, and passed ouer, and after whan he was at the
- 4 fote of the toure, moche subtylly with his engynes he mounted vp in to the wyndowes, & entrek in to the toure, and took a candel, & after cam to the chambre of Florypes, & fonde it faste shette. But with fals & dy-
- 8 bolyke wordes he opened it; and whan he was wythin, he sawe that al þ^e barons were fast a-slepe, and he made so enchauntements that for no thyng they myght awake. and thenne he came to Florypes, and serched so
- 12 prynely that he took the gyrdle, & after gyrde hym self wyth-al. and after thys he behelde the doughter al naked, whiche was moche fayre; & was enclyned anone to haue defouled hyr, & began to take hyr aboute the necke,
- 16 whyche sodeynly awoke, & began to crye moche strongly, and called hyr maydens & the barons. Wherefore the maydens came anone al abasshed & aferde. & whan they sawe marpyne the thief as blacke ¹as a moore, the moost
- 20 hardyest of them began to flee. Anon as Guye of Bourgoyn herde the voys of florypes, he came to hyr wyth hys naked swerde in his honde, and escryed to hyr that she shold not be aferde of ony thyng. And he came
- 24 so wel to poynte, that yf he had not come, the thief had defowled florypes. but as sone as the thief herde hym, he sprange oute of the bedde wyth grete haste, and Guye of bourgoyne recountred hym, and gaf hym so
- 28 grete a stroke that he clefted hym by the myddel, and cutte a two the gyrdle, and the candel quenched. The other barons came after, and whan they sawe the werke, & the thief dede, they threw the body in to the see
- 32 wyth the gyrdle. And whan it was knowen that he had stolen the gyrdle, and was loste wyth hym in the see, there was moche sorowe for the losse of soo noble a Jewel. And Florypes wepte ryght sore, sayeng that

At night he crosses the moat, (2403,

climbs into the tower, (2406)

and comes to Floripas' chamber. (2405)

He sends the French knights to sleep by enchantment. (2411)

He attempts to ravish Floripas, (2428) who cries for help. (2431)

Guy hears her cries, (2441)

runs to her chamber, (2442)

and cuts down Marvin with his sword. (2448)

He throws his body into the sea,

and the girdle is lost. (2464)

the losse of the gyrdle may neuer be recouerd.
Neuertheles the barons wyth fayre wordes comforted
hyr, in suche manere that they alle were contente.

¶ How the barons were assyeged' in the toure 4
wyth Florypes and hyr maydens, which
suffred grete hungre, and' how the god-¹des
by them were confounded': capitulo xij

Balan is surprised
at Marvin's not
returning. (2482)

W^han the day was comen, and thadmyral sawe not 8
Marpyn thenchauntour retorne, he was moche
abashed, and demaunded brullant, Sortybrant, and' hys
other lordes, counceyl what he shold doo, consydered
that Marpyn was not retorne. Sortybrant sayd: "Syr 12
admyral, knowe ye for certayn that the theef is deed,
sythe he is not retorne and comen; but I counceyl you
that ye doo sounne your trompettes for tasseble your
subgettes, for tassaylle the toure and confounde the 16
crysten men." And wyth slynges and other engynes
they doo caste stones & dartes enmenyem, but—blessyd
be god!—the frensshe men doubted them no thyng
After they had contynued the syege a whyle, brede and 20
wyn began to faylle to the barons and maydens, in
suche wyse that they had noo thyng to ete. Thenne
the sorowe of the maydens, whyche were so fayre &
ful of compassyon, was ouer grete, and were al desolate. 24

Sortibrant says he
is surely dead,
(2184)

and advises Balan
to order the
assault to begin.
(2185)

The French de-
fend themselves
well, (2192)

but their pro-
visions begin to
fail. (2196)

Hunger begins to
be felt, especially
by the women.
(2197)

Guy of Burgandy
proposes to his
fellows

And emonge the other, the noble florypes was moche
dysplaysaunte for the necessaryte of the frensshe men, of
hyr self, and of hyr damoysselles. often tymes she
swowned & fyl to grounde ²as dede: Guy of bourgoyne, 28
hyr spouse that shold be, took hyr vp moche swetely,
and recomforded hyr to hys power, & sayd to hys
felawes: "My brethern & lordes, ye see the necessaryte
that we suffre; it is now thre dayes passed syth we had 32
ony brede. And yet it greueth me more for these

¹ f viij. col. 2.

² f viij. back.

- damoysselles than for my self, And I say you for trouthe
that I may no lenger endure but yf we do otherwyse.
And be ye sure, that I had leuer to put my body in
4 auenture to be hurt and wounded mortally, than I shold
abyde here wythin enclosed wyth thys melancolye.
Wherfor, I say, late vs goo oute for to gete somme
vytaylle; for better is to vs to deye wyth honour than to
8 lyue with shame." Al the frenssh men were of thop-
pynyon of guy. There vpon Florypes sayd: "My
lordes, I wote now wel that your god is of lytel power,
whan he gyueth to you none ayde ne comforte; And I
12 say you wel, that yf ye had adoured our goddes, they
had pourneyed for you mete and drynke." Tofore that
she had fynysshed hyr wordes, Roulland ansuerd and
sayd: "Madame, I praye you that ye shewe to vs
16 your goddes that ye speke of. And yf they haue the
power that ye say, that they may gyue to vs mete and
drynke, & that they do soo moche that the ¹puyssaunce
of fraunce come hyther for to socoure vs, we shal al
20 hylene on them wythout varyeng." The mayde sayd:
"Anone ye shal see them," & Incontynent after that she
had taken the kayes, she ladde the barons vnder the
erthe, and shewed to them the goddes of the sarasyns,
24 whiche were in a place moche noble, precyous, and ryche.
And there were in grete mageste, Appolyn, Mahoun,
and Termagaunt, the god Margot, and Iupyn, and many
other, whyche were alle massy of fyn golde of Arabye,
28 enorned wyth many Iewellys, Odoraunt of bame and
encee; and many other tresours were there assembled.
Guy of bourgoyne sayd, whan he sawe soo grete
tresour: "A! lord god, who wold haue wende that
32 in thys place had be so grete rychesse assembled?
Wold god that Rycharde of normandye had now Iupyn
in hys eyte of Roan, For he shold wel accomplyshe
wyth it the chyrehe of the holy Trynyte. And that

to make a sortie
to get food. (2514)

Floripas says that
if they would be-
lieve on Mahomet
they would have
food enough.
(2528)

Roland asks to see
her gods. (2531)

Floripas leads
them to the
shrine, (2535)

where were
Appolyn, and
Mahomet, Term-
gant, Margot, and
Jupiter, (2539)

and great trea-
sure.

Guy wishes they
had all that gold.
(2547)

kyng charles had thother goddes, he shold repayre ageyn
 þ^e chyrche of rome whyche is destroyed. And with
 the remenaunte he shold make men ryche, and to sette
 them in good poynte." Florypes ansuerd and sayd: 4
 "Syr Guye, ye speke vylaynsly ayenst the goddes; crye
 them mercy & adoure them, ¹to thende that they
 encline them to you to doo you comforte." guy sayd
 vnto hyr: "I can not praye to them, Madame, for I 8
 see theyr eyen al a-slepe, and ye shal see that they may
 not here ne see." and therwyth he smote Iupyn, And
 Ogyer danoys smote margot, that they flewe to the erthe,
 and were anone alle to-broken. Wherefore Roulland 12
 sayd to the doughter: "In trouthe, madame, I see that
 ye haue goddes that be not worth. Of them that been
 fallen to therthe I see not one of them remeue, ne make
 semblaunte to releue hym." Fro thenne forthon Florypes 16
 had al theyr goddes in despyte, and byleued in Ihesu
 Cryste, sayeng thus: "I see, syr Roulland, that ye say
 the veray trouthe; but yf euer I byleue on them, I wyl
 that my body come to an euyl ende. and with good 20
 herte I requyre that god that was borne of a vyrgyn,
 of whome ye haue enformed me, that he sende to you
 socons of fraunce, and that we fynde maner to gete
 vyttalle for to satysfye our hungre." 24

¶ How the peres of Fraunce went out of the
 toure, and dyd a grete bataylle, In which
 they reconerd' twenty sommyers charged'
 of vyttaylle: capitulo xiiij 28

² **W**han Florypes had sayd, she fyl down to the
 erth a-swoone for sorowe & anguysshe.
 Wherefor gny of bourgoyn wept moche sorou-
 fully for the loue of hyr. II[e]reupon Olyuer the 32
 courageous came tofore them and sayd: "My lordes,

Floripas rebukes
 him, (2559)
 and says they
 ought to worship
 her gods.

Guy says they are
 all asleep. (2564)

He smashes
 Jupiter, and
 Ogier smashes
 Margot. (2567)

Floripas is con-
 verted, and begins
 to pray. (2576)

She faints with
 hunger. (2584)

¹ g j.

² g j. col. 2.

- I you assure, by the god that suffred deth for creatures humayn, I had leuer that my body were quartred and smyton in pyeces than I shold suffre this pryson, but
4 that I shold fyght quykely wyth the paynymys;" & semblably sayd rolland. Wherefore, wythout other delyberacion, they sette theyr sheldes in good poynte, and mounted on horsback, and aualed the brydge, &
8 wyth a stedfast courage made them redy. & whan they were alle afore the toure of marble, Rolland sayd to the other: "Syr Naymes, or ye, syr Ogier, it byhoueth that one of you¹ abyde for to kepe the place, that at the
12 retornynge we may entre surely." ¶ The Duke Naymes coude take noo pacyence, but that he answerd thus: "Syr Roulland, thynke not that I be so vnhappy of persone ne of lygnage that euer I shold be reproched,
16 and that euer I shold be your portyer. I wyl not doo so in noo wyse: though I be olde, yet can I torne myn hors. For I am harde of ²synewes, and haue myn herte wel assured, and wyl be hardy ynough for to smyte
20 vpon myn enemyes whan tyme shal requyre, ne doubt ye no thyng therof." Rolland ansuerd: "syr, ye say wel, ye shal come wyth vs. Thyerry or geffroy, that one of you two shal abyde." but it was not their playsyr
24 to abyde enclosed. Neuertheles, at the request of Rolland, thyerry abode with geffroy, whyche shetted the yates surely after that the other barons were wythoute, whyche, eche with his shelde tofore hym and swerde in
28 hys hande, wente mustryng them tofore the castel. Thadmyral lokyng out at a wyndowe, knewe the frensshe men, Wherefor hastely he sente for brullant and Sortybrant to come to hym wyth other, to whome he sayd:
32 "my barons and subgettes, the frensshe men ben comen, and me semeth they wyl fyght. yf they be not al slayn, i shal be euyl contente. Wherefore do sowne your hornes for tassemble your peple; ye tary ouer longe."

Oliver proposes a sortie, (2598)

to which all agree.

They sally out. (2615)

Roland wishes Naymes or Ogier to remain behind to guard the gate. (2618)

Naymes refuses,

and says, though he is old yet he can still fight. (2620)

Thierry and Geoffrey agree to remain. (2631)

Balan sees them coming, (2638)

and bids Sortibrant assemble his men to resist them. (2645)

¹ orig. yon.

² g j. back.

The Saracens
attack them,

but in a little
while more than
100 are killed.
(2656)

Clacion, Balan's
nephew, comes
up with 15,000
men. (2664)

Roland cheers on
his companions.
(2670)

All the Saracens
are afraid of him.
(2679)

After the battle
the French
knights meet 20
pack-horses, laden
with provisions
for Balan. (2692)

They kill the
escort. (2703)

And¹ assone as they had so doon, a grete multytude of sarasyns were there assembled, & came and¹ assaylled the frensshe men. But rolland, that helde durandal in hys honde, with his felowes came vpon the mastyn 4 sarasyns by suche a furour, that in a lytel whyle moo than an hondred were slayn. ¹For vnhappy was he that came to socoure the sarasyns. Thenne came Clacion, whyche was neuewe to the admyral, with xv 8 thousand fyghtyng men.—And know ye for certayn, that in that tyme in spayn was noo sarasyn more doubted than he.—Whan the barons sawe hym come, Rolland escryed gherard, Ogyer & Guy: “O noble 12 knyghtes! in thonour of god, eche of you do so his deuoyr that at thys tyme, wyth vycitorge, we may obtayne vytaylle for the maydens in the toure.” That sayd, Rolland smote his hors wyth hys spores, and wyth 16 durandal smote a fyers Paynym named Rampyn soo myghtely, that he clefte hede and body at a stroke; wherof they þat were there present were abasshed. & thenne the sarasyns doubted so strongly rolland, that 20 there was not a man durst put hym self tofore hym, but yf he thought to deye. Gherard of mondydyer sayd: “My brethern & lordes, Who wyl here-after haue playsyr & be honoured, it is tyme that he shewe hym, 24 for often by one vnhappy man a valyaunt man is in daunger.” Wherfor with that word al these barons were moche more feruent than they had be, to thende that euery man shewed hym self suche as he ouzt to 28 be. & after that þe batayll was fynnyshed for that day, as god wold, the barons fonde by ²the tour aforesayd a grete auenture, For they sawe passe by the castel xx sommyers laden wyth vytayl, that is to say, brede, wyn, 32 venyson, & other vytaylles ynow, and a paynym conduyted them of margote vnto the sarasyns: but Inconyntent the ledars of the sarasyns and of theyr vytayl

¹ g j, back, col. 2.

² g ij.

were slayn anone of the barons, & the duc Naymes &
 Wyllyam the scot conduyted & ledde them forth.
 And Rolland and the other came & anoyded the place,
 4 in suche wyse that they were dryuen in to the tour; but
 this thyng was not doon without daunger and grete
 payne.

and drive them
 inside the castle
 gates. (2704)

¶ How guy of bourgoyn was taken of the
 8 sarasyns, beten vylaynously, and' de-
 maunded' of thadmyral, and the com-
 playntes that Florypes made for hym, &
 other maters: capitulo xiiij

12 A S I haue sayd tofore, the barons of fraunce, thus as
 they wente in theyr repayre, and ladde the som-
 myers afore sayd, there came so grete habundaunce of
 men of armes of the partye of kyng^r Claryon, that it was
 16 merueyлле. There was theune an harde and stronge
 recountre, in so moche that duc basyn was slayn, &
 Aulbery hys ¹sone. For whan he sawe his fader deye,
 Incontynent he fyl vpon hym, and there he was slayn
 20 and abode. and yet thys was not the moost harm, For
 the noble guy of bourgoyn, after that he was menaced of
 kyng^r Claryon, he anaunced hym for to smyte hym. that
 came hym so euyl to passe, that hys hors was slayn
 24 vnder hym of the paynyns, & sodeynly he was en-
 uyronned of moo than an honlred knyghtes sarasyns,
 whyche took hym, & took of hys helme fro hys hede, &
 after bounde hys eyen, so that he saw nothyng, and
 28 ledde hym forth, hys handes bounden behynde hym at
 his backe. and whan guy sawe hym thus deteyned, he
 began to crye wyth an hye voys: ¶ "O Ihesus, veray
 gok, whych hast made & formed me! whyther goo I now,
 32 that am euyl fortunede? O Ihesus, comforte me! O
 noble Charlemayn, ryght noble emperour, and myn

The Saracens
 press heavily on
 the French. (2706)

Basyn and Aubrey
 are slain, (2730)

and Guy taken
 prisoner, (2743)

and led away
 blindfolded. (2747)

He prays and
 cries for help.
 (2749)

¹ g ij, col. 2.

Clarion mocks
Guy. (2753)

The French are so
hard pressed that
they have to take
refuge in the
castle. (2776)

Floripas enquires
after Guy. (2781)

Roland tells her
he is a prisoner.
(2783)

Floripas swoons,

and after declares
she will surrender
the castle if Guy
be not rescued
before two days.
(2792)

vncle, thou shalt neuer see me!" The kyng^r claryon
sayd^t to hym: "Fayr frende, no thyng^e shal auayle
the, thy cryeng^e ne thy brayeng^e. I shal delyuer
the al lyuyng^r to the admyral of spayn thys day, And 4
to-morne thou shalt be hanged^t." But now ye may
wel thynke how the other peres of Fraunce, hys
felowes, were euyl contente whan they sawe the Erle
Guye soo prysonger. ¶ Neuertheles¹ they dyd grete 8
feates of armes or they were constrayned to entre in to
the tour, & assone as they were descended, & the yates
barred, eueryche went to dyner: and thez^ene floripes
cam anon to rolland, & said^t to hym: "syr rolland, I 12
requyre you that ye say to me where is syr guye of
bourgoyne my husbond become. I wote wel, whan ye
departed hens, that he went wyth you emonge thother.
Ye ought to brynge hym to me ageyn. I shal neuer be 16
Ioyous at the hert tyl I knowe where he is." Rolland^t
ansuerd^t: "ha, Florypes, curtoys lady! in hym trust ye
no more, for certes ye haue lost hym. ye shal neuer see
hym; the paynymys haue ledde hym maulgre vs, & we 20
knowe not what they wyl do wyth hym." florypes heer
yng these wordes, for sorowe & anguysshe fyl to the erth
alle a-swoune more than iiij tymes as dede; but rolland^t,
whyche wepte for hyr, oft releued hyr: & whan she was 24
rysen, she began to crye with an hye voys: "O barons
of fraunce, by that god that maad heuen & erthe, yf I
haue not guy of bourgoyne, to whome I ought to be
maryed^t, I shal yelde thys toure^r or the nexte day be 28
passed^t. O holy vyrgyn marye! I shold be espoused to
hym, and for loue of hym be baptyssed and^t be crysten.
Alas! our lounes haue sone faylled^t. This sorowe hath
made me² wel to forgete the hungre that I haue had^t 32
these iij dayes. Alas! I am vnhappy." Rolland^t
myght not see the melancolye of thys Florypes, but
promyse^t hyr to make hyr glad^t wythin ij dayes, for

¹ g ij, back.

² g ij, back, col. 2.

theñne atte ferthest she shold see syr guye at hyr
 playsyr, and that she shold no thyng^t doubte therof;
 “for knowe ye surely,” sayd rolland, “I had leuer to
 4 be quarterd than he shold not come ageyn, & he shal
 be rendred to you, or his deth shal be sore auenged. &
 madame, ye knowe wel that your sorow & wepyng may
 not brynge hym ageyn, & ye wote wel that it is thre
 8 dayes passed syth we ete. we haue purchaced vytayl for
 vs & these damoysselles, of whome ye see the pyte, late
 vs take pacyence of the lytel quantyte, & be we contente
 to entreiene the lyf:” for ye ouyt to knowe that they
 12 myght not recouure the sommyers with vytaylle, by
 cause of the trouble of guy of bourgoyne, whyche was
 deteyned prysoner. After that Rolland had said thys,
 the barons and the damoysselles thanked god of al, and
 16 fedde them suffysauntlye, in praysyng^t and lawdyng^t
 god deuoutelye.

Roland promises
 he will rescue
 him, (2s04)

and advises her to
 take some of the
 food which they
 had won. (2s12)

Now late vs speke a lytel of Guye of bourgoyn,
 whiche was ledde tofore the admyral. moche troubled,
 20 dyscolourd, & chaunged of vysage was the sayd Guye
¹by cause he had not eten in thre dayes tofore, & for þ^e
 daunger that he felte hym to be in the handes of his
 enemyes. & there tofore the admyral he was al des-
 24 poyled of his armes; & theñne appyered his body wel
 membred, & ballant demaunded what was his name &
 who he was. the baron ansuerd: “Admyral, I fere not
 to say the trouthe; I am called guy of bourgoyn, sub-
 28 gette to the crowne of fraunce, & cosyn germayn to
 rolland the valyaunt, which is the man that ought wel
 to be doubted.” ballant ansuerd: “I knowe the wel
 ynough. it is more than vij monethes goon that my
 32 douzter hath had the in grete loue, which dyspleseth me
 gretely: & I know wel that she loueth the more than
 ony man lyuyng; & I for that loue haue lost many men
 of grete facion, & am put out of my tour, the chyef

Meanwhile Guy
 is led before
 Balan, (2s20)

who demands his
 name. (2s25)

Guy tells him.
 (2s29)

Balan recognizes
 him as his daugh-
 ter's love,

and the cause of
 all his trouble.
 (2s36)

¹ g iij.

Balan demands
the names of the
knights in the
castle. (2838)

Guy recounts
their names.

A Saracen gives
him a blow on the
mouth. (2850)

Guy seizes him
with one hand,
and with the other
breaks his neck.
(2856)

The Saracens fall
on him and beat
him nearly to
death. (2860)

strengthe of al my contreye. but yf al be yolden to me
ageyn shortly, þou shalt be quarterd in short tyme, &
dysmembred, & more-ouer I demaunde þat thou say to
me the trouthe, who been they that ben enclosed in the 4
tour, of whom we haue ben assaylled with so daunger-
ously." Guy answered: "gladly I shal say to the. Be
thou wel sure that rolland the valyaunte is there,
Olyuer, his felowe, ryght couragous, Thyerry, due of 8
Ardayne, Rychard of Normandy, Gherard ¹ of Mun-
dydyer, Naymes due of bauyere, & basyn the genewey,
whom ye haue slayn; but, by the grace of god & helpe
of charles, his deth shal be to you dere solde." Thad- 12
myral was ryzt euyl contente of the menaces of Guye;
Wherfore a moche fyers sarasyn took hys fyste and
smote guye on the vysage in suche wyse that the blood
yssued oute of hys nose & mouth habundantly. wyth 16
that stroke, guy was sette a-fyre for angre and furour,
and lefte not for to be forthwith quartred, & he was not
holden, but that he toke that same sarasyn by the heyre
wyth one of hys handes, and wyth that other hande he 20
smote hym vpon the grete bone of þ^e necke behynde,
that he brake it, And, wythoute mocuyng of hande or
foot, he fyl down deed to the grounde tofore the admyral.
¶ Ballant was soo euyl contente wyth that stroke, that 24
he was al enraged for the deth of the paynym, as for
the mysprysyng that guy had doon in hys presence to-
fore his eyen, and cryed with a loude voys that he shold
be taken. & assone as he had sayd the worde, the sara- 28
syns as wulues enraged, whyche wyth theyr feet and
handes al to-bete hym, in suche wyse that he knewe not
where he was, And had slayne hym yf the admyral had
not commaunded theym that ²he shold not be put to 32
deth in suche manere.

¹ g ij. col. 2.

² g ij. back.

¶ How the paynims had' purposed' to haue
hanged' Guye of bourgoyne, seeyng' the
crysten men, whyche socoured' hym
4 myȝtely : capitulo xv

- A**fter that guye of bourgoyn was wel bounden and
straytly, Thadmyral sente to come to hym brillant
of mommyere, Sortybrant of conymbres, and for many
8 other of his counceyl, and sayd to them : " my frendes,
I praye you that ye gyue to me counceyl what I ought
to do wyth thys prysonner, whyche dothe me so grete
reproche & despysyng, as ye see and knowe." " Syr,"
12 sayd Sortybrant, " I shal gyue to you good counceyl.
yf ye wyl byleue me, ye shal doo reyse vp a galowe tree
nyghe to the dyches of the toure, in whych been the
prysonners of fraunce, & to-morne ye shal do hange this
16 prysoner ; & see that ye haue in a secrete place, nyghe
vnto þ^e said galowes, v thousand turkes, wel armed & in
good poynte : and I am sure that the frey[*u*]she men be
so hardy and oute of mesure, that, whan they shal see
20 their felowe for to be hanged, they shal come oute for
to socoure hym ; & your peple that shal be hydde in
the bussheiment shal come out on them & take them.
Thenne shal ye haue them al surely, for to do wyth, your
24 playsyr." this counceyl was approued by thadmyral to
be good, & was therwyth wel content ; wherfore, wyth-
oute takyng of ony other delyberacyon, the galowes
were made as afore is sayd. & ryght nyghe to the place
28 was a lytel wode, & lete put therein secretly xx M
fyghtyng men, & comanded them to be gouerned by the
kyng claryon & other capytayns. & after, thadmyral made
guy of bourgoyne to be ledde with xxx sarasyns vnto
32 the galowes, whyche cessed not to bete and smyte on
hym with grete staues, whyche greued hym sore : &
they bonde his handes behynde hys backe moche

Balan calls a
council. (2869)

Sortibrant advises
him to have Guy
hanged. (2881)

in front of the
castle,

and to set an
ambush for the
French if they
should try to
rescue him. (2880)

This advice is
approved. (2891)

20,000 Saracens
are placed in
ambush, (2902)

and Guy is led
bound to the
gallows. (2905)

straytly. & whan he felte a grete corde aboute his necke,
 and his eyen bounden, & sawe no thyng whyther he
 went, Thys thynkyng, wyth an hye voys he began to
 crye: "O redemptour of the world, my maker and my 4
 god, for whos name I am in payne, and goo to deye an
 enyl deth, the meryte of thy passyon take my soule in
 to thy kepyng, for the body taketh his ende! And lyke
 as I haue nede of thy helpe, So I beseche and requyre 8
 the to counceyll and comferte me. ¶ O noble barons
 of fraunce, ye shal neuer see me: yf¹ ye suffre me to
 be hanged, it shal be to you grete shame. O Roulland,
 fayr cosyn, remembre me! or ellys shal ye neuer see me 12
 on lyue." he thus sayeng, and other pyetous wordes,
 Rolland was in a wyndowe, and behelde ouer a lytel
 roche, and sawe the galowes reysed. Wherefore he came
 to his felawes and sayd: "I meruaylle moche what 16
 thys meneth, that I haue seen the galowes sette vpon the
 dyches. I wote neuer to what purpoos it is doon."
 Whan the other had seen it, Duc Naymes sayd to them,
 that withoute faute they were made for to hange on 20
 guye of bourgoyne. & forthwith they saw hym comyng
 al despoyled, and was ledde toward the galowes; & they
 knewe wel that yf he were not socoured and rescued,
 that he shold be hanged & put to deth. Whan the 24
 fayr florypes herde them plede, she came to them for to
 wete what it was; and after whan she sawe the galowes
 reysed, and guy, hir lone and tocomyng husbond, so
 shamefully ledde, ye may thynke in what estate she 28
 was reduced; and began to crye: "O noble knyghtes,
 shal ye suffre guy of bourgoyn your felawe to be hanged
 tofore your eyen? Truste ye none other, that yf he deye,
 by the same god that fourmed me I shal lepe out of the 32
 wyndowe, & shal deye in despe²racyon." and after she
 came to rolland, & kneled down on both hyr knees, and
 kyssed his feet humbly, in sayeng: "Syr Rolland, in

He calls on his
 companions for
 help. (2911)

Roland, from a
 window, sees the
 gallows, (2913)
 and tells the
 others. (2917)

Naymes guesses
 the object of the
 gallows. (2922)

Floripas implores
 Roland to rescue
 Guy, (2928)

for she can never
 survive him.

¹ g iij.

² g iij. col. 2.

- thonour of god I requyre the that it may playse the to
take the payne for to rescowe & socoure my loue guye,
and ellys I am a loste woman. Thynke for to arme
4 you, and I shal goo and make redy your horses, for the
tyme is ouer short; so that by the playsyr of god ye
shal be there in tyme." Thenne Rolland & his felowes
armed them moche hastely, and gyrde theyr swerdes
8 and shildes, and wente oute of the toure, and on hors
backe sprange oute. And or they rode any fether,
rolland sayd: "lordes, at thys houre lyeth our deth &
our lyf in suche wyse, that yf we haue not good con-
12 duyte & ¹loyal, we shal neuer retorne. We ne ben but
x, & the paynems ben Innumerable & of grete force. In
thonour of god I praye you, that alwaye we holde vs to-
gyder, & that eche take hede of other as moche as he may,
16 For yf we be deuyded, we shal sone be taken and hanged.
And on that other parte, yf one of vs falle to the grounde,
that prestly he be reyse, And not to leue hym for lyf
ne deth, And that none faylle other. And I shal be he
20 that shal brynge you to-gyder by thayde of god; for I
swere ²to you by my lyf, that as long as I may holde
durandal, and may kepe the lyf in my body, ye shal
haue of me a good deffendour and waraunt." and in
24 lyke wyse sayd al the other. Florypes answerd: "my
lordes, ye may tarye ouer longe;" & she went in to hyr
chambre, and opened a coffre, in whiche was the crowne
of Ihesu Cryste, and moche reuerently they kyssed it
28 & sette it on theyr heedes. Wherfor with a good
courage they yssued out, noo thyng dredeyng the puy-
saunce of the paynmys. & after, Florypes and hyr
damoyseyllys lyft vp the brydge, & shette fast the toure.
32 ¶ The noble peres of fraunce, fayr and in good orden-
aunce, wente toward the galowes alonge the medowes,
& the paynmys were vnder the galowes, and were besy
to brynge vp guy of bourgoyn, which had hys eyen

She urges them
to lose no time.
(2929)

The French arm
themselves
hastily, mount,
and prepare to
start. (2938)

Roland warns his
companions to
keep together,
(2941)

and to be ready,
each to help the
other. (2946)

Floripas brings
out the sacred
crown, (2960)

which the knights
kiss, (2962)

and then pass out
of the gates. (2966)

¹ orig. boyal.

² g iiij, back.

Guy is on the
point of being
hanged, (2972)

but Roland puts
the Saracens to
flight, (2976)

and kills 20 of
them.

The ambush
breaks out. (2989)

Roland charges
Cornifer, (2996)

and slays him,
(3008)

and then rides to
the gallows, (3010)
unbinds Guy,

who takes the
arms and horse of
a Saracen. (3032)

The French are
hard pressed.

bounden, & hys handes al-o, and a grete corle aboute
hys necke. and whan Rolland sawe that, he hasted hys
hors, & the other after, & began to crye to the paynims
sayeng: "ha! trayters, mastyns! It shal not be as ye 4
thynk: ye haue begonne suche a thyng wherof ye shal
repente." Of thys bruyt which was made so Impetu-
ously, the moost hardy of xxx that helde guye began
to flee; and they were so hastely poursyewed that xx 8
of them ¹were slayn. here vpon they that were in the
wode camen out, making a grete bruyt; and al afore
came Cornifer, a meruayllous paynym, vpon a morel of
grete faeyon, And began to crye: "ha! ye frensshe 12
men dysmesured! come ye for to socoure hym that is
lugeð by thadmyral to be hanged? ye haue enterpryseð
a grete folye; For al ye shal be hanged wyth hym." Whan
rolland herde the paynym so say, he was moche 16
angry, & helde durandal in hys hande, & came ageynst
hym as a wulf enraged. Neuertheles the paynym
smote on his shelde daungerously; but after that he
was recoured, he attcyned and smote the paynym so 20
puyssantly that he clefte hys heed down to the body.
and after that he was dede, rolland came rennyng vnto
the galowes, and vnblynfelde & vnbonde syr guye of
bourgoyne, and bad hym holde hym by hym tyl he was 24
armed. & after that Roulland had slayn another paynym,
Guye, beyng in thassuraunce of thother peres of fraunce,
he armed hym Incontynent with tharmes of that paynym
by the helpe of hys felowes, & mounted vpon the Paynims 28
hors. but thys was not doon wythoute grete payne and
meruayllous deflence that they made, for anone al the
sarasyns that were in the wode came vpon the ba²rons of
fraunce, and dyd grete Inconuenyents. Neuertheles, by 32
thayde of god, the barons were of so good gouernement
& of so entyer courage, of so meruayllous deflence and
puyssaunce, that at that tyme they put soo many sarasyns

¹ g iiij, back, col. 2

² g v.

- to deth, that the place was al encombred, and al were
 empesshed to goo further. Emonge whome guye of
 bourgoyne dyd meruaylles: for after that he was
 4 armed by the conseruacyon of hys felowes, he dyd
 gretely hys deuoyr, & sayd to the sarasyns: "O ye
 traytres mastyns, I shal shewe you in thys Iourney
 that I am escaped fro your bandes." & by thus fyght-
 8 yng^t they made the sarasyns to withdrawe a grete
 bowe draught. They thus fyghtyng^t, on that other
 syde were moo than ten thousand sarasyns redy to
 empesse them the passage, that they myzt not wyth-
 12 drawe them. Wherfore Rolland, holdyng durandal in
 hys honde, seeyng that, called al hys felowes and sayd
 to them: "lordes, it is noo tyme now to wythdrawe vs,
 but of necessitye we must auance vs for our owne con-
 16 seruacyon: yf we may gete the brydge, doubte we no
 thyng^t, & thenne may we wel saue vs." "Roulland,"
 Sayd Guye of bourgoyne, "Ye knowe wel that in the
 toure we haue noo thyng^e to ete, & yf we were¹ wythin,
 20 how shold we lyue? yet had I leuer to haue my body
 daungerously wounded in fyghtyng^t vpon the sarasyns,
 than to deye for hungre were wythin, & wythoute
 daunger. and yf it be the wylle of god that in thys day
 24 we shold deye, al be it at hys playsyr, and we shal take
 it a worth, as good and trewe knyghtes of god." Al the
 other barons were of hys oppynyon, & goon forth in grete
 purpoos for to bere them valyauntly. They beyng^t in
 28 thys purpoos to bere them valyauntly, as sayd is,
 Florypes was in a wyndowe of the toure, and sawe Guye
 of bourgoyne hyr loue, wherof she was moche Ioyous,
 and cryed to hym wyth an hye voys, that hit wold
 32 plesse hym to come to hyr, sayeng, that yf she lyued, for
 the prowesse of the barons that hyr fader thadmyral
 shold ones be in hys daunger. Wherfor Ogyer the
 danoyis sayd: "Lordes, haue ye not herde how nobly

Guy performs
marvellous feits.

The Saracens be-
gin to give way.
(3041)

Roland calls on
his companions to
make an effort to
gain the bridge,
(3052)

but Guy reminds
him that they
have no pro-
visions, (3055)

and says it is
better to die
fighting than be
starved, (3058)

All the other's
agree. (3061)

Floripas from a
window cheers on
Guy. (3080)

¹ g v, col. 2.

she speketh. She is wel worthy that we doo for hyr.
 And knowe ye that I shal not be at ease yf we thus
 retorne." Thenne, wythoute more langage, the frensshe
 men ronnen vpon the sarasyns hastely, of whome 4
 Roulland was alwaye formest, and made soo grete bruyt
 and descomfyture of paynims, that they eschewed &
 made them to flee tofore him as ¹the byrde tofore the
 sperhawke. Guye of bourgoyn came with a grete cours 8
 ageynst a paynym moche fyers, named Rampyer, and
 attayned hym so harde on the sometie of the heed, that
 he clefte hym to the myddel of hys body. Wherfore
 whan Roulland sawe hys grete valyaunce, he said to 12
 hym: "Guy, fayr cosyn, I haue wel seen how ye haue
 menaced the paynym. Ye haue so doon that Florypes
 the fayr lady ought to loue you and holde you ryzt dere."

¶ How the peres of Fraunce aforesayd' were 16
 pourueyed' of vytaylles, and' after assyeged'
 and' foughten by the paynims: ca. xvj

Whan Florypes the curtoys, beyng wyth hyr
 damoysselles in the toure, sawe the barons of 20
 Fraunce to be assured tofore the castel, she cryed to hem
 hyely: "O ye lordes, I praye you to remembre to gete
 somme vytaylles or ye come entre herein, to thende that
 we deye not for famyne. Olyuer vnderstode wel the 24
 damoyssel, and also roulland, whyche sayd that she had
 wel spoken, and in tyme: "for yf we entre in to the
 castel, we may not departe wyth our ease," and ther-
 upon al the barons with one ²courage goon ageynst the 28
 sarasyns, & smote on them & brake theyr aray, in suche
 wyse ~~but~~ they made them to voyde the place, & to wyth-
 drawe and goo backe a grete dele, and thus as they
 returned vnto the toure, a ryght good aduenture came 32
 ageynst them. For xx sommyers passed forth by, which
 certeyn paynims ledde, whyche al were charged wyth

¹ g v, back.² g v, back, col. 2.

- wyn, brede, and flesshe habundauntly. And anone they that ledde them were slayn and put to deth, And thenne the barons enforced them for to lede them hastelye, and so conduyted them tyl they brought them in to the toure. & in the waye as they retorned, they fonde the body of basyn whyche had be slayn the day byfore, which they took vp, and brought wyth them in to the toure, and were there in surete. For they lyfte vp the brydge, and entred, and after aualed the drawe brydge, and made faste the yates, and surely. And thus were they wel vytaylled for ij monethes & more. ye may wel wete that thadmyral was not ouer Ioyous whan he sawe that Guye of bourgoyn whyche had ben in his subgectyon was wyth hys felawes, And also whan he knewe that they were furnysshed wyth vytaylle so habundantlye. Wherfor ryght angry and euyl contente¹ dyd doo calle hys counceyl, and demaunded brullant of mommyere, and Sortybrant of Conymbres, and other of hys counceyllours, sayeng to them : “ My barons, ye knowe that these frensshe men haue ryght euyl gouerned vs. They haue garnysshed the toure wyth brede, wyn, and other vytaylles : and yf by aduenture it come to the knowleche of kyng Charles, we shal be enpesshed, for he shal come & socoure them, and we shal come make to hym contynuel resystence, For hys puyssaunce is ouer grete, ye knowe it wel. Wherfore I am in grete thought and melancolye what we may best doo.”
- To thys, Sortybrant answerd & sayd : “ syr admyral, I counceyl that euery man be armed, and in grete poynte, for to sette vp the engynes to assaylle the toure & breke it, & after to make sowne and to trompe vp a thousand trompes and hornes Impetuously. And whan the Frenssh men shal here them, they shal be so aferde that we at our playsyr shal mowe entre in to the toure.” Brullant of mommyere answerd to hym & sayd :

provisions, (3136)

which they drive inside the gates of the castle.

On their way they take up the body of Basyn. (3150)

Balan is furious

and calls a council, (3163)

to consider what is to be done.

Sortibrant advises him to frighten the French by

blowing of trumpets, &c.

Bruillant says he is a fool, "Sortybrant, frende ! ye speke of a grete folye. Byleue not þat the frenssh men that be within the toure ben of soo feble condycyon that ye shal make theym aferde wyth blowyng^t & sownyng^t of hornes. ¹Certeyn ye 4 haue nothyng to fere them wyth, And I shal say to you the reason. The flour of the barons of fraunce is there wythin : the moost puyssaunt & the moost noble Rolland^t is there, whych is so puyssaunt and courageous 8 that who-someuer Ioyneth to hym, he putteth hym to deth : And there is the counte olyner : knowe ye not of his grete fyersnes, whychie conquer^t Kynge Fyerabras, the myghtyest of all the paynyns? And I swere to 12 you by Mahoun that he is in theyr companye. For I haue herde say also that there is the counte of mondy-dyer, Gherard^t, whyche hath doon to vs grete domage. and Gerard, Also there is thyerry, the duc of ardayne, and another 16 Terry, fals olde olde knyght that named^t hym self Naymes, duc Naymes, of Bauyere, semblably Guy of bourgoyne, whyche was Guy, and 5 others. of taken from vs whan he was ledde to be hanged^t. And other ther be whyche I haue not named^t. There ben 20 but xj, for one of them was slayn, and ye knowe wel they ben alle of grete resystence.

Roulland^t, the ²neuwe of charles, is of soo grete fyersnes that he doubteth no man lyuyng^t, ne stroke ne 24 shotte that is gyuen hym : and doute ye not, that, yf they were al suche as he is, that ben in the castel, they shold chace vs oute of thys royaume or they ³shold slee vs. And I knowe wel that theyr god waketh for them, for 28 he hath ryzt wel kepte them. Our goddes ben accursed and vnhappy, For it is longe sythe that they haue ony thyng holpen vs." ¶ Of these wordes that brullant thus sayd, thadmyral was passyng^t angry, & sayd^t to 32 hym : "ye haue ryght enyl and folysshly spoken." and so sayeng, he wold^t haue smyton hym wyth hys staf, but the kyng Sortybrant wythdrowe the stroke, sayeng^t :

¹ g vj. col. 2.² orig. newewe.³ g vj. back.

“Syr admyral, leue your angre, and late vs thynke for to
assaylle thys toure, and late vs so do that these fals
frenssh men be vaynquysshed and smyton in pyeces.”

but Sortibrant
prevents him.
(3213)

4 and thus as he had said, thadmyral made to come hornes,
trompettes, and other Instrumentes for to sowne & to
make bruyt and noyse, in suche wyse that al the sarasyns
were there assembled, that they helde þ^e space of a myle
8 longe aboute the toure. After, thadmyral made to come
a man Ingenyous & enchauntour, whyche was named
Mahon, that made two meruayllous engynes, & with
couertures surely made kept them that were there vnder,
12 that they myght not be hurte of the frensshe men.

The Saracens are
assembled;
they cover a
square mile of
ground. (3221)

And by the moyen of these engynes they conquerd the
fyrst wardes of the castel. wherfore the frensshe men,
furyous and ¹wode as lyons, came to the yates of the
16 toure, & the maydens also al armed, whyche with the
barons dyd so wel theyr deuoyr, that he that was raught
and smyton by them, was so terrybly hurt, that he ouer-
threwe and fyl down dede. For they were aboue on
20 hye, and threwe doun grete stones, dartes of yron, &
other mortal engynes, wyth whyche they made con-
tynuel resystence

By means of
engines they win
the outer defences
of the castle,

¶ How the toure was broken and brente by
24 enchauntement, & the barons in grete
peryl of deth, and restored by assaute
maad on the Paynyns: capitulo xvij

THE Paynyns perseueryng in thassault afore sayd,
28 Thenchautour came tofore the admyral, and sayd
to hym: “Ryzt dere syr, I haue made myn engynes al
redy, by moyen of whyche I shal delyuer to you the
frensshe men: make your men of armes to goo a parte,
32 & that I may haue somme to awayte on me.” And
whan they were alle redy as he had deuysed, he sette
them rounde aboute the tour. And by hys crafte and

The engineer says
he has his engines
ready. (3259)

He sets the walls
of the castle on
fire. (3280)

The French are in
despair, (3284)

but Floripas bids
them fear nothing,

and with a pre-
paration extin-
guishes the fire.
(3292)

Balan swears
vengeance on his
daughter. (3297)

Sortibrant says
the French must
soon give in,

for they have no
more shot nor
stones. (3302)

By a furious
assault the Sara-
cens break down a
large part of the
walls. (3314)

Floripas cheers
the French,

arte he made a flamme of fyre so meruayllous, that þ^e
pylers of marble & other stones bygonnen to brenne &
make fyre at vtteraunce, ¹wherfore the frensshe men
were so perturbed that the one sayd to the other, that 4
by force they must yelde the toure, for they had no
moyen to saue theyr persones. Wyth thys, florypes
sayd to them: "lordes, esmaye you nothyng yet vnto
the tyme ye see more." And anone she wente, & took 8
somme herbes and other medecynes, & dyd tempere
them in wyn, For she knewe the manere how that fyre
artyfycyally brente the stones. thus she made this
beurage; and whan it was caste vpon the fyre, it brenned 12
nomore. Wherfore the admyral wende to haue been
out of hys wytte for angre. But Sortybrant tolde hym
that al was quenched by the moyen of floripes his
doughter; wherfore thadmyral was of entencyon to 16
make hys doughter to deye of an enyl deth. The kyng
Sortybrant sayd that he shold do sowne his hornes and
trompettes, and recommence the assaulde al newe, and
at that tyme by force the frensshe men shold be vayn- 20
quysshed: "For I am sure," sayd he, "that they haue
nomore to caste oute vpon vs. For they haue nomore
shotte ne stones, but al is faylled to them." And
thassaulde was made as it was ordeyned Impetuous, that 24
it semed derke for the shotte of arowes, of dartes,
stones, & other engynes: in suche wyse that the ²grete
quarters of the murayl & walles fyl and tumbled down to
the erthe. the barons of fraunce moche abashed, sayd 28
one to another, that thenne they must nedes be vayn-
quysshed, For they sawe parte of the walles & the
pryncipal of the castel falle down. And they beyng in
grete thougt, Florypes sayd to them thus: "Lordes, 32
dysmaye ye noo thyng! thys toure is stronge ynough
for to kepe vs yet. And of that other parte, the tresour
of my fader is herin, which is in grete wedges and

¹ g vij.

² g vij, col. 2.

- plates of golde & buyllyon. late vs goo fetchē it, And
as wel may we slee the paynims therwyth, as wyth
stones, and better." Thenne Guy of bourgoyn, hyr loue,
4 came to hyr wyth grete loye, & kyssed hyr moche amer-
ously and swetelye. And after she wente & opened
the toure and place where the tresour¹ was Innumerable,
and wyth grete quantyte therof they wente to the
8 batylments of the toure, and threwe vpon the paynims,
in suche wyse that they made grete dyscomfyture.
And more-ouer the paynims, seeyng the golde falle on
them in suche habundaunce, anone they cessyd their
12 fyghtyng ayenst the frenssh men, And for the concu-
pyscence of that golde they faught and slewe eche
other. Wherefore thadmyral was so dysplaysaunt &
2 angry that he wende to haue dyed, and began to crye
16 wyth an hye voys: "O ye barons sarasyns, leue ye
thassaulte, whiche torneth to me grete damage Inn-
numerable. For I see that my tresour wasteth & is loste,
which I haue wyth grete payne³ & dylygence assembled,
20 And had recomaunded it to my god mahon, and had
made hym kepar of it, whyche how hath faylled me.
but by my soule, yf I may take hym, and that he come
in to myn holde, I shal make hym wepe." The kyng
24 Sortybrant answerd: "Syr Admyral, be ye noo thyng
amernayllyd of your tresour, ne wroth ayenst Mahon, for
he may nomore do; they may wel take it fro hym, for
he is a-slepe; I byleue none other: for in tyme passed
28 he hath wel watched & kepte it; but those frenssh men
ben so wily theues þat they haue stolen it fro hym
subtylly." Thadmyral beyng al angry bycause the
nyght came on repayed⁴ with his peple toward hys
32 souper. After thys, whan thadmyral was sette atte
table, Roulland, whyche was in the hye toure surely
with his felowes, laye in a wyndowe for to ease hym;

and advises them
to use her father's
gold for missiles.
(3327)

The French do so,
(3334)

and the Saracens
leave off the as-
sault and fight
amongst them-
selves for the
gold. (3340)

Balan, alarmed
and grieved for
his treasure,
causes his men to
retire. (3348)

Sortibrant com-
forts him,

and says Mahonn
must be asleep.

The Sara-ens
retire to their
camp.

¹ orig. tresour.

² g vij, bk.

³ orig. payue.

⁴ orig. And' repayed'.

Roland from a window sees Balan at supper, (3358) and as he thought & was pensyf, he sawe thadmyral syttyng^t at the table through the wyndowe, and^t after cam to the other barons and^t sayd to them: “¹my lordes and^t brethern, I see that the Admyral is wyth 4 hys pryncypal barons at souper, and thynketh to holde hem wel at his ease, and^t me semeth it shold^t be grete honour and^t prowesse to vs to make hym leue² his repaste.” The other barons, hys felowes, were of hys 8

and proposes a sortie. (3363) accomde, & hastely they armed^t them and^t put them in poynte, and^t fayr yssued out, comyng^t to the place where the admyral was. but the admyral, whiche was subtyl, apperceyued theyr feat, and^t sente hastely for a 12 paynym, whiche was moche fyers, and^t was hys neuewe. And^t sayd^t to hym: “Espoulart, cosyne, peradventure the freysshe men purpose to dystrouble vs at our souper, Therfore depesse the, and^t be redy anone, and^t doo so 16 that they be taken & destroyed.” and^t anone he was redy. And forthwyth Espoulart took hys hors, and came ayeust the barons, holdyng^t in hys honde a dart of stele.

They all arm and start. (3364) And^t fyrst he encountred^t Rolland^t, and^t hytte hym in his 20 shielde in suche wyse that of the stroke he was al astonyed^t; but it came soo to passe that it touched^t not hys flesshe, ne he was not hurte. After this, Rolland^t came vpon the paynym, and^t gaf hym a good^t stroke that 24 he made hym ouerthrowe fro hys hors; but the turke was so valyaunte, and^t a man of so grete myght, ³that moche lyghtly he remounted^t vpon hys hors. And Roulland came to hym, & smote hym wyth hys swerde in suche 28 wyse that the paynym wist not where he was. And^t as he was fallyng^t down of hys hors, Rolland^t moche puyssauntly caught hym, & laye^t hym thwart vpon hys hors, and^t bare hym awaye. The admyral, seeyng thys, al in a 32 rage escryed hys peple that they shold socoure hys neuewe. but they wist not what to doo, For in defendyng^t them many of them were slayn and^t hurte

Balan sees them coming, (3369) and sends for Espoulart, his nephew, to meet them. (3372) he is unhorsed, (3386) but is soon up again.

Roland stuns him, catches him up, and carries him away on his horse. (3392) Balan calls for a resene. (3397)

¹ g vij. back. col. 2.

² orig. leue.

³ g viij.

wythoute nombre; wherfor of veray force the other
 paynims must retorne: & rolland cessed not to renne
 tyl that he was at the toure. And whan al the barons
 4 of Fraunce were wythin, they shette the yates wel surely,
 and had noo feare of any empesshement.

but the French all
 escape into the
 castle. (3410)

¶ Here begynneth the thyrd' partye of the
 second' book which conteyneth xvj chapy-
 8 tres, And' speketh how the barons of
 fraunce were socoured & the paynims
 confused'.

¶ Of the moeuyng of the peres of fraunce for
 12 to goo shewe theyr affayres vnto kyng'
 Charles; And' how Rychard of Normandye
 was ordeyned' for to goo: capitulo primo

16 **T**He peres of fraunce beyng^t thus assyeged and
 deteyned, as I haue said afore, had taken a turke
 moche fyers, and grete frende of the admyral,
 whome they gaf to florypes for to do wyth hym as it
 plesed^t hyr: & they demaunded^t of hyr what man he
 20 was, & of hys estate. Florypes ansuerd: "he is sone
 of myn aunte, & neuewe to thadmyral, and he is ryche
 & hath grete puyssaunce. And' yf ye wyl doo grete
 dysplaysyr to my fader, put hym to deth." The due
 24 Naymes moche wyse sayd to hyr: "Madame, it is not
 behoeuf to put hym so to deth; but sythe he is a man
 of auctoryte, and hath audyence wyth your fader, we
 been the more Ioyous. and' I shal say to you wher-
 28 fore: yf peraduenture one of vs were taken of our ene-
 myes, by the moyen of this man he myght be rendred
 and chaunged for hym." And' of thys conclusyon were
 contente al the peres of fraunce. Thenne after thys,
 32 Rychard of Normandye called the other his felawes,
 and sayd to them: "ye knowe wel how we ben here

They ask Floripas
 who their prisoner
 is. (3444)
 She tells them he
 is Balan's
 nephew. (3448)

Naymes proposes
 to keep him to
 exchange for any
 of them which
 might be taken.
 (3452)

¹ g viij, col. 2.

Richard of Normandy proposes

that they should send a message to Charles for help. (3425)

Naymes says that no one dare go on the message, (3427)

for the country is all covered with Saracens.

Floripas says they had better enjoy themselves as well as they can. (3435)

Thierry again proposes to send a messenger to Charles. (3456)

Ogier asks who will venture on such a dangerous expedition. 3459 Roland offers to go, but Naymes protests. 3467

enclosed¹ in thys toure. And I am wel sure that at the laste we must nedes faylle, and² deye by these Sarasyns. We haue noo moyen by whyche we may saue our lyf; and me thynketh that it shold¹ be good¹ that we shold¹ 4
¹ conclude to sende to themperour, to thende that he shold come and socour vs, or ellys of vs shal sone be an ende." The duc Naymes ansuerd¹ and¹ sayd¹: "Syr rychard, me semeth ye speke of a grete folye. For 8
 there is noo man here wythin, that wyl take vpon hym for to do this message that ye speke of. For ye see that the contree is al couerd with sarasyns, for assone as he shal be oute fro vs, it is Impossyble to escape 12
 wyth hys lyf And be ye sure, but yf god doo for vs and¹ shewe hys grace, we shal neuer departe fro hens." herupon Florypes sayd¹: "I can not say at thys tyme none other thyng, but that we lede the moost Ioyous 16
 lyf that we may, as longe as we shal mowe endure. Ye haue here fayre maydens, eche of you take one at hys playsyr." Thenne Rolland¹ and¹ his felowes, for these wordes of Florypes were reioyced, and¹ thanked & 20
 preysed¹ hyr affectuously. Thyerry the duc of Ardayne, whyche was moche angry, sayd¹: "My brethern and¹ my lordes, I am in grete thought, For we be faste shette here wythin, and¹ knowe wel that in shorte tyme we 24
 shal be dysecomfyted¹: we haue therof experyence ynough tofore our eyen. late us soo conclude that our fayte may be notefyed¹ vnto charles, that he or hys pussyaunce 2
² may come socoure vs." ¶ Ogier ansuerd¹ and¹ sayd¹: 28
 "for to sende to charles, there is none here soo hardy that dare presume it ne take it on hym." "Yes," said rolland, "I shal do it, and¹ shal enterpryse it myself to goo to hym to morn, and¹ shal doo my deuoyr." The 32
 duc naymes, or he had fynysshed hys wordes, ansuerd¹ and¹ sayd¹: "Syr rolland, dysplayse you not, for emonge vs ye are the moost vneouenable for to goo thyder: for

¹ g viij. bk.

² g viij. bk. col. 2.

- whan the Paynmys shold knowe it, we shold not be
 redoubted as we be. And whan we haue you wyth vs,
 we been in surete, and our enemyes in drede of vs."
- 4 Guyllam profred hym self to goo forth gladly, Soo dyd
 Gherard; Semblably guye abandonned hym self to goo
 wyth good affectyon, but Florypes wold neuer consente
 therto. ¶ Neuertheles, after many dysputacyons, rycharde
- 8 sayd for conclusion: "My lordes, ye knowe that I am
 of grete parentage, & haue a sone of grete noblesse, suf-
 fysaunt to bere armes, and as I suppose, he shal be valy-
 aunte. And yf it happene that in doynge thys message
- 12 I be taken & slayn of the paynmys, After my deth he
 may receyue & hold, myn herytage in my name, and doo
 seruyce to Charles. And I ought wel to doo it, for to
 doo playsyr to Charles aforesayd. ¹For whan he had
- 16 gyuen to me my lande, and possessed me in my contrey,
 I wold not accepte it but by one moeyen, which is
 suche, that yf it happed, a strange man not subgette to
 my contreye, & that he were bonde, & of thral condycyon,
- 20 and yf he duellyd a yere in my londe, that after he
 shold be free al his lyf, & many other thynges:" &
 thenne thus it was concluded that rycharde shold goo
 forth on the message. But Rolland maad hym to
- 24 promyse tofore his departyng, that he shold not tarye
 in any place, ne sojourne nowhere, vntil the tyme that
 he were with Charles, but yf he were greued in hys
 persone or deteyned prysoner. Rycharde promysed it &
- 28 sware, as it is afore sayd. Thenne Rycharde, after his
 oth made, sayd that, "now we haue not to sorowe, but
 the maner how I shal mow departe and passe forth, that
 the men of armes see me not; for yf I be knowen by
- 32 them in any wyse, It shal be Impossyble to me to resyste
 them." Rolland sayd: "by my fayth, I shal say myn
 opynyon here vpon. I counceyll that to morn erly we
 be wel armed, and we shal goo out and make a cours

William and
 Gerard offer to
 go, (3171) as also
 Guy, but Floripas
 will not let him
 go. (3177)

At last Richard
 says he will go,
 (3180)

to which they all
 agree. (3199)

They consult how
 he is to get away
 unseen. (3509)

Roland suggests
 that they should
 make a sortie,

and di-tract the
attention of the
Saracens while

Richard steals
away in the other
direction. (3529)

The knights weep
over Richard's
danger. (3527)

Richard bids them
fear nothing,

for by God's grace
he will soon bring
succour.

vpon the sarasyns, & do gretely our denoyr, & they shāl
be besy with vs for to defende them & hurte vs.
Rychard¹ shāl departe & passe forth & leue¹ vs, & we shāl
remyse vs to-gyder for to retorne in surete. in the mene 4
whyle Rychard, that knoweth wel the region, shāl mowe
be wel ferre forth on his waye tofore they shal know
ony thyng therof; and¹ if it playse god¹ & hys swete
moder, he shāl saue hym self, by suche manere, that in 8
shorte tyme we shāl haue Ioye & consolacyon that we
shāl hastely goo out surely." Thys sayeng¹, the peres of
fraunce, seeyng¹ that thys thyng¹ was not yet achyueuē¹
surely, begonnen al to wepe tenderly for the pyte of 12
theyr affayre. The noble due² rychard¹, seeyng¹ his
felowes wepyng¹ for hym, sayd to them: "my lordes, ne
doubte ye noo thyng¹! yf god¹ gyue me the grace, to
whom I comaunde my self, that I may passe thys hoost 16
and¹ thys contreye, and in espeeal that I may fynde
myself a-lyue by-yonde the brydge³ of mantryble, I may
wel ensure you that I shāl brynge you socours in suche
wyse that by the grace of god ye shāl sone be delyuerd¹." 20
The barons ansuerd¹ to hym: "Ihesus, by hys myght and
puyssaunce, graunte you wel to goo, & better to retorne!"
After this conclusyon they sayd¹ nomore: the nyzt cam
on, & eueryche of them went to hys repayre, vnto atte 24
morne for to begynne to complysshe theyr enterpryse.

⁴¶ How after that rychard was departed, kyng
claryon, a ryght myghty kyng', ranne after
hym, the whyche was slayn by the sayd' 28
Rychard valyauntly, & of other thynges :
capitulo ij

But a great disap-
pointment was in
store for them.

G Rete gryef and¹ annoye cam to þ^e peres of fraunce
whan Rychard¹ of Normandye shold departe for 32
to goo to kyng¹ charles. On the morne whan

¹ h i, col. 2. ² orig. dul. ³ orig. brydde. ⁴ h i, back.

they came to the gates of the toure, in whych they were
in, they fonde grete multytude of peple sarasyns, whyche
kepte the passage that none of the frensshe men shold
4 yssue out. Wherfore by the space of ij monethes they
coude not fynde the moyen to yssue oute; but on a day
cmonge al other, whan thadmyral was on huntynge a
lytel waye of, & that on a nyght the garde of the
8 bridge was forgotten, Thenne the barons armed them
& mounted on horsback, and wente out rennyng vnto
theyr lodgynges; but assone as they were seen of the
paynmys, they blewe vp hornes & trompettes, & began
12 to sowne so terrybly, that anone peple Innumerable were
there assembled for to renne vpon the peres of Fraunce.
and thus whan they were al enclosed wyth theyr
enemyes, & that euery man was besy for to fyght, The
16 duc Rychard al in wepyng commaunded to god hys
felawes, And secretely departed, and took hys waye at
al aduenture. & tofore that his felawes were at theyr
lodgyng, many of the sarasyns were hurte & slayn. and
20 in this maner they reentred in to the toure surely, and
mounted in to the bataylement, & sawe a-ferre duc
rychard, whyche thenne had passed beyonde all the
hoost; and in wepyng they recommaunded hym swetely
24 to god many tymes. Rychard of Normandye thus
rydyng allone, had feare alwaye that he shold be
assaylled. whan he had ferre ryden vnto a toppe of a
montayn, his hors was sore chauffed, & bledde habun-
28 dantly. Thenne he doubted entyerly that he shold be
empesshed, and lyfte vp his mynde to heuen & sayd:
“O lord god, my creatour, to whom alle my wylle is
ordeyned, thys day preserue my body from myn
32 enemyes, in suche wyse that I lose not my lyf,” &
blessid hym self with the signe of the crosse many
tymes. he beyng in that place, the day appyered wel
clerely; & fyrst, brullant of mommyere apperecyued

For in the morn-
ing they found
the castle sur-
rounded by Sara-
cens, (3549)
so that for two
months they had
no chance of
going out. (3459)

At last an occa-
sion offers, and
they sally out,
(3567) and attack
the Saracens.

While they are
thus engaged
Richard steals off.
(3580)

His horse breaks
down. (3612)

In despair he
prays to God for
help,

and crosses him-
self.

hūm, & after, sortybrant of Conymbres, whyche were
 bothe to-gydre, the whyche wente hastely to Kyng
 Claryon, a moche myghty paynym, neuewe of thadmyral,
 and tell Clarion, and brullant sayd fyrst to hym: "Syr Claryon, see ye 4
 yonde messenger, one of the prysoners of fraunce, whyche
 is departed fro his felawes, & gooth toward Charles for
 socours? And yf ye see not for remedye, there may
 come therby harme to vs; for yf he recounte theyr 8
 assayres to the kyng charles, It may happen to retorne
 to vs grete domage." Also sone as claryon herde
 these tydynges, anone he armed hym, & mounted vpon
 hys hors, the moost merueyllous that euer was seen, 12
 For for to renne xxx leghe he wold not be wery; &
 took hys shilde & his swerd of stele square & sharpe,
 & ranne toward Due Rycharde as he had be enraged,
 & other sarasyns folowed after hym. Rycharde mounted 16
 on hys hors, wythoute knowyng that he was poursyewed,
 & sayd: "O my Creatour, holy Trynyte, gyue to me
 consolacyon & grace, that I may see Charles the myghty
 Emperour, to whom I am sente for the rescows & com- 20
 fort of my felawes, whiche ben in the toure, sorouful
 and sore greued, and that I may make them Ioyeful,"
 & thus as he was in this thougt he loked behynde hym,
 & sawe the sarasyns come hastely after hym, whyche 24
 were by comyn estymacyon moo than xiiij M, Of whom
 the Kyng Claryon, neuewe of the Admyral, vpon the
 courser tofore sayd, came tofore the other a grete waye.
 Neuertheles, Rycharde beyng on a lytel montayn, & 28
 byhelde the hoost of the paynyns came ageynst hym
 with grete courage, ye may wel ymagyne in what estat
 his hert was. what thyng mygt he thynk that they
 wold do wyth hym, & what tydynges his felowes shold 32
 haue of hym, whan he was there allone for tabyde &
 susteyne the furour & malyce of so moche peple? Thus
 ymagynyng that he myght not flee, Anone was claryon

Brullant and Sor-
 tybrant see him,
 (3628)

and tell Clarion,

who mounts and
 rides after him,
 (3640)

followed by other
 Saracens. (3645)

Richard, looking
 round, sees
 the Saracens
 coming after him.
 (3653)

He is almost in
 despair.

- vpon the sayd^d coursour, whyche ranne faster and^d more
 swyftlyer than a grehounde; the whyche coursour was
 alle whyt on the one of hys sydes as a flour delys, & on
 4 that other syde as rede as fyre enflammed, The taylor
 after the facion of a peacock, the croupe behynde som-
 what reysed^d & dropped, as smal as of a partryche; grete
 thyes & short feet, & platte & rounde, wyth lytel eeres;
 8 the mane of the necke whyt, his nosethrylles large &
 ample; he was tofore moche brode, & had eyen grene &
 clere, a lytel heed, a brode fronte, with a smal mosel; &
 he was saddled with a saddle of yuorye, & the raynes of
 12 þ^e brydle entrelaced with gold; styroppes of fyn gold;
 the poytral wel enorned & rychely. & was gyrde with
 iiij stronge syngles, & had on hym moo than an C of
 smal bellys of fyn golde, sownyng^t moche melodyously.
 16 & þ^e paynym ¹smote hym with the spores moche
 sharply, in suche wyse that the hors made a leep more
 than xxx foot longe. And after escryed^d due Rycharð
 the noble knyght, sayeng^t wyth an hye voys: "by
 20 Mahoun, my souerayn god, thou messenger shalt neuer
 achyene thyn enterpryse, For wythoute goyng^t any
 ferther, thou shalte here ende thy lyf." whan rycharð
 vnderstode hym, alle the blode in hys body was mocued
 24 & chaunged^d, & ansuerd: "Sarasyne, wherfore arte thou
 of suche entencion ayenst me? What haue I trespaced
 to the? I neuer offended the, ne robbed^d thy tresour.
 I requyre the by loue that thou dystrouble me not; and^d
 28 yf thou suffre me to passe, I shal take it for a grete
 seruyse, & I promyse to the that ones it shal be re-
 warded^d to the by me." The paynym answerd^d: "cer-
 tayn, frensshe man, thou spekest of grete folye; & of
 32 mahoun be I cursed^d yf I doo any thyng^t for the. I shal
 not suffre the to passe for half the tresour of the world."
 Also sone as Rycharð knewe hys enteneyon, he auauuced^d
 ayenst hym, & the paynym came to Rycharð, & wyth

In front comes
Clarion on a
horse, half white,
half red, (3659)

with a peacock's
tail,

a white mane,
and green eyes.

His breast piece
is hung with little
gold bells.

Clarion calls on
Richard to sur-
render. (3673)

Richard asks him
to let him go, as
he has never done
him any harm.
(3681)

Clarion declares
he will have his
life. (3686)

¹ h ij, back.

Clarion cuts at
Richard, but does
him no harm.
(3688)

Richard smites
Clarion on the
neck, and cuts his
head off. (3704)

He takes Clarion's
horse, (3705)

and lets his own
go, bidding it an
affectionate fare-
well. (3713)

The Saracens
coming up try to
catch Richard's
horse, but in vain.
(3730)

hys swerde he smote hym hand vpon hys shilde; but
it was so harde that it wente not thurgh. here-vpon
richard, which was ful of grete yre ayenst the paynym,
by effectuel deth came to hym wyth hys ¹swerde which 4
was trenchaunte, & as the hors lepe forth, the paynym,
lyfte vp his hede, & richard attayned ouerthwart the
necke so ryzt in a Ioynte, that he smote of his nede, in
suche wyse that it flewe ferre fro the body, ye, wel a 8
spere lengthe, & he put þ^e trunke of the body to the
erthe al dede; & forthwyth he descended fro hys hors,
& mounted vpon that the good courser of the Paynym,
whyche was the best hors of the world. Thenne 12
Rychard myght wel say that he was neuer soo wel
pourneyed of an hors; For he was so myghty, that yf
he had born vij knyghtes armed vpon hym, he wold
not haue swette a droppe of water; & for to swymme & 16
passe a depe ryuer, ther was noo hors lyke hym. & after
that he was thus horsed at his ease, he said to his owen
hors by moche good affection: "O gentyl hors doulstyn,
for the I am sorouful that I may not conduyte the in 20
to som place at my playsyr. I praye to God of heuen
that he drawe þ^e in to suche a waye that þou mayst
come in to the hondes of crysten men & serue them. in
many grete bataylles & euyl passages thou hast wel 24
serued me, & of thy grete seruyce, as moche as apper-
teyneth to me I thanke the gretely." & here vpon he
wente and rode forth hys waye. And anone the sara-
syns that followed after, came ²& fonde the kyng 28
Claryon deed, theyr mayster, of whos deth they were
so surprysed of melancolye & of sorowe, that they coude
doo none other thyng but fyrst to renne for to take
Rychards hors. But there was none soo hardy to ap- 32
proche hym ne sette honde on hym, but the hors maad
grete deflence, & took hys waye rennyng for to retorne
to the place that he was departed fro.

¹ h ij, back, col. 2.

² h iij.

¶ How Rychards hors cam & passed' thurgh
the excersyte of the admyral, & was seen &
knowne of the peres of Fraunce, in soo
4 moche that they thought that duc Rychard'
had' been deed'; & how the brydge of
Mantryble was kepte: capitulo iij

8 **R**ychard of Normandye wyth his swerde in hys
fyste rode hastely, & the sarasyns whych ranne
after hym came and fonde theyr kyng deed, of
whome the hede was on that one syde of the waye, &
the body on that other. It byhoueth not to recounte
12 the sorowe that they were in, whan the chyef of alle the
sarasyns of myght and parentage was descomfyte and
slayn; and for thyng that they coude do, they coude not
reteyne Rychards hors. & the fyrst that sawe the hors
16 come rennyng was thadmyral, whiche called goraut,
sone of kyng grehier, & also sortybraut of conymbres,
& sayd to them: "by my god appolyn, whan I wel
aduyse and remembre me, I ought wel to loue my
20 newewe Claryon, and holde hym dere emonge al other.
I see wel that he hath put to deth the messenger of the
Frensshe men: that it is trouthe, ye may see his hors
that yonder cometh." and thadmyrall commanded that
24 he shold hastely be taken. but whan the hors saw that
they wold haue taken hym, he ranne and smote out, &
cessed not tyl he cam to the yate of the castel in
whyche the barons of Fraunce were enclosed. & whan
28 the frensshe men sawe thus the hors come, whyche was
longyng to rychard, they were al affrayed and moeued,
and came & opened the gate, and anone he entred in;
and after that the yate was shette, they arenged them
32 aboute the sayd hors, for compassyon of sorowe, wepyng
pyetously. ¶ And Duc Naymes spake fyrst and sayd:

The Saracens find
Clarion's body,
and lament over
him. (3724)

Balan sees Rich-
ard's horse run-
ning loose, (3740)

and thinks that
Richard has been
killed. (3742)

He orders the
horse to be
caught, (3744)

but none can
catch him.

The knights admit
him inside the
gates,

and lament over
Richard's death.

¹ h iij col. 2.

They are all in
great grief, (3754)

"Ha, Richard of Normandy! I praye to god that he be in thy comfort and that he haue pyte of thy soule. I knowe wel that for thy deth we shal neuer haue socoure, Ne of thy partye we shal neuer haue none helpe." Roulland and Olyuer heryng these wordes, & also the other, wepte bytterly. here-vpon came florypes the curtoys in grete heuynes, and sayd to them :

but Floripas comforts them. (3763)

"Lordes, in the honour of god, lene your lamentyng and sorowe : we knowe not yet the trouthe of the mater." thus as they were in these grete thoughtes, the Sarasyns came, whyche had lefte Rycharde ryde forth, And in grete sorowe & torment brougt the body of kyng Claryon. And whan thadmyral sawe them come, he beyng in the ethroelytes in hys entendement, cryed and sayd : "and how is it ? is myn neuewe in good poynte?"

The Saracens return bearing the body of Clarion. (3775)

The sarasyns ansuerd : "Syr admyral, we may not lye to you. Claryon is dede, it nedeth nomore to demaunde therof." Thadmyral heryng thoo wordes, fyl down to therth al in a traunse, and he swouned more than iiij tymes as he had been dede. thus emonge al the sarasyns was a grete wepyng, & made grete sorowe. The

Balan swoons on hearing of his nephew's death. (3785)

sarasyns thus makyng thys lamentacyon, the barons of fraunce herde and vnderstood them, & specially florypes, which knewe better the langage. & after that she knewe the cause of theyr sorowe, she came to the barons, and sayd to them in spekyng to rolland : "Syr, knowe

There is great grief over Clarion. (3792)

ye wherfore the sarasyns demene suche sorowe? it is trouth that Rycharde your messenger hath slayn the kyng claryon & womne his hors, to whom is none lyke ne pareyille of bounte in al the world. & as wel for þe deth of claryon as for the losyng of the hors, they demene & make al thys sorowe & torment that ye see & here. Wherfore I praye you that euery man doo hys denoyr, to lede a good lyf and to make good chyere." Olyuer sayd to rolland Ioyously : "O my felawe of

Floripas explains to the knights what has happened. (3800)

¹ h iij. back.

² h iij. back, col. 2.

armes, ye knowe not how glad I am of these tydynges
 that we here, & I ensure you by my soule that I am
 as sure to passe thys daunger that we be in, as though
 4 I were in the strengest castel of fraunce. blessyd be
 richard of god, for he hath borne hym nobly!" and
 semblably sayd al the other his felawes. After that
 richard rode thus, thadmyral made a man to come to
 8 hym nameð Orages, & made hym to take a dromedary
 hastily, & comanded hym to bere his lettres to galafre,
 which kept the stronge brydge of mantryble: "I charge
 the to renne as faste as the dromydary may bere the, to
 12 mantryble, and say to Galafre wherfore he suffred the
 messagers of charles to come ouer the brydge, the
 whyche haue doon to vs so moche greuaunce and en-
 noyaunce, as thou can wel telle to hym. & I swere by
 16 mahon my god, that he dyd a grete folye. & sythe on
 that other parte the ¹messenger of the frensshe men
 goeth thyder, and yf he recounte his message to Charles,
 it myght happen he shold put me in subgectyon, Ther-
 20 fore say to galafre that he kepe soo wel the brydge, that
 noo persone passe: and say to hym more ouer, that, yf
 he do otherwyse, I shal put oute hys eyen, and make
 hym deye shamefully." "Syr admyral," sayd Orages
 24 the messenger, "I shal do your commaundemente; and
 I assure you I shal ryde as moche waye in one day as
 that other shal do in foure dayes. for, for to ryde an
 hondred legges contynuely, I shal neuer be wery."
 28 And thus he departed from the admyral vpon a dromy-
 dary, & taryed not tyl he came to mantryble, and spake
 to Galafre, sayeng: "Galafre, I shal not hyde fro the
 that the admyral is not contente wyth the, by cause thou
 32 suffredest the frenssli men to passe ouer the brydge,
 whyche haue doon to hym grete dommage, for they be
 lodged in the chyef toure, & holden in their subgectyon
 the goddes, with floripes his dougter, and haue slayn

Balan sends a
 message to Gala-
 fre, the bridge-
 ward of Mantriblé,
 (3825)

that he is to allow
 no one to pass the
 bridge,

on pain of death.
 (3845)

Orages starts on a
 dromedary.

He arrives at
 Mantriblé and
 delivers his
 message, (3869)

¹ h iij.

that he is on no
account to let
Richard pass.
(3875)

Galafre in a rage

tries to strike
Orages,
but is prevented
by the by-stand-
ers. (3854)

He sends 15,000
men to look out
for Richard. (3898)

many of the moost valyaunte of the courte of thadmy-
ral. & the cause wherfore I am thus hastelye come, is
thys: After me cometh a messenger, whyche is one of
the barons of Fraunce, whyche gooth for to fetche ayde, 4
vnto Charles theyr ¹kyng^t; the whyche hath slayne
kyng^t Claryon. wherfore kepe wel thys passage that he
passe not. For yf thou doo otherwyse, thou shalt not
comme fynde the manere to sane thy lyf, but that thou 8
shalt deye vylaynsly." Of these wordes Galafre was
perturbed^t and replenysshed of yre, & for hys angre
he made moche foule chyere, and began to scumme at
the mouth lyke a bore enchauffed, and took a staffe, and 12
had^t smyton the messenger yf it had^t not be letted^t by
them that were presente. ¶ Neuertheles he mounted^t
vpon a tourrette, and with the sowne of a trompette he
assembled^t many men of armes, whyche were in nombre 16
xv M, whyche were anone of horsback, and passed^t the
brydge. And whan they were ouer, it was anone lyfte
vp, and they wente and^t rode here and^t there for to
recountre þ^e messenger of the frenssh men, yf by aduen- 20
ture they myzt fynde hym.

¶ How rycharde of normandye passed the ryuer
of flagot by myracle, by the moyen of a whyt
hert which cam tofore hym: [ca.] iiij 24

Richard is in great
doubt how to pass
Alanrible.

He sees the Sara-
cens covering all
the country,

and begins to pray
for help. (3901)

Rychard^t of Normandye, messenger of the frensshe
barons prisoners, rode in grete doubte, ye may wel
thynke and ymagyne, how he onely by ²hym self
myght passe the stronge and daungerous brydge. And 28
in rydyng^t he behelde belynde hym, and sawe al the
contree couerd^t wyth men of armes. thus byholdyng^t
theym he was sore troubled^t in hys mynde, [&] began to
crye: "O Ihesus, kyng^t of glorye, at thys tyme be thou 32
kepar of my body, & conseruatour of my soule, For I

¹ h iiij. col. 2.

² h iiij. back.

see wel the deelyne of my lyf. yf I put my self to fyght,
 I shal haue my hede smyton of; and yf I entre in to
 this hydous ryuer, I shal not conne passe ouer. Thus
 4 at thys tyme I muste nedes deye. And yf I by force
 retorned to my felawes, I shold make a grete defaulte to
 therle Rolland, to whom I haue promysed¹ faythfully
 to doo my deuoyr for to doo my message. Wherefore,
 8 my god, my maker, I wote not what to say, but that thy
 wyll be fulfilled and doon of me. thou knowest myn
 entencion: after the same gouerne me!" he beyng² hyghe
 the ryuer, the sarasyns maden grete bruyt in comyng³ to
 12 hym, emonge whom a neuewe of the admyral anaunced⁴
 hym to renne ageynst hym, & cryed⁵ wyth an hyghe
 voys: "O messenger, what someuer thou be, thyneke for
 to dye! thou hast now ryden ouer ferre; now is þ^e houre
 16 come that the deth of kyng claryon shal be aduenged."

These wordes so herde of rycharde were ²not to hym
 ouer playsaunt; but he was euyl contente, and sodeynly
 he spored his hors ayenst hym, holdyng⁶ a swerde in
 20 hys honde, square & sharpe, whych he had conquerd of
 Claryon: and came to hym, and smote hym so daunger-
 ously ayenst the breste, that it perced⁷ thorough the
 shelde in to hys body, that he fyl down to therthe al
 24 deed; & after took hys hors by the brydle, whyche was
 ryche of golde, and went to the ryuage of the water, and
 byhelde it that it ranne lyke a quarel out of a crosbowe,
 and rored⁸ lyke thundre, in suche wyse that galeye ne
 28 other engyne myght not goo surely vpon hyt.

By the time he
 gets near the
 river the Saracens
 are close upon
 him. (3922)

Mandysee calls on
 him to turn and
 fight. (3929)

Richard turns and
 kills him, (3932)

and takes his
 horse.
 He rides to the
 bank of Flagot,
 which runs like a
 bolt from a cross-
 bow.

He commends
 himself to God.
 (3949)

¶ Thenne by grete contrycion of hert he recom-
 maunded⁹ hym self to our lord, that he shold¹⁰ preserue
 hym from deth tyl that he had sayd¹¹ hys message to the
 32 Emperour Charles. Thenne god of heuen, that neuer
 leueth hys seruantes at their nede, shewed vnto hym a
 grete token of loue that he had to Charles. for Rychard¹²
 of Normandy beyng¹³ in thys medytaeyon and thought

¹ orig. promysed.

² h liij. back, col. 2.

God sends a milk-
white hart,
which goes before
Richard. (3955)

The water rises
till it is level with
the banks.
The hart enters
the river,

and Richard fol-
lows it. (3962)

The Saracens dare
not follow him.

The river sinks to
its usual level.

Galafre lets down
the draw-bridge.
(3976)

Richard is now
safe,

and rides on
slowly.

for to passe ouer, god¹ sente a whyte herte which passed
tofore rycharde: & in comyng ye ought to wete that the
ryuage of the water was moche hye, ye, as hye as a man
from bynethe myght caste vp a stone wyth hys honde. 4
And² the ryuer began to aryse ¹soo hye that it flowed
ouer the banke, and² the herte entred² in to the water;
and² Rycharde loked² behynde hym, & sawe many sara-
syns come in a grete multytude for to put hym to deth; 8
and thenne he recommaunded² hym to god² wyth good²
hert, and made the sygne of the crosse vpon his body,
haunyng² in hys hert the holy name of Ihesus, that he
myzt perseuere fro drede in suche wyse that he myght 12
passe ouer the ryuere; and² soo toke the water &
folowed² the hert. The paynmys seyng² that, were al
abasshed and troubled², and² there was not one that durst
folowe hym. Fro Incontynent the water analed², and² 16
retorned² in to hys former estate and² beyng². Thenne
the paynmys made grete duel and² sorowe by cause they
myzt not haue the messenger. ¶ Galafre, whyche that
was moost wroth & werst contente, cam to the bridge 20
and² analed² the chaynes, and² commanded² the paynmys,
vpon payne of deth, that they shold² not cesse tyl that
rycharde were taken, or ellys they shold² be all in the
Indygnacyon of thadmyral, and² in daunger to be loste. 24
Rycharde of Normandye came ouer in good² poynte, and²
denoutelye thanked² god² of the grace that he had² sente
to hym, and² descended² fro hys hors for to vngyrde and²
lose hys saddle. ²And² after resengled² hym, and² took his 28
hors and² rode forth at hys ease, and² ladde that other
hors on hys ryght syde. & doubted thenne nomore,
For in shorte tyme he supposed² to fynde thexcersyte
of kyng² Charles. The paynmys secyng² thys, retourned 32
sorrowfully, & wente to vname them, For other thyng
coude they not do.

¹ h v.

² h v, col. 2.

¶ How charles was in purpoos to retorne,
wythout goyng ony ferther, by the coun-
ceyl of ganellon traytour, and his felowes ;
4 & other maters : capitulo v

IN as moche as rycharde rode, whyche was moche
lwey ; and out of grete thought Themperour Charles
was passyng moche pensyf & sorowful for hys barons,
8 whyche were deteyned of thadmyral. And he, seeyng
that he had no tydynges, he sente for to come to hym
Ganellon, Geffroy, dantesuyle, aubert, machayre, and
many other. and emonge the other, cam reyner, fader of
12 Olyner, to whome he sayde : “ lordes and frendes, I am
in moche grete trybulacyon. the cause is ynough ap-
parent, whyche is of my speecial barons, whyche were
sente as messagers to ballant, thadmyral. I see that
16 no persone reporteth ne bryngeth ony tydynges from
them ; wherfore knowe ye, that of my dede that I dyde
I despyse my self. Thenne by more strenger reason
the other ought more to despyse me. And I you en-
20 sure that I shal neuer regne more, but shal leue alle.
Take ye there, loo ! the crowne of mageste, take it !
For I depose my self from hens forth.” Ganellon was
there which was loyeful, what someuer semblaunt he
24 made, and sayde : “ syr emperour, yf ye byleue me, I
shal gyue to you good counceyl. ¶ Anone comaunde
that our lodgys and habytacyons here be take vp, &
that euery man trusse hys gheer vpon the sommyers,
28 and thynke to retorne. For yf ye goo ony ferther, ye
shal neuer retorne. The contree of Aygre more is moche
stronge ; And sythe that, ballant the admyral is of grete
fyersnes, and wyth that, he hath alle the paynymys &
32 sarasyns capytayns in to hys ayde ; And by cause that
Fyerabras hys sone is deteyned by you, & maade crysten,
so moche more is he affectyoned ayenst you : And on

Meanwhile,
Charles is in great
trouble about his
knights. (1004)

He calls his
barons,

tells them his
trouble,

and declares his
intention of re-
signing the crown.
(4015)

Ganelon advises
him to give orders
for a return home,
(4025)

for Balan is too
strong for them,

now that the
donzeperes are
dead.

In time, he says,
their children will
be grown up,

and then Charles
can return and
conquer Spain.

Charles swoons
for grief.

He mourns over
his disgrace.
(4054)

He asks his barons
for their opinions.
(4069)

All Ganelon's
friends support
his advice, (4081)

and declare they
will go no further
(4084)

that other parte your barons be not a-lyue, I ensure
you: Retorne we in to Fraunce. We haue lefte there
many of our chyldren and parents that shal wexe grete;
and¹ or it be twenty yere, they shal bere armes. And⁴
thenne they with vs¹ shal come in to spayne, for to con-
queste the londes and¹ seynouryes that we haue enter-
prysek, And¹ shal reconure the holy relyques, of whome
I haue grete pyte. And¹ more ouer ye shal reuenge the 8
deth of Roulland, the noble erle, for whom ye haue thys
melaneolye; For certayn ye shal neuer see hym." Whan
Charles herde these wordes of Ganellon, he was smyton
wyth soo grete sorowe, that after, he fyl down² in a 12
swoune, And¹ spake not the space of a grete houre; and¹
in wepyng bytterly he sayd¹ to hym self: ¶ "O poure
caytyf and¹ vnhappy, what shalt thou do? yf thou re-
torne, þou shalt be dyshonoured. yet were it better to 16
lose the lyf than to be thus shamed." After that he
was comen to hymself, he sayd¹ to hys barons that were
there: "Loo! ye see the counceyl that ganellon gyueth
to me, whych in no wyse may playse me. yf I retorne, 20
wythout takyng vengeance of my noble barons which
ben thus deteyned, there shal neuer man sette by me,
but I shal be shamed, and¹ wyth good¹ ryght." Machayre,
aulbery, and¹ geffroy, and¹ other, moo than an hondred, 24
whych al were parentes & traytres wyth Ganellon the
moost parte, & also were moche myghty to-gydre, sayd¹
alle wyth one consente: "Syr emperour, purpose³ ye
not to do otherwyse than ganellon hath sayd¹, For he 28
hath spoken wysely; and therfor conclude ye to retorne
in to fraunce wythout gooyng¹ ony ferther on. we ben
xx thousand that haue made oth to-gyder that, for ony
thyng that ye say or do, we shal not goo noo ferther. 32
For sythe that Roulland is dede, they haue loste theyr
comforte, & hym that was chyef of the conseruayon of
their persones." Charles, al heuy, answerd: "O god¹ of

¹ h v, back, col. 2.

² orig. down.

³ h vj.

- henen, how am I determyned? yf I retorne wythoute
to auenge my barons, I shal doo pourely, sythe they
haue susteyned & borne vp the crowne Imperyal and
4 my wylle, and I now to retorne wythoute to auenge
them—He that gaf me suche counceyll, loueth me but
lytel, I see wel.” Reyner of genes, fader of Olyuer,
aroos vp and sayd: ¶ “O Emperour, yf thou byleue
8 these wordes that haue ben said to the, thy gouernaunce
shal be so euyl, that by them al fraunce shal be wasted
& brought to nought. And who someuer haue damage,
they reche not, but passe ouer lyghtly.” Thenne they
12 that were of the partye of the traytres cam forth and
sayd: “Reyner of genes, ye haue lyed of that whiche
ye haue sayd. And yf it were not by cause the kyng¹
is present, ye shold lose your hede and it shold be
16 smyton of. we knowe wel what ye be: your fader
garyn was neuer but a pour man and of lowe condy-
cyon: Alle your lygnage ne ben but people of nought.”
¶ The duc Reyner myght not suffre thys Iniurye, but
20 came to hym, and smote hym wyth hys fyst in suche
wyse that he ouerthrewe to grounde; and there were
made many reproches and ylle talent, in so moche that
yf the kyng had not be present, and made the pees and
24 tranquylte, they had slayn eche other. For anone there
were moo than a thousand of the lygnage of ganellon.
But fyerabras, which was present, blamed themstrongely;
And on that other syde the kyng sware by hys crowne
28 that yf there were ony persone that began bataylle or
fyght, that he shold do hym be hanged as a theef at-
taynt, of what someuer estate that he were. and by thys
they were aferde for to offende, and was nomore spoken.
32 Not-withstandyng that, the counceyl was taken emonge
them, that they shold put Reyner to deth as sone as
they shold be in Fraunce. Charles sent for them to
come to hym, and said to them: “ye haue done to me

Rayner warns
Charles not to
trust Ganelon or
his friends. (4096)

Ganelon's friends
abuse Rayner,
(4103)

who knocks
Alorys down.
(4117)

A great disturb-
ance ensues,

which is quieted
by Fierabras and
Charles. (4136)

Ganelon's party
vow vengeance
against Rayner.

¹ h vj, col. 2.

Charles orders
Alorys to beg
Rayner's pardon
on his knees.
(4119)

a grete shame; but yf it be not amended now tofore
me, I shal do opene lustyce. Alwaye nedes must the
kyng be obeyed." in suche wyse that alory¹ on hys
knees cryed² due Reyner mercy, but he wold neuer haue 4
doon it yf it had not been for to appease the furour of
kyng charles; & thus they maad³ the pees. And⁴ after
themperour sayd his oppynyon, that yf he tordned backe
that it shold be to hym grete dyshonour. Therfor cam 8
geffroy daultenylle, fader of Ganellon, whyche sayd:
"Syr Emperour, I am olde, and haue seen moche thyng,
wherfore me semeth that ye ought to hyleue me as wel
as any persone of your companye. ye knowe wel that I 12
and Ganellon my sone haue alwaye loued⁵ you, And⁶, how
that it be that he counceylleth you to retorne, hath good⁷
ryght. I haue now my body alle to-bruse⁸ for beryng⁹
of armes; and be ye sure, that tofore that twenty yere 16
be passed, the chyldren that be now in fraunce shal be
grete & myghty to bere armes, and they shal be so grete a
companye, that lyztely ye shal mowe conquere spayn, and¹⁰
auenge the deth of rolland and¹¹ of hys other felowes." 20
Whan Charles vnderstode these wordes, he wepte byt-
terly, & saw that by force he must ayenst hys wyll
retorne in to fraunce, and leue hys enemyes. Wherfore
by the sowne of trompettes was cryed¹² the retraytte. 24
And¹³ anon the artylleryes were assembled¹⁴ and¹⁵ the
harnois trussed, wherof¹⁶ the companye of traytres were
loyous, and many of the other were euyl contente, &
in especial Reyner, whych retordned withoute hys sone 28
Olyner, wherof ye may wel thyuke in what estate was
hys hert, by cause he hath¹⁷ loste al hys comforte.

Geoffrey d'Hante-
ville advises
Charles to follow
Ganellon's advice.
(4163)

Charles gives way,

and orders the
retreat home to
France, (4189)

to the great grief
of Rayner and
others. (4195)

¶ How after the complaynte of Charles,
Rychard come vnto hym, whyche tolde to 32

¹ h vj, back.

² h vj, back, col. 2.

³ orig. hast.

hym thaffayres of the peres of Fraunce :
capitulo vj

4 **W**han charles was mounted on horsback, and in
wage for to retorne, he took remors of Rolland,
Olyuer, and of other, how he lefte them with-
oute to do otherwyse his deuoyr : he taryed sayeng :
“ O vnhappy that I am, I may wel sorowe whan I now
8 leue the men that I loue best in the world, and retorne
fro them, whan I ought by good ryght to auenge them.
I shal be reputed for a fool, & sore blamed. O Rolland,
how I haue loued you ! may euer your vnelle so longe
12 lyue that he may see your deth auenged ? God deffende
that euer I bere crowne on my hede, seen the pouerte
of my fayte.” thys sayeng, almoost he fyl a swoune to
the erthe for the dysplaysaunce that he had : ¹ moche
16 heuynes had he that tyme. “ Alas ! ” sayd Charles,
“ Rolland, I was moche euyl auysed whan I consented
that thou sholdest goo to thadmyral ! wel am I cause of
al your perdyeyon ! ” In makynge thys heuynes, the
20 hoost made soo grete bruyt to retourne, that it was mer-
uaylle. & thus as they began to ryde forth, The em-
perour looked toward the east, and from ferie he sawe
rychard come rydynge vpon an hors sore rennyng, and
24 helde in his hande a swerde al naked. wherfor the Em-
perour sente for to come to hym the moost grettest
lordes of hys companye, and made thoost to tarye and
goo no farther forth. “ I see,” sayd he, “ yonder comynge
28 a man on horsback, which maketh grete haste, and
ledeth on hys ryght syde a fayr courser, as me thynketh ;
and he semeth by hys rydynge that he is Rycharde of
normandye. Now I praye to god almyghty that thys
32 day he sende me tydynges of rolland and of the other
barons, that they be alyue.” Thenne the hoost taryed,
and anone came richard, whyche maad hys hors to lepe

Charles laments
over the loss of
his barons ; (4207)

he swoons from
grief. (4221)

The army pre-
pares to start
home. (4227)

Charles sees
Richard coming,
(4229)

and orders a halt.
(4233)

He recognises
Richard. (4247)

¹ h vij.

Charles enquires
of Richard how
Roland and the
others are. (1257)

Richard tells him
how they are
besieged by Balan,
(4265)

that they have
Floripas and the
sacred relics,
(4271)

and have sent him
to beg Charles to
come to their
help. (4276)

The king is
pleased,

and says if they
can hold out for
six days he will
deliver them.
(4300)

moche gentylly tofore the kyng, whome he salewed
moche humbly. And thenne charles sayd to rycharð
of normandye: "Sone of noble baron, how is hyt wyth
you? what is bycomen of my neuewe Rolland and of
myn other ¹barons? be ye come allone? be they alyue
or dede? telle me, I praye you." Rycharð ansuerd:
"Syr Emperour, Rolland & the other, whan I departed
fro them, were al hole and in good poynt, and been
in aygremore, in a stronge toure, hysyegeð by ballant the
admyral of spayne and fader of Fyerabras; & there been
aboute them an hondred thousand sarasyns. And
knowe ye for certayn that thadmyral is a man moche
fyers & terryble, whyche hath sworn by his god mahoun
and Termagaunt, that he shal neuer departe fro thens but
that they shal be hanged by the necke. And on that
other syde your barons haue wyth them floripes, the
curtoys doughter of thadmyral, the fayrest that euer
was seen, the whyche hath in hyr kepyng the relyques
that ye soo moche desyre to haue. and sende you worde
by me that ye shold come and ayde them for to saue
theyr lyues. And yf it please you to remembre them,
ye shal mowe conquere the contreye of spayne, & other
goodes ynough." Grete consolacyon had kyng Charles,
And thenne he conceyued wel that Ganellon was a
traytre and ful of wyckednesse, And neuer after hys
counceyll ne sayeng shold be herde ne alowed in hys
courte. For he sawe wel, that as for hym it abode not
but Rolland and hys felowes shold haue dyed. "Now
gentyl Rycharð," sayd the kyng, "is the toure in
whyche they been hysyegeð, stronge & wel garnysshed
of vytayl for to defende them ony whyle? yf they may
holde vij dayes, I shal make thadmyral to dye, and al
hys complayees." "Syr," answerd Rycharð, "I shal
say to you the trouthe. they haue noo vytayl but they
gete it with the swerde. thadmyral is meruayllously

¹ h vij. col. 2.

² h vij. back.

- fyers and^l ful of cruelte, and^l hath of people a multytude
 Innumerable, the whyche holde the space of two myle.
 the town is stronge, where he habyteth, & also there is
 4 on thys syde of the toun the brydge of mantryble, where
 the passage is moche daungerous. and^l the walles of that
 cyte ben made of marbre cymented^l and^l fortifyed^l with
 toures, and^l there renneth a ryuer ryzt hydous, whyche
 8 is named^l flagot, and^l is of depthe of ij speres of lengthe,
 & renneth so fast and^l brayeth, that there is noo bote ne
 shyppe may passe theron. and^l the brydge is half a myle
 longe, And in the myddes there is a toure¹ of marbre
 12 so stronge that it may not be beten doon ; & the yate is
 garnysshed^l & kepte wyth barryers of yron fast locked^l.
 ¶ The portyer that kepeth thys plase is a paynym hydous
 and^l grete, massyf, stronge and² felonous, whyche bet-
 16 ter resembleth the deuyll than ony man or persone. he
 is as blacke as pytche boyled^l, & hath x thousand^l
 knyghtes in his companye. wherfore I wote wel that by
 force we may not passe ; For by ony assaulte that may
 20 be doon to them, they doubtte it not. And^l yf we passe
 not by engyne and subtyllte, we may not goo ouer the
 brydge ; For by force we may noo thyng³ do. but it
 byhoueth vs to passe in gnyse of marchaunts ; And^l
 24 somme of vs shal be wel armed^l vnder our clothes ; and^l
 there aboue we shal were a mantel of cloth, & theyr
 swerdes vnder, And^l there shal come after vs grete som-
 myers charged with marchaundyses. And^l ye wyth al
 28 the chyualrye shal tarye in a lytel wode, & that enery
 man be in grete poynte. & after whan we haue goten
 the fyrst gate, I shal sounne & blowe myn horne, And^l
 wyth motye ye shal come on. And^l thus we shal haue
 32 the passage, by the playsyr of god^l, and^l we shal come to
 our enteneyon." Thys counceyl was wel approued^l by
 the kyng³ Charles, whyche ofte blessyd^l rycharde by cause
 he had^l so wel sayd^l, & thenne he resembled^l al his peple.

Richard tells him
 that the tower is
 surrounded by the
 Saracens,

and that he will
 have to pass the
 bridge of Mantri-
 ble, (4309)

which is kept by
 a giant,

as black as pitch,
 with 10,000 men.
 (4321)

He proposes a plan
 by which they
 may pass it by,
 disguising some
 knights as mer-
 chants. (4345)

Charles approves
 of the plan. (4356)

¹ orig. tonre.

² h vij, back, col. 2.

The standardes were reysed, and the loryflam dyscouerð. Rychard took hys hors, and gaf it to duc Reyner, And wente & ¹bonde heye and grasse to-gyde, and made trusses vpon many sommyers, in the guyse of mar- 4 chauntes. every man wel armed vnder hys cloke, & swerde gyrde, and so take theyr horses, to thende that they shold not be espyed: and were in nombre v hondred knyghtes, alle men of grete faeyon, and dryue to- 8 fore them the sommyers for a good enterpryse. Rychard went tofore as chyef enterprenour, duc howel of Nautes folowed, Guye de vallee, Ryoll du mauns, Duc Reyner, fader of Olyner, & other, whyche rode forth wythout 12 taryng. And Charles wyth alle hys baronnye abode in a wode, as tofore I haue maad mencyon.

Five hundred French knights disguise themselves as merchants, (4369) and start on,

while the others lie hid in a wood. (4400)

¶ How by the moeyen & counceyl of Rychard of Normandye, wyth iij other barons, the 16 strong brydge of mantryble was wonne, not wythoute grete payne; And what maner man galafre was: capitulo vij

¶ H^emperour charles, with an hondred thousand men, 20 abode in the wode tofore sayd, & Rychard of normandye, hoel of Nautes, Ryoll, and Reyner, & other people wlyche were valyaunte of theyr persone, were on the waye to goo toward man-tryble, and ladde wyth 24 them a quantyte of sommyers charged. whan the felowes of Rychard sawe the ryner of flagot so roryng, And thentree of the cyte of mantryble so stronge, the brydge soo daungerous to passe, & the yates barred and en- 28 chayned so wyth yron, they were moche abasshed. For, for to come thyder by assulte, alle the pyssaunce of crystendom myght not entre by that place, but they anaad the brydge and chaynes of yron. Ryol de- 32 maunded of Rychard: "What may there be of this

Richard and his party ride on,

driving the pack-horses before them. (4375)

His companions are frightened at the sight of the river and the strength of the bridge. (4405)

¹ h viij.

² h viij, col. 2.

place?" And he ansuerd: "knowe ye that thys is the strongest cyte that is bytwene thys and Acres. And there been in the same cyte moo than a thousand men of armes." Hoel of Nautes was alle afrayed, And commaunded hym self to god, prayeng hym to kepe theyr persones. Rychard sayd: "lordes, I wyl goo before, & shal speke fyrst; and whan we haue passed the fyrst gate, see that ye take of your clokes for to smyte vpon the paynymys: & for ony thyng that happeth, see that the one of you faylle not the other." Ryol ansuerd: "doubte ye not that whan I am emonge the sarasyns but that I shal doo my deuoyr that it shal appyere: and yf I doo not as I say, I wyl that ye reclame me recreaunte, and repute me as rebouted." After these wordes they hasted theyr sommyers toward the brydge; & galafre sawe them fro ferre, and stode restyng hym nygh to the fyrst gate, & helde in his honde a grete axe of fyn stele bended and affyled that there was noo syde but it cutted. Thys paynym was grete, and fourmed so hydously, and of suche representacyon, that he semed better a deuyl than a resonable persone. he had eyen al enflamed lyke fyre, & he was as blacke as boyled pytehe; hys necke large & grete, his nose half a fote longe, his eeres so grete that they myzt conteyne wel half a busshel of whete, hys armes longe & croked, & his feet stode ouerthwart; & as of the remenaunte of hys body, was lothely ynough. Ballant thadmyral loued hym moche, & was his neuewe, and for the grete confydence that he had in hym he gaf to hym the keypyng of the brydge of mantryble, by cause that it was the moost strengest passage that was in al the marches of that contreye. And the sayd paynym was conestable of al the londes of thadmyral, wherfore it was necessarye that none of the frensshe men shold haue be knowen of hym. For yf there had ony be knowen, there shold

Richard encourages them, and tells them to follow him. (4413)

Galafre sees them coming. (4427)

He is as hideous as a devil,

pitch-black, with flaming eyes, his nose is six inches long, and his ears big enough to hold half a bushel of wheat.

Balan loved him greatly

and had made him constable of all the country about. (4445)

nener none haue escaped¹ but he shold haue ben dede.
Thus, thenne, whan they were ¹at mantryble, Rychard
passed² afore. and³ whan he was at the entre of the gate,

Galafre challenges
the French
knights. (4451)

Galafre came to hym & sayd⁴: “vassal, what are ye? 4
wherfore come ye hyther?”

Richard tells him
they are mer-
chants on their
way to the fairs,

¶ Rychard⁵, whyche was wyse, chaunged his langage,
& began aragon, and⁶ sayd⁷: “Syr, I am a marchaunte
whyche cometh fro Taraston wyth these other mar- 8
chauntes, & brynge grete quantyte of draperye, and⁸ wyl
goo to the fayres, by the helpe of mahon, to whome we
goo to present our marchaundyses; and yf we were at
Aygre more, we shold sojourne there, and⁹ gyue to thad- 12
myral somme preeyous yestes that we here brynge.
These other marchauntes that ben here wyth me ben al
esclaues, and knowe not the langage, wherfor, fayre syr,
we praye to aduyse vs what we may best do, & by what 16
waye we ought to goo.” Galafre ansuerd¹⁰: “knowe ye,

and bearing pre-
sents to Balan.
(4456)

Galafre says that
twelve Frenchmen
had passed the
bridge without
paying toll, (4475)

that I am kepar of the brydge and¹¹ of the passages that
been fyfty myle here aboute. But not longe sythen
passed hereby xij glotons of fraunce, whiche were mes- 20
sagers of the emperour Charles, which yet owe to me
theyr trybute for theyr passage. Neuertheles my lord¹²
thadmyral kepeth them in pryson, And¹³ one of them
that other day escaped prently away as a theef, whiche 24
rode vpon an hors the best that euer I sawe, & ²passed¹⁴
ouer thys rennyng water; whyche also slewe my cosyn
the kyng¹⁵ Claryon, for whome I am in grete melancolye.
now wold¹⁶ god¹⁷ Mahon that he were now here vpon thys 28
brydge, I shold¹⁸ clene hym vnto the myddle of his bely
wythout to haue any mercy or pyte on hym.

as well as a
messenger,

who had slain his
cousin Claryon,
(4487)

Syth that tyme thadmyral doubteth of treason, For
his sone fyerabras whyche hath renyed¹⁹ mahon and²⁰ the 32
paynym lawe for to become crysten. And²¹ he com-
maunded²² me thre tymes that I shold²³ not suffre any
persone, lord²⁴, knyght, ne scruytour, to passe, And²⁵ that

wherfore Balan
had ordered him
to let no one pass,

¹ h viij. back, col. 2.

² i j.

- I shold^þ serche wel al for to knowe the condycyon of
 theym that come thys waye. Therfore I wyl knowe
 what ye be." Rycharð heryng thys, bowed^þ his hede :
- 4 Ryol du mauns, Hoel of Nauntes, and^þ Reyner of genes
 goon forth ouer the brydge. whan galafre saw them, he
 began to doubte, and^þ sayd^þ to them that there shold^þ
 nomoo entre, and^þ anaunced^þ hym and^þ drewe vp the
 8 brydge; and there were nomoo wythin but foure, whyche
 he dred^þ not, and^þ sayd^þ to them in grete fyerste : "ye are
 ouer bolde & hardy to entre herein wythout my com-
 maundemente, And^þ therfor ye four shal be sette in
 12 pryson, and the other that come after you also. And^þ
 to-morn I shal sende you prysoners ¹to my lord^þ thad-
 myrall, he for to doo with you his playsyr. Take of your
 mantellys or clokes, for I wyl see what ye haue there
 16 vnder, For ye seme people for to do euyl." Thus say-
 eng, he toke noel by the cloke, & drewe hym therby
 foure tymes aboute : "By god^þ," sayd^þ Ryol, "I may no
 lenger tarye to see hym do thys Iniurye to my cosyn ;
 20 yf I suffre lenger, be I confounded^þ !" And^þ therwyth
 he threwe of his cloke, and^þ smote vpon the paynym ; but
 he was so strongly armed^þ that he myght do hym no
 harme, sauf that he smote of a lytel of hys ere. Rycharð^þ
 24 and Reyner semblably caste of theyr clokes, and^þ eche
 of them with a swerde in theyr hondes smote to-gydre
 vpon Galafre, and gaf hym many strokes ; but the heed^þ
 ne the body they myght not hurte, For he was armed^þ
 28 with the hyde of on olde Serpente harde and^þ maylled^þ.
 ¶ Thys Paynym was angry, and^þ supposed for to haue
 smyton Ryol, and^þ enhaunced hys axe that was grete
 and^þ heuy and^þ also sharpe. but Ryol sawe the stroke
 32 come, and was habylle, and^þ lepte a syde, and^þ the stroke
 smote vpon the grounde in suche wyse that hyt claffe a
 marble stone on whyche the stroke lyghted^þ.

unless he is
known. (4501)

Raoul and two
others pass on to
the bridge. (4509)

Galafre raises the
bridge, (4514)

and calls on them
to surrender.
(4517)

Raoul strikes at
him,

and cuts off a piece
of his ear.

The others cut at
him, but cannot
hurt him. (4541)

Galafre cuts at
Raoul with his
axe, (4552)

but misses him.

Rayner knocks
Galafre down with
a branch of a tree.
(4563)

1000 Saracens
assemble. (4573)

Richard lets
down the bridge,
and the 500
knights enter.
(4581)

Then he blows his
horn. (4575)

and Charles with
all his men come
up. (4587)

Ganelon in front.
(4589)

“Ha ! god of heuen !” sayd Reyner, “how he
smyteth oultrageously ! ¹ I am al abasshed of the puyss-
saunce of thys deuyl whom we may not conquere ne
gryeue.” He thus sayeng, he took a grete braunche of 4
a tree whyche was longe and stronge, and aduysed and
marked the paynym wel, and he smote hym therwyth
in suche wyse that he made hym to ouerthrowe to
therthe ; & whan he was ouerthrowen, he maad a crye 8
so hye and hydous that the Ryuer and the rockes made
grete bruyt. Wyth thys voys the paynyms of man-
tryble were mocued and assembled, that within a lytel
whyte there were redy armed moo than x thousand. 12
there was thenne a grete commocyon ; Rychard of Nor-
mandye ranne to the yate of the brydge, & aualed down
the drawe bridge, And thenne entred in v hondred
knyghtes whych the foure barons had brought wyth 16
them ; but at the entre of the gate the paynyms en-
countred them : there was a grete medle and recountre ;
many mortal strokes were there gyuen, many were there
slayne and hurte. Rychard took hys horne and sowned 20
it hyely thre tymes. Charles themperour vnderstood
it wel, whyche was in the wood aforesayd with al his
puyssaunce. Euery man was on horsback moche redyly,
and there was not one that cesset to renne tyl he came 24
to the brydge. ²¶ Ganellon, whyche after was tray-
four, bare hym valyauntly. For he was the fyrst that
cam to the brydge wyth hys confanon reysed ; but the
loyalte & trouthe of hym ne of hys kynnesmen endured 28
not longe, as the laste book shal more playnly shewe,
by the playsyr of god.

¶ How by force and strengthe of bataylle
Charles entred in to mantryble, after that 32
Galafre was slayn, not wythstondyng that

¹ i j. back.

² i j. back, col. 2.

alory the traytre was contrarye to hym ;
and' many other maters : capitulo viij

- 4 **A**T thentre of mantryble were moche hurt people &
confounde, as wel of frenssh men as of sarasyns.
and at that tyme themperour bare hym wel, For whome
he attayne, wyth his swerde named Ioyouse, he must
nedes deye, he smote so rudely. and that day was alway
8 by hym Ganellon, whych dyd wel his denoyr. The
dyches of the towne were depe and ful of water, wherin
many were drowne. ¶ Thus as Charles passed tofore,
and his people after, He sawe galafre on þe grounde,
12 which was not dede, and that semed better a deuyl than
a resonable persone, And helde alwaye his axe in his
honde, wyth whyche he had slayn thyrti frenssh men.
And the Emperour, seeyng the harme that he had doon
16 to the frensshe men, anone commaunde to slee hym ; &
so moche they smote at hym wyth axes and stones, that
they slewe hym. The bruyt and noyse was so grete,
that fyue myle aboute was anone knowen that the
20 brydge of mantryble was taken and conquerd ; wherfore
there came I thousand sarasyns, for to gyue ayde to the
eytzeys of mantryble, and to destroye the frenssh
men. The walles of the towne were of marble, and soo
24 stronge that it semed a thyng Impossyble to conquere
or destroye. ¶ To thys medle came a geaunt moche
fyers, named Ampleon, And had a wyf named Amyotte.
And she was departed fro her gesyne, For she had
28 borne two sones, whyche were but iiij monethes olde,
and were two foot brode in the breste, and ten foot longe,
as thystorye sayth. Thys geaunt opened the gate, &
helde in his honde a club of yron grete and massyf,
32 And whan he was passed that yate, wyth his voys
tenebrouse and dyabolyke he cryed : “ Where is charles
the kyng of fraunce? wyl he now bere wyth hym the

In the fight at the
gate of Mantrible

Charles and
Ganellon bear
them well. (4595)

Charles sees that
Galafre is not
dead,

and orders him to
be slain. (4611)

50,000 Saracens
come to help those
of Mantrible,
(4639)

amongst them a
giant and giant-
ess, named Am-
pleon and
Amyot. (4652)

Ampleon chal-
lenges Charles,
(4669)

and threatens
him. (4672)

relyques to Saynt Denys? by mahon, by the whyche I
comforte my self, it were better ¹for hym, olde dotard,
that he were now at parys. And late hym knowe cer-
tainly, that yf thadmyral may haue hym, he shal neuer 4
haue mercy on hym, but he shal do hym be flayn, &
hanged alle quyeke, or brenne hym in a fyre." after
that he had thus spoken, he smote doun many frensshe
men wyth hys club of yron. ¶ In thys recountre were 8
seen and founden so grete a multytude of dede men
that they letted men to passe. Charles, whyche sawe
the facyon, descended and lyght of hys hors, alle wroth
in hys courage, & sette hys shelde tofore hym, wyth hys 12
swerde in hys hande, and hys barons came after hym
ayenst the geaunt. & after that the kyng & he were
assembled, Charles wyth hys swerde Ioyous smote hym
soo myghtely that he clefte hym in two pycees, & 16
myghtely recouerd hys stroke, that he maad hym falle
to the erthe, And soo he was deed. Wherfore the
Sarasyngs were all moeued and affrayed, And as people
enraged smote vpon the Frensshe men with dartes, 20
plombettes, and other engynes mortal.

Charles calls for
help. (4693)
Richard and three
others join him,

¶ And thenne Charles cryed socours for to assemble
hys people. And wyth that crye came to hym Rychard
of Normandye, Reynier of genes, hoel of nauntes, and 24
Syr Ryol du mauns, ²whyche alle had courage lyke vnto
lyons. These foure barons wyth charles made the pay-
nyms to remeue, and to reentre ageyn by force in to the
towne of mantryble. And anone the turkes, whyche 28
were moo than x thousand, cam to the yate for to shette
it, in makyng grete defence with bowes and other shotte,
besyde them that came after, whyche kepte the passages,
which were wel, as thystorye maketh mencyon, fyue 32
thousand; but alle they coude not fynde the maner to
lyfte vp the brydge, For it was conserued and kept
ayenst the sarasyngs by the frensshe men. There was

and drive the
Saracens back
into the town.
(4699)

The Saracens
surround them.
(4703)

¹ i ij, col. 2.

² i ij back.

grete bruyt in thys recountre; And^t though Charles
doubted^t, it was noo meruaylle. For he knewe wel that
yf the sarasyns had^t lyfte vp the brydge to the yate of
4 the towne, It had^t not be possyble to hym to haue passed^t
ouer. And^t he, seeyng^t them reyse vp toward^t the yate
grete barres of yron, supposed^t not to haue passed^t, And^t
wyth a moche wooful herte began to wayle Roulland
8 his neuewe, and the other hys felowes, as he shold neuer
haue seen them.

Charles is almost
in despair. (4712)

¶ Rychard^t of Normandye consyderyng^t thys, escryed
and sayd: "Syr Emperour, in the honour of god esmaye
12 you not, but thynke to destroye and^t smyte down these
Turkes, and^t god shal ayde & ¹helpe vs. Ye knowe wel
that there is none so franke ne valyaunte that wyl
acoward^t hymself, but that he ought to be despysek^t, and^t
16 wyth good^t ryght. ¶ And^t I praye to god^t that he be
confounded^t that suffreth hymself to be taken a-lyue for
to dye afterward^t, and^t that had^t not leuer be hewen in
pyeces than to retorne. And^t wythoute more, late vs
20 auaunce vs, For now it is nede that eche man prone hys
strengthe and^t the valure of hys persone." Wyth these
wordes of a grete courage, entre[d] in to the towne,
Charles, Reyner, Hoel, Ryol, and Rychard^t, These fyue
24 onelye, eche wyth a swerde in hys honde. And^t ye
ought to wete that they entred^t not wythout grete
slaughter of turkes and^t of Paynymys.

Richard encour-
ages him, (4715)

and the fyve push
forward into the
town. (4725)

Charles, seying^t come grete multytude of sarasyns,
28 cryed "a larme and^t socours" moche hye and^t furyously.
Ganellon vnderstood^t hym, and^t had^t of hym grete pyte;
Not wythstondyng^t at the laste he founde hym not good;
& came to geffroy, & escryed hauteuyle his fader, & the
32 other hys kynnesmen, whyche were armed^t moche ryhely
to the nombre of M vij C, and^t al they came afote for to
assayle the yate. The turkes maad^t grete deffence wyth
brondes and^t barres of yron and mortal shotte, where as

Charles calls for
assistance.
Ganellon hears
him,

and wishes to
help him. (4729)

¹ i ij. back, col. 2.

¹many were dede and hurte, of the people of the sayd Ganelon.

Alorys presses Ganelon to retire, and leave Charles to his fate. (4739)

Thenne alory, the traytre, sayd to ganellon: "in fayth, we ben grete foles for to late vs thus deye, & suffre thys 4 torment." And after he sayd to ganellon yet: "late vs goo and departe. Charles is wythin wel empesshed: god forbede that he euer departe! & thou mayst wel see now, that of hym and of Reyner we are wel auenge 8 of the contradyctyons that they made to vs, & of theyr subgettes also. And euyl deth mote he deye that foloweth them ony ferther. for we may wyne Fraunce at our ease and wyll, & holde it wythout contradyctyon, 12 Seen that there is no baron that wyl be to vs contrarye." Ganellon ansuerd: "God of glorye forbede that euer I shold do suche trayson to my ryghtful lord! we holde of hym al our londes & seynouryes. I shold 16 be holden for an ouer vntrewe man yf I consented to hys deth. We haue none other cause but that we ought to do our deuoyr for hym." whan Alory vnderstood hym, he enraged almoost for angre, and after sayd to ganellon: 20

Alorys calls him a fool; (4759)

"ye be a veray fool, that ye tarye whan ye now may wel aduenge you. yf themperour Charles be slayn, al the other barons shal haue theyr heedes smyton of, And thus we shal be aduenged on al our eⁿemyes. Ther- 24 fore leue of, and come on." Ganellon ansuerd: "god forbede that euer I shold be a traytre to my lord, ne that I lene hym vnholpen, but doo my deuoyr to ayde hym. I had leuer to be dysmembred, than to be shamed 28 and blamed in this dede." ¶ Of these wordes were euyl contente Alory and also geffroy daulteuyle, in suche wyse that there was grete debate emonge them.

But Ganelon is faithful to Charles. (4765)

Vpon this came Fyerabras in good araye and grete 32 poynte, and began to crye: "where is Charles?"

Fierabras comes up, and asks where Charles is. (4775)

¶ The Traytre answerd: "Syr, ye shal neuer see hym. He is wythin enclosed, and I suppose he be

¹ i iij.

² i iij. col. 2.

dede now." Fyerabras answerd: "And ye emonge you, what doo you here? what tarye ye? why socoure ye hym not in thys nede? ye may be reproched of
 4 treson wyth good ryght." And after bygan to crye
 "socours and ayde" moche lowde; and by hys voys all the frensshe men came, wythoute ony taryeng, to the belfraye, and fonde Fyerabras and Ganellon, that thenne
 8 had lefte the Traytres at the entree of the brydge.

¶ And Fyerabras thenne was wel Ioyous whan he sawe that the brydge was not drawen up, And thenne he and Ganellon dyd gretely theyr deuoyr, for to entre
 12 in to the cyte. ¹And whan they were wythin, & the traytres sawe the toun wonne, by a manere to do gretely theyr deuoyr, entred in a foot, & smote down wyth the other comunelye. And grete habundaunce of blode
 16 runne thurgh the towne oute of the dede bodyes, that eche man meruaylled that sawe it. The paynyns cryed and brayed as wulues enfamysshed, whan they sawe that they coude not resyste them. They sente to the ad-
 20 myral that he shold socoure them, and cryed on mahon & Termagaunt that they wold come to theyr ayde; but for all that, they were dyscomforted sorowfully, put oute of theyr habytacyons, robbed, pyllled of theyr rychesses
 24 and goodes, and destroyed. Thus doying, a messenger departed secretly for to goo to Aygremore, for tacompte and telle the tydynges of theyr destructyons.

¶ How Amyotte, a geantesse, wyth a sythe greued' gretely the crysten men, and' how hyr two sones were baptysed of the Emperour Charles: capitulo ix

32 **W**Han mantryble was taken, many strokes were gyuen; but when Amyotte, the geantesse, knewe & herd the crye of the eytezeyns, whiche ²were

¹ i iij, back.² i iij, back, col. 2.

and calls on them to succour him. (4780)

Fierabras and Ganelon fight nobly,

and the town is won. (1792)

The Saracens send to Balan for help. (4800)

troubled,—She was as blacke as pytche boyled: hyr
 eyen were rede as brennyng fyre: she had a grete
 vysage & coked, as hye of lengthe as a spere, & gretely
 affrayed of the deth of hyr husbond, & also aferde for 4
 hyr ij sones, of whiche she was late delyuerd;—soo she
 in a rage lepte out of hyr hous, and fonde a sythe
 trenchaunt and meruayllously sharpe, and cam vpon
 the frensshe men so Impetuously that she maad grete 8
 dyscomfyte, in suche wyse that none durst wel ap-
 proche hyr. Kyng Charles seeyng thys, was euyl con-
 tente of the deth of hys peple, and demaunded a crosse
 bowe. And whan it was bende, he shotte so ryght that 12
 he atteyned hyr bytwene the browes, so that she fyl
 down deed to the erthe. She began to cast oute of hyr
 throte a flamme of fyre, moche hydous. Neuertheles,
 she was smyton so wyth stones and other thynges, that 16
 she neuer moened after; wherfore after that, the yates
 of the towne and other deffences were not kepte ne
 defended, but that Charles dyd his wylle of alle.
 ¶ Grete rychesse was founde in that fayre towne, and 20
 the subgettes of the Emperour Charles were there wel
 refresshed of gold and syluer, whiche there habounded.
 For thadmyral Ballant, by cause that place ¹ was so
 stronge & sure, had layed there grete tresours. The 24
 kyng ordeyned in suche manere, that bothe grete and
 smale were wel contente wyth hym. And there he
 abode thre dayes in departyng ² & destributyng the
 goodes, after the degrees & qualytees of hys subgettes. 28
 And after, as charles wente sportyng by the ryuer flagot,
 In a cane were founden the ij sones, yonge chyliden, of
 the fornamed geauntesse Amyotte, of whome he was
 wel Ioyous, and were baptysed; & one he named Roul- 32
 land, and that other Olyuer; and dyd do them wel to
 be nourysshed. But after, wythin two monethes, they
 were bothe founden dede in theyr beddes, wherfore

Amyot the giant-
 ess rushes out,
 armed with a
 seythe,

and slays numbers
 of the French.
 (4820)

Charles shoots her
 with a cross-bow.
 (4832)

The town is
 sacked. (4845)

Charles remains
 at Mantrible three
 days. (4841)

He finds the
 children of the
 giantes Amyot,

whom he causes
 to be baptised,
 under the names
 of Roland and
 Olyuer. (4865)

¹ i iiij.

² orig. dapartyng.

thempour was euyl contente. Neuertheles, in that same tyme, whyche was the moneth of may, that the stronge cyte of mantryble was taken & put in subgeeyon, charles made to come to hym Rycharde of Normandy, Reyner of genes, hoel of nauntes, Ryol of mauns, & took counceyl who shold kepe the brydge and passage of mantryble, tyl they had destroyed balant the admyral, & delyuerd oute of pryson the other peres of fraunse. Rycharde answerd: "syr emperour, me semeth it shold be good that hoel & syr Ryol shold abyde for to kepe þe brydge & toun wyth fyue thousand men." ¹and lyke as Rycharde sayd, so was it doon. and there they ij abode, and the hurt men for to be heled at theyr leyzer. and after, with sowne of trompettes, the hoost of the emperour began to depart toward aygremore; and there was so moche peple and so grete estate, that it was merueylle. Thus as they were wel on theyr waye, The Emperour wente vpon a lytel hylle for to byholde his peple and subgettes; And seeyng the multytude, he lyfte vp hys eyen to heuen, and sayd: "O lord god, my creatour, whiche by thy grace and playsyr hast made me lord and conduytour of this people, wyth ryght good hert I gyue to the, thankynges and laude. Thou hast gyuen to me grete puyssaunce sythe they be at my wylle and commaundemente." After that he had sayd thus, he blessed hym, And in the name of Ihesus he took forth his waye. And the sayd Emperour had in hys companye an hondred thousand men wel fyghtyng, And the Admyral had the fyghtars of thyrtene contreyes. the freysshe men rode forth: Rycharde of normandy was in the anaunte garde, And the Duke Reynere² in that other. Anone the tydynges came to thadmyral that galafre was slayn, & that mantryble was taken & dyscomfyted, ³ wherfore he swowned for sorowe, and cryed out, "haroo!" as a

Charles consults as to whom he shall leave in charge of Mantribre. (4875)

By the advice of Richard Howel and Raoul are left there with 5000 men. (4881)

Charles, seeing the magnitude of his forces, thanks God. (4907)

He has 100,000 men.

Balan is told of the death of Galafre, and the capture of Mantribre. (4923)

¹ i iij, col. 2.

² orig. Reyner.

³ i iij, bk.

In great grief and
rage he curses
Mahoun, (1927)

and smashes his
image. (1939)

Sortibrant advises
him to repent and
humble himself
before his gods,
(1943)

and to send out
spies to see if
Charles is coming.
(1951)

Balan is per-
suaded and
repents. (1963)

man fro hym self, sayeng: "ha! ha! god mahon! thy
power is nought. O cursyd god & recreaunte, thou art
nothyng¹ worth to me! he is a moche fool that trusteth
in the, whan thou suffrest my men to be slayn, and¹ hast 4
consented to my dyslionour, as I now wel see, whych
ouȝtest wel to haue doon the contrarye." Thys sayeng,
the admyral took a clubbe with his two handes, &
ranne to mahon & his other goddes, & smote Mahon 8
soo grete a stroke vpon the heeð, that he fyl down, &
was al to-broken. yf thadmyral and the other paynyns
were not wel abused¹, they myght knowe clerely theyr
Infydelyte and¹ fals creaunce, for to Inuoke the ymages 12
that can not speke ne gyue comfort, and¹ haue no con-
solacion. A lytel vnderstandyng and lacke of wytte, &
also contrarye to nature, for to gyue fayth of helpe to a
thyng made with the hande of a man. Neuertheles, 16
Sortybrant of Conymbres, seeyng¹ the desolacyon of
thadmyral, counceyllid¹ hym, that as moche as he myght,
to chastyse hym self of the Iniurye doon to Mahon.
Thadmyral said to hym: "I may not enelyne to do to 20
hym obeyssaunce, Seeyng¹ that Charles hath wonne by
his puyssaunce my cyte and stronge tour¹ of mantryble,
where as I had¹ my laste comforte to kepe me moost
sure." Sortybrant ansuerd: "Syr admyral, sende forth 24
an espye for to wete yf the hoost of charles cometh
hyther ageynst you; And¹ yf it be soo, late vs ryde
ayenst hym in bataylle to-gyder. And¹ yf ye may, late
hym be taken, and¹ hange hys people, or brenne them, 28
without ony mercy or pyte. And¹ themne after ye may
caste out of your tour these glotons that kepe it, and
smyte of the heeð of Fyerabras, thy sone, that aydeth
them." Whan the admyral ballant had herde Sorty- 32
brant, consyderyng¹ hys affectyon, humbly he retorned
to mahon, purposyng¹ to do as he had¹ sayd¹.

¹ i iij, back, col. 2.

¶ How the peres of Fraunce were assaylled'
 more strongely than euer they were, And'
 the toure quasi put to therthe, and' recom-
 4 fortified' by the holy relyques, by them
 adoured, and other maters : capitulo x

SOrtybrant prayed soo moche thadmyral, & with
 hym the olde kyng Coldroe tempeste hym, &
 8 brillant de mommyere, that for thyniurye that he had
 doon to Mahon tofore them al he shold make amendes.
 The admyral beyng content for their affectyon, sware
 that he shold encrease Mahon, and Augment of a thou-
 12 sand weyzt, after their custome, of fyn gold and other
 precyosytes. And anone dyd do sowne trompettes
 and other Instrumentes, at the sowne of whome were
 assembled sarasyns Innumerable, al armed. And the
 16 admyral maad to brynge hys engynes for to throwe
 grete stones at the tour, for to brynge it down, and also
 for to destroye the frensshe men & hys doughter. And
 thus, more feruent than euer he had been, cam for
 20 tassayle the toure, and laye theyrengynes therto; wyth
 whych the paynims made fyue grete hooles in the
 toure, that thurgh the leste myght passe a carte at his
 ease. whan thys was doon, Olyuer & Rolland, wyth
 24 theyr shieldes tofore them, and theyr swerdes in theyr
 hondes. stode in the wyndowes, and yet they were not
 soo hardy emonge them but that they were abasshed,
 not wythstondyng they had good wyll to defende
 28 them. Alway hym that they myght attayne with
 stones or other thynges, they soo hurte hym that he
 dyd them nomore hurt ne damage. This doyng, thad-
 myral cryed: "O my friendes and subgettes, doo your
 32 deuoyr to brynge to the erth thys toure; For yf ye so
 do, ye shal haue my loue entyerly. And after I shal

Balan humbles
 himself before his
 gods,

and promises
 them gifts. (4965)

He orders batter-
 ing-engines to be
 brought up
 against the tower.
 (4979)

Five great
 breaches are
 made in the wall.
 (4987)

Roland and
 Oliver defend the
 tower well.
 (4991)

Balan threatens
his daughter.

¹make Florypes the putayne to deye shamefully in a
brennyng^t fyre, for she hath wel deserued^t it, doying^t to
me the dyshonour that enery man knoweth." ¶ After
these wordes the paynims were more feruent than they 4
had^t ben tofore, & surmounted^t by strengthe, scaled^t
the toure, and^t mounted^t vp, and^t entred in at holes, in
suche wyse that the x barons helde not but þ^e last
stage that was. Rolland seying^t thys, sayd^t to them: 8

The Saracens
swarm in at the
breaches. (5011)

Roland cheers on
the French
knights.

"lordes & brethern! in thouour of god^t our maker, late
vs wyth one courage bere vs valyauntly, ellys we shal
not passe thys day, but that we shal be surprysed,
taken, and^t defeated." "Brother & felowe," sayd^t 12
Olyuer, "we been here of vs x, as longe as it shal
please our creatour, & we been al good^t fyghtars. In

Oliver proposes a
sally. (5020)

the name of God^t, I counceyl that we yssue oute for to
assayle our enemyes. I had^t leuer to dye there withoute, 16
and suffre to be hewen, than to deye here wythin wyth
dys-honour." Ogyer the danoys, and the other, sayd^t
semblably. Florypes, seeying^t thys, was al abasshed^t,
and^t demaunded^t the barons yf they wold goo out for to 20

Floripas encour-
ages them, 5039

goo assaylle the paynims, & sayd^t to them: "ye noble
knyghtes of honour & of good^t partye, I praye to god^t
that at this tyme yene you grace to doo wel, And I
promyse you ²yf ye put them oute from thys assaulte, I 24
shal shewe to you a thyng wherof ye shal be Ioyeful."

and they drive
the Saracens
back,

wyth tho wordes³ the barons goo smyte and^t hewe doun
the turkes so vygorously, that many of them were dede
& hurt whych were in the holes of the walle, & smote 28
them wyth stoones in the tour, in suche wyse that they
were caste in to the dyches and drowned.

and stop up the
breaches.

And anone
as they had^t goten thoo holes, they stoppeth^t them & faste
enclosed^t them. and after florypes axed^t fyrst of naymes 32
due of bauyere, & of Thyerry due of Ardayne, and^t
sayd^t: "Lordes, on a tyme ye promysed^t me, and sware,
that ye shold not do ony thyng ayenst my wyll. I

¹ i v. col. 2.

² i v. back.

³ orig. thordes.

wyl shewe to you the crowne of Ihesus, & two of the
 nayles that he was nayled with to the crosse, whyche I
 haue long kept." The barons heryng¹ thys, wepte for
 4 Ioye, & sworn to hyr that they shold² do no thyng to
 hyr, but al loyalte and³ trouthe. Florypes wente thenne
 and⁴ fette a lytel coffre, moche ryche & fayre, and⁵ tofore
 them she opened⁶ it; & assone as the relyques were taken
 8 & vnwounden, there was seen a grete clerenes and a
 meruayllous resplendysshour.

Floripas brings
 out the sacred
 relics, (5045)

Thenne the barons kneled down to the erthe, deu-
 outely smytyng⁷ them self on their brestes by con-
 12 trycyon of hert. Duc Naymes ¹of banyere was the
 fyrst that kyssed⁸ them wyth grete reuerence, & the
 other after, & after came to the wyndowes, For the
 paynymys were mounted on hye. And⁹ assone as they
 16 sawe them, they tumbled¹⁰ down to þ^e grounde, dede, & al
 to-broken. Whan Naymes sawe that, he sayd: "O
 lord¹¹ god¹² of glorye, whyche mayst do al thyng, I thanke
 the, & gyue to the lawde & praysyng, For now I see
 20 wel and¹³ knowe that these ben the reliques of whome we
 haue ofte spoken." And¹⁴ Incontynent he took hardynes
 and courage, and¹⁵ after sayd to hys felawes: "Brethern,
 now we be recomforted¹⁶, so that we shal neuer fere ne
 24 doubte paynymys ne sarasyns." And¹⁷ after, Florypes
 remysed¹⁸ the relyques in the coffret honestly. Thad-
 myral sawe the prynces at the wyndowes, & hys dought-
 er wyth them; & he, ful of a fals enteneyon, escryed¹⁹
 28 hyr wyth an hye voys, by cause he wol²⁰ be vnder-
 stonden: "O florypes, fayr doughter, I see wel where
 thou art. A grete fool was thy fader whan he trusted²¹
 the, & ful of folysshe counceyl was he that put in thyn
 32 hande, by the moyen of thy langage, the fyrst pryson-
 ers. I haue herde say longe sythe, that a man that
 trusteth in a woman, of thyng of Inportaunce, is a moche
 fool. but neuertheles thy puterye shal ²not endure

which the knights
 kiss with great
 reverence. (5052)

At the sight of
 the relics the
 Saracens fall
 down dead from
 the walls. (5065,

Balan sees his
 daughter at a
 window and
 abuses and
 threatens her.
 (5083,

¹ i v, back, col. 2.

² i vj.

Floripas threatens
him with a stick.
(5003)

The Saracens
make a furious
assault and a
great part of the
wall is broken
down. (5101)

The French use
the Saracen idols
as missiles. (5113)

Balan swoons
with rage. (5117)

and again abuses
his gods. 5123

Sortibrant
reproves him,
(5127)

longe, as I truste, For I swere to the that I shal departe
the loue that thou hast wyth the glotons of Fraunce,
& wythoute pyte I shal doo brenne you al." Florypes
herde these wordes, & took a baston in her honde, & 4
made a sygne as though she had menaced hyr fader;
wherfore thadmyral, seeyng that, began to sowne to
gadre hys peple, and comaunded to shote & lose the
Instrumentes ayenst the toure, in suche wyse that anone 8
a grete partye of the walle was ouerthrowen to therthe.
Thenne the barons doubted moche of them vpon the
walle. And Rolland, Olyuer, and Ogyer went in to a
chambre, where as were Mahon, Appolyn, Termagaunte, 12
& Margotte, goddes of the Paynims, whyche were
moche ryche. And Rolland took Appolyn whyche
was heuy, and threwe it vpon the Paynims: Olyuer
lyfte vp termagaunte, & Ogyer Margotte, and smote 16
wyth them the sarasyns, in suche wyse that them that
they attayned dyd them neuer hurte after.

Whan thadmyral sawe thus his goddes vytupered
and throwen, he took suche angre and so grete yre in 20
hys courage, that for sorowe he tumbled down as a dede
man to the erthe. Sortybrant, with moche sorowe, took
hym vp, and many wepte & made grete ¹desolacyon for
sorowe. and after thadmyral sayd: "lordes & frendes, 24
he shal euer be my frende & speeyal byloued, þat wyl
aduenge the shame that these glotons haue doon to my
goddes." Sortybrant dyd grete payne to recomforte
hym, sayeng that in short tyme he shold be auenged 28
on them al, "seen that the toure is broken in moo than
xv parties." "O Mahon," sayd the admyral, "thou
hast wel forgotten me; at the moost nede thou fayllest
me: thou arte now so olde that thou dotest. I haue seen 32
the day that þou haddest grete pyssaunce." ¶ Sorty-
brant ansuerd: "Syr, ye haue an euyl custome, whan
ye speke so euyl ayenst Mahon. Ye knowe wel that

¹ i vj. col. 2.

there was neuer borne, ne neuer shal be, so good¹ a god² :
 he gyueth vs plente¹ of whete, of wyn, and³ of other
 goodes also ; he shal doo for vs whan he hath bythought
 4 hym. he is yet euyl contente for the stroke that ye
 smote hym on the nose. Abyde a lytel tyl he be better
 aduysed, And⁴ the frensshe men shal yelde them vnto
 you soo that ye shal holde you pleased⁵.” Vpon these
 8 wordes Mahon was broughte tofore hym, And⁶ a deuyl
 entred⁷ in to hym, whyche sayd⁸ in thys manere after
 that he had⁹ adoured¹⁰ hym : “ Admyral, ryche lord¹¹, ne
 dyscomfort you not : do sowne your trompettes &
 12 hornes, ²and assemble your peple, & after assaylle the
 toure ; and¹² at thys tyme ye shal take the Frensshe
 men.” wyth these wordes thadmyral was al reioyce¹³,
 and¹⁴ alle thengynes and¹⁵ Instrumentes he dyd¹⁶ do sette
 16 ayenst the tour, and threwe stones and¹⁷ maad¹⁸ grete shotte
 ageynst the toure, whyche was thenne al to-broken, and¹⁹
 almoost al ouerthrowen. The peres of Fraunce seyn²⁰
 thys, had²¹ grete doubte of daunger, and not wythout
 20 cause. Neuertheles, Ogyer the danoys sayd²² to hys
 felawes : “ O loyal companyons, replenysshed²³ of fy-
 delyte, For ony payne or doubte of deth emonge vs, late
 none be founde wyth ony treason, ne suffre to entre in
 24 to hym ony euyl thought of Infydelyte and²⁴ cowardyse.
 ye see now ^{pat} the tour gooth to grounde, And²⁵ almoost
 these sarasyns be medled²⁶ wyth vs. But as touchyng²⁷
 to me, I swere by god²⁸ my maker, that tofore my soule
 28 shal departe fro my body, yf I haue the puyssaunce to
 holde in my hande Cortayn my swerde, I shal make so
 grete a dyscomfytur of these paynyms, that euery man
 shal mernaylle.” With these wordes Rollan²⁹ byhelde
 32 durandal ; and³⁰ Olyner, with eueryche of the other, by-
 helde theyr swerdes, & were alle renewed wyth strengthe
 and³¹ courage. And al wyth one wylle goon vpon the
³sarasyns, and³² there dyd³³ suche dylygence, that alle-

and begs him to
have patience.

A false devil,
under the form of
Mahoun,

urges Balan to
renew the
assault,
promising him
success. (5140)

Balan is delighted,
and orders his
men up again.
(5147)

The French are
almost in despair,

but are comforted
by Ogyer, (5171)

and they drive
the Saracens
back again.
(5189)

¹ orig. pleute.

² i vj. back.

³ i vj. back, col. 2.

waye they were lordes of the toure, & made the sara-
syns theyr enemyes to goo abacke. Florypes, consyder-
yng^t theyr affayre, was sorowful that no socours com to
hem, and^t also remembryng^t the menaces of hyr fader 4
hadmyrall. But Guye of bourgoyn recomforted^t hyr
alwaye, in suche wyse, that of al she was contente.

¶ How the peres of Fraunce had' tydynges
of¹ thoost of charles, and' the admyral also; 8
and' how Ganellon bare hym merueylously,
which allone was sente to the admyral, and'
what he dyd': capitulo x[i]

THe Frensshe men beyng^t in thys contynuel payn 12
of bataylle for to defende p^r toure, Duc Naymes of
bauyere went vp on hye, and^t sawe oute of a wyndowe,
& sawe hynethe in a valeye the sygne of saynt denys,
whyche was brought hastely, & after, a grete companye 16
of men of armes: And^t thought in hym self that they
came for to socour and^t ayde them. and^t anone sent
for hys felawes for to come & see them. Assone as
Florypes vnderstood^t it, she came to Guy of bourgoyn, 20
sayeng: "O glorious ²vyrgyn marie, moder of Ihesus,
worshypped^t mote ye be for these tydynges that I haue
herde! O noble knyght, guye of bourgoyn, my dere
lone, approche ye to me yf it playse you, and^t kysse 24
me." Of the loye of Florypes, were loyeful the erles
and^t lordes, ye may thynke that they were wel com-
forted^t whan they sawe the standard of fraunce, wherin
was the dragon wel figured^t. Grete loye and grete 28
consolacion was emonge them, & they had^t cause, seen
the daunger wherin they were. Anone a paynym cam
to thadmyral, & sayd^t to hym, that Charles wyth an
hondred thousand^t men of armes came makyng^t grete 32
bruyt. The kynge Coldroe counceylled^t anone that

Naymes from a
window sees
Charles and his
army coming.
(5207)

Floripas thanks
God for the news,
(5223)

and they all-
rejoice.

A messenger
tells Balan that
the French army
is coming. (5231)

¹ orig. yf.

² i vij.

- enery man shold be armed, and that they shold goo
 mete wyth hym at the fyrst poynte. Hys counceyl
 was approued by thadmyral and by thother. Wher-
 4 fore anone L thousand turkes were assembled in grete poynte for to kepe the grete vale of Iosue, to
 thende that he myght not come in to Aygremore.
 Rolland sawe Rychard of Normandye wyth hys con-
 8 fanon reyse vp, whyche came al afore: and alle
 taryed in a medowe for to bayte and refresshe theyr
 horses, and to tarye there al the nyght, whyche was
 nyghe. And wythoute makyng lodgyses or other
 12 thyng, they there rested them al nyght, For theyr
 tentes were lefte at mantryble. On the morne erly, the
 Emperour dyd do arme his peple, & sette them in good
 araye, and in grete poynte, And after sente for Fyera-
 16 bras, and sayd to hym: "Ryght dere frende, thou
 knowest that I haue doo the be baptysed, wherfore I
 loue the the better. yf thou myztest pourchace and
 make that thy fadre be baptysed, and renye Mahon
 20 and al hys dyabolike goddes, I shold be wel glad and
 Ioyous. And I promyse to the, that of al hys goodes
 I shal not take a peny. And yf he wyl not so do, I
 promyse that by force I shal fyght ayenst hym; & yf
 24 he take harme, wyte it not me, ne conne me noo maulgre,
 for I may not lette it." "Syr Emperour," sayd Fyera-
 bras, "take a messenger, and late hym demaunde hym,
 yf he wyl soo doo as ye say, and I shal be content.
 28 For yf he gaynsaye it I shal neuer praye for hym, ne
 haue pyte of hym, though I see hym hewen and deye."
 Hereupon charles demaunded Reyner and rychard of
 Normandye, whyche were his nexte counceyllours, and
 32 sayd to them: "Lordes, whome seme you moost pro-
 pyce for to sende on thys message to the Admyrall?
 By myn aduys, ganellon shold be good therfore, yf he
 wold, for to recounte & speke hooly thys ²message. I

He sends 50,000
men to meet
them.

The French
bivouac for the
night. (5251)

In the morning
Charles tells
Fierabras that if
Balan will be
baptised he shall
keep all his
kingdom. (5263)

Fierabras advises
Charles to send a
messenger to his
father. (5275)

Charles proposes
to send Ganelon.
(5283)

¹ i vij, col. 2.

² i vij, back.

knowe hym for wel suffysaunt, & ye knowe wel that he
 dyd wel hys deuoyr at the entre of mantryble. yf ye
 wyl consente, he shal doo the message." Rycharð
 answerd, and Reyner also, that he shold doo wel the 4
 message. The kyng^d sente for ganellon, and sayd to
 hym: "My frende, we haue chosen you for to goo say
 to thadmyral Ballant that he be baptysek & renye
 mahon, & that he take Ihesu Cryste for hys god, & 8
 that he byleue in hym, & in hys passyon that he suf-
 fred for al humayne creatures; & after, that he yelde to
 me my barons, whyche he holdeth in hys pryson, &
 also the relyques that longe tyme I haue demaunded of 12
 hym. & yf he wyl do this, we shal lene to hym hys
 contreye & hys landes: & yf he wyl doo otherwyse, we
 shal make to hym mortal warre, and shal take of hym
 no mercy." Ganellon was contente for to goo thyder 16
 allone, And took & sette on his helme, & mounted
 vpon his hors, named gascon, and henge on hys necke
 his schiele, wherein was paynted the lyon, & after went
 in to the vale of Iosue hastely. and anone he was 20
 taken of the turkes that kept the passage; but whan
 they knewe that he was a messenger for to speke to
 thadmyral, they troubled hym not, but lete hym goo,
 & he taryed¹ not tyl that he came tofore thabytaeyon of 24
 thadmyral, & he lente vpon his spere with a knyghtly
 countenaunce, & moche resembled a baron of grete
 valure, for to say wel hys message. whan thadmyral
 knewe of his comyng, he came to hym, And thenne 28
 Ganellon spake hardly to hym in this manere: "Sara-
 syn, take hede & vnderstonde me: I am a messenger of
 the noble charles, kyng of fraunce & ryght myghty
 Emperour, & he sendeth the worde by me, that thou 32
 renye and forsake Mahon & thyn other goddes dya-
 holyke, & byleue in Ihesu cryst, the redemptour of al
 the worlde, whyche took on hym humanyte, and suffred

Richard approves
 of this,

and Charles sends
 for Ganellon

and gives him
 his instructions.
 (5291)

Ganellon arms
 himself,
 and starts. (5307)

He rides up to
 Balan's tent,
 (5322)

and delivers his
 message to the
 Sultan, (5325)

¹ i vij. back, col. 2.

- deth, cruel & bytter, in the tree of the¹ crosse, for
to redeme al the worlde. & yf thou so do, thou art
assured not onely [not] to deye. & also not to lese thy
4 londe, ne none of thy good, but thou shalt alwaye be
byloued of hym, & of Fyerabras thy sone. and yf thou
wylt not accorde herto, & withstande it, knowe for cer-
tayne, that of Charles thou art deffyed, & al thy people.
- 8 & yf thou wylt saue thy self, thynke to flee and wyth-
drawe the fro thys contreye; For yf thou may be taken
and holden, thou shalt be delyuerd to daungerous deth,
and alle thy subgettes shal be dysmembred & slayn,
- 12 & after, he shal gyue thy royaume and thy rychesses to
his ²seruauntes. Therefore aduyse the wel." Whan thad-
myral had herde hym, he was almoost in a rage of hys
wordes, and by destresse of angre he took a staffe for
16 to smyte the messenger, and sayd to hym: "Gloton
payllard! thou art dysmesured in thy langage. by
mahon, to whome I am yeuene, at thys tyme thou hast
be ouer hardy, & lytel loued the, Charles, whan he sente
20 the to me. For thou shalt be wel sure that thou shalt
neuer recounthe to hym thy message." Ganelon, seying
that he was not wel sure wyth them, he took hys
swerde, whyche was heuy & sharpe, & gaf wythal a
24 stroke to brullant of mommyere in the breste, that he
ouerthrewe & fyl at the feet of the admyrall, whyche
seyng that, escryed moche stronglye tauenge hym.
Thenne wyth thys voys assembled moo than fyfty
28 thousand turkes, for to take Ganelon, whyche ranne
after hym thurgh the vale of Iosue; but he escape
them al, and was not taken. Duc Naymes was at a
wyndowe, and sawe hym chace, & demaunded Rolland
32 & Olyuer what he was; & they knewe for certayne that
he was crysten, and by presumyng made emonge them
they Indged that it was Ganelon that had spoken to
thadmyral. ¶ "Alas!" sayd Rolland, "I praye to

calling on him to
become Christian
on pain of death.
(5337)

Balan, in a rage,
threatens him
with a stick.
(5343)

Ganelon draws
his sword and
cuts down
Bruillant. (5353)

Balan calls on
his men to seize
Ganelon,
but he rides off
and escapes.
(5369)

The knights in
the tower
recognize him.
(5371)

¹ orig. ithe.

² i viij.

Ganelon turns on
his pursuers,

and slays two of
them. (5385)

Oliver sees this
feat,

and wishes he
were with him.
(5395)

The Saracens
pursue Ganelon

till they see the
army of Charles.

Ihesus our redemour that he graunte ¹hym grace to
passe wel without daunger. I shal be euyl content yf
he come not to his good^l desyre." ¶ The other barons
sayden semblably, & prayed god to kepe hym fro peryl. 4
Ganellon ran alwaye forth tyl he came to the toppe of
a montayne, and there he turned^l hym ayenst the
Paynmys, & sawe comyng to hym a grete paynym of
the cyte of Aygremore. and anone he took hys swerde 8
named^l murgall, moche trenchaunte, & atteyned^l the
paynym vpon the helme, and cleft^l hym to the breste:
And after, he slewe Tenebre, whyche was broder of
kyng^l Sortybrant. Olyuer sawe al hys feat, and sayd^l 12
to Rolland: "Brother, beholde the valyaunce that thys
baron dooth; I praye god that he conserue hym. And
wete ye wel that in my hert I loue hym. Saue you &
charles, I loue none better. Now wold^l god that I 16
were in hys companye, I shold^l make grete marterdom
on these Paynmys." Neuertheles he was strongely
chaced^l of the paynmys. But whan they sawe the
hoost of Charles, they retorned aback, and wente & 20
tolde the affayre to thadmyral, & how Charles had moo
than an hondred^l thousand^l fyghtyng^l men. wherfore
they counceyll^led that euery man shold arme hym, &
that counceyl was approued^l. but whan sortybrant 24
²knewe that hys broder was dede, he made to come an
Innumerable companye of sarasyns, tauenge his deth in
menaeyng to do harm to Charles. Of hys enteneyon
was moche glad thadmyral, bycause he myght the better 28
come to hys desyre.

¶ How Charles emperour ordeyned^l ten
bataylles, and how they dyd^l & were
recountred^l of the puyssaunce of the 32
admyral, where as themperour dyd^l mer-
uaylles, and^l of other maters: capitulo xij

¹ i viij, col. 2.

² i viij, back.

- W**han Ganellon was comen to kyng^t Charles,
 themperour ordeyned x bataylles after that
 4 Ganellon had^t tolde hys message, whyche was suche :
 “ Syr emperour, I say to you that thadmyral ne fereth Ganelon reports
the result of the
message to
Charles, (5439)
 you ne your dedes, neyther god ne hys sayntes. I was
 wel happy that I escaped^t, For I haue been chace^t
 8 wyth xx thousand sarasyns. after that thadmyral wold
 haue had me, & after these wordes, I slewe one of theyr
 kynges.” wherfore he was praysed of the kyng & other.
 And anone they sowne^t hornes and^t trompettes, & was who divides his
army into 10
divisions, and
prepares for
battle. (5453)
 12 open warre on alle partes in thoost of Charles. Rol-
 land^t herde the sowne, and the voys of ¹the frensshe
 hoost, wherof he and al the barons were al reioyced &
 made good^t chyere. whan the ij hoostes recountred, al
 16 the contrey shone of theyr armes, ther were so many of
 them. after, as I haue sayd^t tofore, kyng charles made
 ten bataylles: In the fyrst, he ordeyned^t Rychard^t of Richard lea^ds the
vanguard, (5455)
 Normandy; Duc Reyner of genes had^t the second^t,
 20 Ganellon the thyrd^t, Alory the fourth, Geffroy the
 fyfthe, Machayre the vj, Hardre the seuenth, Amangius
 the viij, Sampson the ix, And^t of the tenthe was con- and Charles
himself the rear.
(5457)
 dnytour charles the kyng^t. & in eche bataylle were x
 24 thousand^t men of armes wel fyghtyng atte leste. Whan
 Ballant the admyral sawe the kyng^t comyng^t, he sayd^t
 to brullant, “ who shal be the fyrst that shal entre in
 to bataylle with an hondred^t thousand^t paynyns;” Balan bids
Brullant to attack
the French first
with 100,000 men.
(5459)
 28 & sayd that yf he took Charles, he shold not slee them
 ne fyerabras, for he wold after smyte of theyr heedes.
 & vpon thys poynte the warre was open, & Brullant
 began to goo a grete bowedraunzt tofore the other, and^t Brullant rides out
and challenges
Charles. (5471)
 32 began to crye “ haro ! haro ! where is charles themper-
 our wyth his euyl chere? loo ! I come to the ! thou
 hast enterpryse^t a grete folye whan thou passest the
 see, & ouer late thou shalt repente the. On thys day

¹ i viij. back. col. 2.

shal be the ende of thy lyf and of thy subgettes lyf.
 And ¹ wythoute faulte thou shalte be yolden to thad-
 myral, & alle thy contreye shal be destroyed." Them-
 perour herde wel these wordes; wherfore alle in a fureye ⁴
 he lete renne hys hors, & came ageynst the paynym, &
 attayned hym in suche wyse that hys harnoys brake,
 and after, he drewe hys swerde, and neuer lefte hym
 tyl he was dede. fro thens with his spere he came to a ⁸
 turke kynge of pyetrelee, and smote hym in the breste
 that he fyl deed to the erthe. and whan his spere was
 broken, he dyd grete deuoyr with Ioyouse hys swerd;
 for hym that he attayned, dyd neuer hurte after. At ¹²
 that tyme he bare hym meruayllously, that one of the
 hoostes medled eche wyth other in suche wyse that
 there was neuer seen warre so mortal, for they that
 were lynyng were lette by them that were dede. ¹⁶
 Themne emonge the paynmys there was a turke, named
 Tenebres, which cam makyng grete bruyt vpon the
 frensse men, and attayned fyrst the noble Iehan of
 pountayse vpon his shelde, and brake it in pyeces, & ²⁰
 smote hym thurgh the body that he fyl deed to the
 erthe; and after drewe hys swerde, & put to deth
 huon, and guernyer thauneyen, and after sayd to the
 frensse men that on that day Charles and hys sub- ²⁴
 gettes had loste theyr myght. Rychard of ² Normandye
 had despyte of hys wordes, & came ageynste hym, &
 attayned hym so daungerously that he brake his haw-
 berke, and brake his shielde in quarters, & so smote ²⁸
 hym, that he fyl down deed wythout ony more reproch-
 yng & sayeng euyl wordes. & after, by force of
 strengthe they passed the vale of Iosue, & came and
 fonde thadmyral wyth alle hys puyssaunce, whyche ³²
 was accompanyed wyth iiij kynges crowned, & wyth
 an CM fyghtyng men, as wel a horsback as a fote.
 Anone a messenger came to the admyral, & tolde hym

Charles charges
at him,

and slays him,
(5485)

and afterwards
many more of the
Saracens. (5496)

Tenebres, a
Saracen king,
makes great
havoc amongst
the French,
(5523)

but is himself
slain by Rychard.

The French force
the pass,
and approach
Balan's division.
(5563)

¹ k j.

² k j, col. 2.

how brulant his brother was dede, and many in hys
 companye. Thenne he sente for tempest, hys neuewe,
 & for Sortybrant of conymbres, his moost speycal
 4 frendes, & said to them: "My barons and trewe
 frendes, yf euer ye haue loued me, & haue entencion
 to do me playsyr, Doo so moche that ye fynde charles
 the kyngt. For I wyl goo to hym, and haue concludet
 8 in my self to fyght in my persone ayenst hys persone;
 & sythe I shal deye ones, it sullyseth me that I myght
 slee hym, & thenne shal I be contente to deye, yf I
 deye after. For I retche not yf I aduenge me or I
 12 deye." Sortybrant & many other, consyderyngt thastate
 of thadmyral, bygonnen to wepe for pyte in comfortyngt
 hym.

Balan determines
 to seek out and
 engage Charles in
 single combat.

¶ How in thys bataylle folowyng', Sortybrant
 16 was slayne by Reyner, fader of Olyuer,
 and after how thadmyral dyd' meruaylles
 and' grete ennoye to the frensshe men :
 capitulo xiiij

20 **B**Allant thadmyral rode vpon an hors, the beste
 Brennyng of alle the contreye, ryght wel armedt,
 and it was blacke as a more, & hym self was grete
 of body, well membredt, & hadt hys berde hangyngt to
 24 the sadel, whyche was whyte as snowe. & after dyd do
 sowne hys trompettes & hornes tasseble his hoost, &
 made the archers to goo byfore, whyche coude wel shote
 wyth bowes turquoys, & al furyously that one ayenst
 28 the other goo shote, and make mortal warre, so that the
 shotte flewe in thayer thycker than hayl. So moche
 people was there slayn that the wayes were empasshed
 & lette by dede bodyes. The Duke Reyner passedt
 32 thurgh forth, & the fyrst that he encountred was
 kyng Sortybrant, & gaf to hym a grete stroke with-
 out faynyng, that hys shelde auaylledt hym not; hys

A general engage-
 ment ensues,

and the slaughter
 is immense.
 (5516)

Reyner attacks
 and slays
 Sortibrant.

¹ k j, back.

Balan grieves
over the death of
Sortibrant.

He charges into
the French,

and slays Huon of
Milan and 20
others. (5574)

Ganelon and his
friends make
great slaughter of
the Saracens.

Milo's horse is
killed by Balan,

but he is rescued
by Ganelon.

hanberk al to-brake, so that he made his spere to plunge
and bayne in hys body soo depe, that he abode there
deed¹ lyke a beest ; & after, wyth hys swerde made so
grete murdre & slaughter of the fals turkes, *þat* it was 4
1 mernaylle. Anone the admyral knewe the deth of
Sortybrant, wherof he was almoost oute of hys wytte
in a rage, and¹ sythe sayd¹ : “ O Sortybrant, my special
frende, I see wel now that I shal be auenged yf I 8
venge not thy deth.” with thyse wordes he maad¹ his
hors to renne vpon þ^e frenssh men so despytously that
whome he attayned¹ he put to deth, and¹ came to huon
of myllan, & slewe hym. thenne he dyd¹ grete dom- 12
mage, and fought that tyme so strengely, that he put to
deth wel seuen frensshe men & xiiij Normans moche
valyantly, sayeng¹ : ¶ “ O ye vuhappy frensshe men, I
shal now make you knowe that thadmyral of spayne is 16
comen. in this day shal thoost of fraunce be destroyed,
& shal neuer repayre home ageyn in to fraunce. I
shal lede awaye with me the kynge Charles with his
florished berd, & I shal do hange or brenne hym, & 20
also with hym, Rolland & Olyuer, & their felowes.” &
with these wordes the paynems enhardyed¹ them in
suche wyse *þat* they dyd¹ gretely theyr deuoyr ayenst
the frensshe men. At this medle the counte ganellon, 24
haldre, alory, & geffroy daulteuyle, & *þat* lygnage, dyd¹
gretely theyr deuoyr and¹ bare them wel. For in a shorte
space by them were slayn moo than a M paynynms.
Thadmyral, moost valyaunt of the sarasyns, 2 attayned¹ 28
the counte myllon by hys helme, that almoost he had¹
abyden in the place, and with a stroke thadmyral smote
of hys hors hede that he fyl to the erthe. and¹ after he
took hym, & layed¹ hym tofore hym, for to haue born 32
hym awaye, but the lygnage of ganellon saued¹ hym,
notwythstondyng¹ that many of theym were slayn and¹
dede. Neuertheles the fiensshe men surmounted the

¹ k j, back, col. 2.

² k ij.

paynmys, and^t that was by the ayde of fyerabras, which
for loue of Charles dy^t fyght, and^t made grete dys-
comfyture of the sarasyns. for there he put to deth

4 Tempeste, and^t the olde Rubyon, and^t moo than fyfty
other of these mastyns myscreauntes. & he there bare
hym in suche wyse that there was not one persone that
durst come tofore hym to resyste hym.

Fierabras slays
more than 50
Saracens.

8 ¶ How the peres of Fraunce whyche were in
the toure came oute whan they sawe the
hoost, & how thadmyral was taken &
holden prysonner : capitulo xiiij

12 **T**He paynmys & freysshe men, alwaye perseuer-
yng in mortal bataylle, coude not make thende,
eche one of other, For the multytude of the pay-
nmys was so grete that they myzt not be dyscomfyted.

16 Whan ¹the barons that weie in the tour sawe the fayt,
& that they that kepte the toure were goon to the
socours and^t crye of thadmyral, they sprange out, & eche
took an hors of them þat were dede, which ranne at al

The French
knights, seeing
the battle, sally
out, and seizing
each a stray
horse, (5533)

20 aduenture ; and eche also took his swerde in his hond,
& sodeynly cam vpon the sarasyns for to passe thurgh
them to the freysshe hoost, & made so grete bruyt that
the moost hardyest of the paynmys gaf them waye, &

charge the Sara-
cens, and force
their way through
them, (5542)

24 lete them passe, and^t in espeeual rolland, for where he
smote with durandal, cam neuer after tofore hym. & at
thys departyng^t was derly recomanded guy of bourgoyn
of florypes, for she had fere of hym. Neuertheles, whan

28 they were assembled^t wyth the other, wythoute letyng
them to be knowen, went vpon the sarasyns, & helde
them soo short that anone they slewe them in suche wyse
þat the other put them to flyght : for there was neuer

scattering them
like larks before
the hawk, (5550)

32 larke fledde more ferfully tofore þ^e sperhawke than the
sarasyns fledde tofore rolland. Thadmyral knewe wel

¹ k ij, col. 2.

his destructyon by the comyngⁱ of the peres that were
 in þ^e toure, & cryed wyth an h[y]e voys: "mahon, my
 god, to whome I haue gyuen my self, and haue doon to
 so moche honour, thou hast forgotten¹ me! Remembre 4
 me now! ¶ For and euer I may gete the, I shal bete the
 bothe flankes,² hede & vysage, and also put out thyn eyen,
 fals recreaunt god that thou art." he thus sayengⁱ, he
 was so pursyewed and smyton that he fyl down vnder 8
 his hors, and was taken, and not slayn, at the request of
 his sone fyerabras, to thende that he shold be aduysed
 to byleue in Ihesu cryst, & in the holy Trynyte, &
 bycome crysten, & al his contreye. Thenne the bataylle 12
 took an ende; and he that wold not be conuerted was
 incontynent put to deth. Somme fledde, and somme
 were taken. Thenne after thys the Frensshe men
 wente & vnarmed them, & Charles sawe there his 16
 barons whom he desyred so moche to see, & in especial
 his neuw rolland, & Olyner, whom he loued so moche,
 & were so gretly valyaunt. It can not be sayd ne
 expressed the Loye that was emonge them; & the con- 20
 solacyon & reioyeyng of kyng charles was Inestymable.
 Thenne they recounted alle thynges what were happend
 to them, & of theyr daungers and Ieopardyes whiche
 they had escaped, & sorowes & lamentacions that they 24
 had endured, wherfore Charles and many other wept for
 pyte. And thys endured many dayes, there where as
 the hurt men & seek were heeled, & they that were
 holo passed theyr tyme in deduyte, tryumphe, and 28
 Loye.

Balan invokes his
 god Mahon (5569)

with threats.

He is unhorsed
 and taken
 prisoner, (5647)

and the battle
 ends. (5681)

There is great
 rejoicing over the
 safety of the
 knights. (5670)

The army rests
 some days to
 recruit their
 strength.

³¶ How ballant, thadmyrall, for ony admony-
 cyon that was shewed to hym, wold not
 be baptysed, and how after, guy of bour- 32
 goyn espoused florypes, & was crowned

¹ *orig.* forygotten.² k ij, back.³ k ij, back, col. 2.

kyng, and she quene of that contreye :
capitulo XV

- 4 **W**Han charles had al appeased, he took ballant the admyral tofore hys noblesse, & sayd to hym in this maner: "ballant, al creatures resonable owen to gyue synguler honour & pertyculer loue to hym that hath gyuen to them beyng, knowleche, 8 & lyf, & it is wel requesyte & nedeful that he haue honour and^r reuerence that hath made heuen and erthe, & al that therein enhabyteth. Wherfore by good ryght he is superyour and abouen al; And^r a grete abusyon is compryse^d in hym which gyueth fayth and^r hope in that whyche he hath made wyth hys hondes, & of mater dede, Insensyble, and^r that hath neyther reson ne soule, as thy goddes dyabolyke, whyche may not 16 ne can gyue consolacyon to theyr subgettes. Wherfore I warne the for the helthe of thy soule, and^r for the preseruyng^t of thy body & of thy goodes, that thou take awaye alle these Iniquytees and^r peruerse affectyons, 20 & byleue in the holy Trynyte, fader, sone, ¹and^r holy ghoost, one onely god almyghty; and^r bylene that the sone of god^d, for to repayre thoffence of our formest fader adam, descended^t in to thys work^d, and took humanyte 24 in the wombe of the blessed^t vyrgyn marie, whyche was al pure and^r wythoute spotte. And^r bylene in the artycles of the fayth, and^r obeye and kepe hys comandementes, which he hath gyuen to vs for our helth. and^r 28 byleue how he was taken of the Iewes, and^r by enuy hanged^t on the crosse for to redeme vs fro the paynes of helle. Bylene hys resurrexyon and ascencyon in hys body gloryfyed, and the other thynges, as the holy 32 baptesme whyche he hath establysshed^t, wyth the other sacramentes. & yf thou wylt thus bylene thou shalt be saued, & thou shalt neyther lose body ne goodes."

Charles sends for Balan, (5719)

and, declaring the evil and folly of idolatry,

calls on him to forsake it,

and to believe in God, (5721)

and the articles of the Christian faith.

He recounts Christ's crucifixion, resurrection, and ascension,

and says that if he will be converted, nothing shall be taken from him. (5722)

Balan swears he
will never forsake
Mahon. (5749)

Charles threatens
him with death.
(5756)

Fierabras inter-
cedes for his
father, who
agrees to be
baptised. (5783)

The font is pre-
pared, (5789)

but Balan spits in
it, and nearly
kills the bishop,
(5809)

who is saved by
Ogier.

Fierabras again
intercedes for
Balan, (5813)

but Floripas urges
Charles to put
him to death at
once. (5819)

Thadmyral answerd that he wold no thyng do so, and
sware that for deth ne for lyf he wold not leue
Mahon. Themperour holdyng a naked swerd, sayd to
hym, that yf he forsoke not Mahon he shold do put 4
hym to deth. Fyerabras, seyng thys, kneled down to
cherthe, & prayed hys fader to do as the emperour had
sayd. Thadmyral fered the deth, & sayd that he was
contente that the fonte shold be blessed. Charles was 8
glad, and dyd do make redy a fonte wyth ¹fayr water in
a fayr vessel; and the bysshop wyth other mynystres of
the chyrche dyd halowe the fonte, and made alle redy.
& after, whan thadmyral was vneladde, the bysshop 12
demaunded hym, sayeng: "Syr ballant, forsake ye
mahon, and crye ye mercy to god of heuen for your
trespaces? and hyleue ye in Ihesu cryst, the sone of
the vyrgyn marye?" whan thadmyral vnderstode these 16
wordes, al hys body began to tremble. than, in despyte of
Ihesus, he spytte in the fonte, and caught the bysshoop,
& wold haue drowned hym in the fonte, and had
plonged hym therin, ne had not Ogier haue been, 20
whyche letted hym, & yet notwythstondyng, he gaf a
grete stroke to thadmyral, that the blood came oute of
hys mouthe habondantly. Of thys were al abashed
that were present; and thenne the kyng sayd to 24
Fyerabras: "ye be my speycal frende, Ye see that your
fader wyl neuer be crystened, And also the oultrage that
he hath doon to the fonte, it can not be excused but
that he must be dede and dysmembred." 28

¶ Fyerabras requyred hym yet of a lytel pacyence,
and yf he wold not amende hym, that thenne he shold
doo hys wylle.

¶ Florypes, the doughter of the Admyrall, seeyng 32
thys, sayd:

¶ "O Syr Emperour, wherfore ²delaye ye so moche
to put thys deuyll to deth? I reteche not though

¹ k iij, col. 2.

² k iij, back.

he be put to deth, so that I onely may haue guye
of bourgoyne to myn husbond, whom I haue so moche
desyred." Fyerabras answerd: "fayr suster, ye haue
4 grete wronge. For I ensure you, and swere by god
whiche hath made me, that I wold that I had lost
two of my membres, on the condycyon that he were a
good cristen man, & were baptysed and byleued in
8 Ihesu Cryst. ye wote wel that he is our fader whiche
hath engendred vs; we ought to honour hym, and to
loue hys helth. ye are wel obstynat whan ye haue of
hym noo pyte." And after in wepyng sayd to his
12 fader: "O moost dier fader, I praye you to be better
aduyssed, and byleue in hym that hath fourmed you
to hys ymage, whyche is Ihesus, god souerayn, lyke as
themperour hath sayd; and leue mahon, which hath
16 neither wytte ne reason, ne noo thyng is but gold &
stones, wherof he is composed. yf ye thus do, ye shal
do to vs grete Ioye, & of your enemyes ye shal make
frendes."

Fierabras re-
proves her for her
unfilial conduct,
(5823)

and implores his
father to consent
to be a Christian.
(5823)

20 Ballant ansuerd: "fool & glouton that thou art,
speke nomore to me therof, thou art al oute of reson!
I shal neuer byleue in hym that deyed V. C. yere a-noon,
& acursed be he that putteth in hys byleue that he is
24 arysen fro deth¹ to lyf. by mahon, my god, yf I were
on my hors back, or I were taken, I shold angre charles,
that fool." whan fyerabras had al vnderstonden hym,
he said to charles that he shold do wyth hym hys
28 playsyr, "For by good ryght he ought to deye." Anon
themperour demanded who wold slee ballant, the vn-
mesurable felon. Thenne Ogier was present which
hated hym in his hert, & forthwyth he smote of hys
32 heed, & Fyerabras pardoned hym gladly. Thenne
after this, florypes sayd to Rolland that he shold
accomplysshe his promesses by-twene hyr and guy of
bourgoyn. rolland ansuerd: "ye say trouth," and

Balan calls him a
fool, and declares
he will never do
so. (5843)

Charles asks who
will kill the
Sowdan. (5859)

Ogier volunteers,
and smites off his
head. (5865)

¹ k iij, back, col. 2.

Roland reminds
Guy of his promise
to marry Floripas.
(5871)

Guy says he is
quite ready. (5875)

Floripas is
stripped to be
baptised. (5879)

All are struck by
her exceeding
beauty,

and especially
Charles. (5889)

She is baptised,

but her name is
not changed.
Guy and Floripas
are married,

and crowned king
and queen of
Spain. (5905)

after sayd to guye: ¶ “Syr, ye remembre wel what
wordes and loue hath been bytwene you & the
curtoys Florypes: kepe your trouth and promesse to
hyr.” Guy ansuerd that he was redy to do al that 4
themperour wold haue hym to doo. Charles was
contente. Thenne anone afore theym alle she was
despoyled, and vnclad hyr for to be baptyse. She
beyng there al naked, shewed hyr beaute, whyche was 8
ryght whyte and wel forme, so playsaunt and amerouse
for the formosyte of hyr persone, that euery man
merueylled. ¶ For she had hyr eyen as clere as two
sterres, a fayre forhede and large, hyr nose ryght wel 12
stondyng in ¹the myddes of the vysage; hyr chekes
were reed & whyt medled, hyr browes compaced as it
had been a lytel shadowe to the colour of the vysage;
hyr heyr shynnyng as golde, & that in soo good an ordre 16
accumyled that it henge bynethe hyr ²knees; hyr mouth
was wel composed with an attemperat roundenes, a
smal longe necke, and hyr sholdres fayr & wel syttyng,
& ij pappes tofore, smale, rounde, & somewhat enhaunced 20
lyke ij rounde apples. And so wel was she made, and
so amerouse, that she smote the hertes of many, and
enflammed theyr enteneyon wyth concupyscence, and
specyally of charles the Emperour, how wel that he was 24
auncyen & olde; and in the fonte whyche was ordeyned
for the Admyral hyr fader, she was baptyse. And
charles & Duc thyery of ardayne were her godfaders,
wythout chaunchyng hyr name. And anone after, whan 28
she was honourably cladde, the bysshop wedded them,
& after, themperour comanded to brynge forth the crowne
of ballant, and crowned wyth-al guy of bourgoyn and
Florypes. And the bysshop sacred and blessed them. 32
And so tho said guy was kyng of that contreye, & gaf
a partye to Fyerabras, by condycion, that yf Fyerabras
wold haue it, he shold holde it of guye, and all ³that

¹ k iij.

² orig. knees.

³ k iij, col. 2.

1^euer guye shold^t haue, he shold^t holde it of charles.

After thys, the feest of the weddyng^t and^t espousaylles endured^t viij dayes. And charles abode there two

The wedding festivities last 8 days. (5913)

4 monethes and^t two dayes, tyl that the contreye was wel assured^t.

¶ How Florypes delyuerd the reliques to
themperour, and how they were proued'
8 by miracle, & of the retournyng' of
Charles, and of the ende of thys book.
[capitulo xvj]

12 Charles dyd suche dylygence in aygremore and^t in
the contreye adiacent, that he that wold^t not be
baptysed was put to deth, and^t so serche^t oueral.

And^t on a sonday after masse he sente for florypes, and^t
sayd^t to hyr: "fayr doughter, ye knowe how I haue

16 crowned^t you and^t maad^t you quene of thys contree. I haue

Charles reminds Floripas of all he had done for her, (5923)

accomplysshe^t your desyre as to guye of bourgoyn,
your husbond^t, And^t more ouer ye be baptysed^t, and in
waye of sauacyon, and ye haue one of the valyauntest

20 body that is from hens in to Affryque. ¶ And^t he
and^t fyerabras your broder shal haue thys regyon, And^t

I shal leue with hym xx M of my subgetes, to the
ende that the paynyns be alwaye in drede; but ye

24 haue not yet shewed² to me nothyng^t of the holy
relyques that ye kepe." Florypes answerd^t: "Syr

and calls on her to produce the sacred relics. (5931)

emperour, they shal be redy whan it pleseth you," and
thenne she brougt forth the chest in whyche they were

28 honestly.

Floripas brings him the coffer containing them, (5936)

¶ Themperour kneled^t down on bothe hys knees, and^t
enclyned bothe wyth hert & body, and bad the bysshop

to opene it, & shewe them, and so he dyd^t. And fyrst
32 he shewed^t the precyous crowne with whyche Ihesu

which Turpin reverently opens.

Cryst was crowned^t wyth, whyche was of prykyng

¹ orig. ener.

² k iiij, back.

The bishop takes out the holy crown of thorns, (5950)

which remains unsupported in the air,

emitting a delightful odour. (5954)

The other relics are proved in the same way.

Charles thanks God for his mercies to him.

Turpin blesses the army with relics, and replaces them in the coffer.

Charles's glove, in which is a small piece of relic,

thornes & of Ionques of the see. and wyth grete deuocyon it was shewed & adoured. And many there wepte & wayled the deth of our lord Ihesu Cryst, and were in grete deuocyon & contemplaeyon. The bysshop, 4 which was deuoute & wyse, wold preue it, And lyfte it vp on hye in the ayer, & wythdrew hys hond, and the crowne abode by itself in the ayer. & thenne the bysshop certefyed to the ¹peple that was present, that 8 it was the crowne of Ihesu cryst, which he had on his hede in the tyme of his passyon. Thenne euery man honoured it deuoutely; & it had soo grete an odour that eueryche meruaylled. and after, the bysshop took 12 the naylles by whyche god had hys handes² & feet perced, and preued them as he had proued the crowne tofore, and semblably they abode ³in the ayer myraculously. And Charles, seyng al this, thanked humbly 16 God in sayeng: ¶ "O lord god eternal, whyche hast gyuen to me grace that I haue surmounted myn enemyes Infydels, and hast put & sette me in the waye, and gyuen conduyte to fynde your relyques whyche I 20 haue so longe desyred, I humbly rendre and gyue to you thankes and praysynge. For now my contrey may wel say that it shal be perpetuel honour to hit to possede and haue thys precious tresour, whan it shal be 24 conteyned therin." The bysshop blessyd alle the people there in makynge the sygne of the crosse with the said relyques, & after he sette them deuoutely ageyn in their places. And the emperour dyd do sette them 28 on a ryche cloth of golde deuoutely. And whan they were theron, the remenaunt that abode of them as smale pycees, he took them deuoutely and put them in hys gloue; and after, he beyng in purpoos to retorne in to 32 hys contreye, he threwe the gloue to a knyght, but the knyght took none hede & took it not; & whan Charles was a litel withdrawn he took hede of hys gloue, &

¹ orig. peyle.

² orig. haudes.

³ k iiij, back, col. 2.

retorneð and sawe hys gloue,—in whyche the said smale
 pyeces of the sayð relyques were,—abode hangyng in
 thayer without susteynyng of ony thyng. Thenne
 4 ¹ was this myracle seen euydently, and al thys was
 shewed to the peple, For it abode in that maner whyles
 they myght haue goon half a leghe. And by this they
 were al reconfermed to say that there was none abusyon
 8 in byleuyng & adouryng the sayð relyques. And these
 thynges tofore writon in this second book ben vnder-
 stonden in the best partye & sygnyfycacion that I can
 or wold say, And I haue not sayð ony thyng but that
 12 I haue been wel enformeð by writyng. And as for the
 book ensuyng, it shal make mencion of somme bataylles,
 and of the ende of the barons of fraunce, of whome I
 haue tofore spoken al alonge.

remains miracu-
 lously suspended
 in the air

for an hour. (6092)

16 ¶ Here begynneth the iij book, whyche con-
 teyneth two partyes, by the chapytres
 folowyng declared¹.

The contents of
 the third book.

20 ¶ The fyrst partye of the thyrd book con-
 teyneth xiiij chapytres, and speketh of the
 warres made in spayne, and² of two mer-
 uayllous geauntes.

24 ¶ How Saynt Iames appyered³ to Charles,
 and how, by the moyen and⁴ the conduyte
 of the sterres, he went in to galyce, &
 what cytees he subdued : ca. j

28 ² Charles, the noble Emperour, after he had taken
 moche payne for to mayntene the name of god
 for tenhaunce the crysten fayth, and to brynge al
 the world in one trewe fayth and byleue, & that he
 had gotten many contrees, he purposed neuer more to

Charles wishes
 after all his
 labours to rest
 from fighting,

¹ k v.

² k v, col 2.

and to devote
himself to
religion;

but in a vision he
sees a line of
stars,

pointing to
Galicia.

A man appears to
him,

who declares he
is St. James,
the Apostle of
Galicia,

and reproaches
him for not
recovering that
country from the
Saracens,

fyght ne to make bataylle, but to reste & lede forth a
contemplatyf lyf, in thankyng^r his maker of þ^e grace
that he had gyuen to hym in surmountyng^r hys enemyes.
Neuertheles on a nyght it happed^t hym that he byhelde 4
the heuen, & sawe a quantyte of sterres in ordre tendyng^r
alle the nyght one waye and^t one path. And^t they
began at the see of fryselond^t in passyng^r bytwene
alemayn and^t ytalye, bytwene Fraunce and^t guyanne, 8
And^t passed ryght the sayd^t sterres by gascoyne, bascle,
Nauarre, and^t espayne, whyche contrees he had by hys
puyssaunce and contynuel payne conquerd^t and^t maad^t
crysten. And^t after, the ende of the sayd^t sterres thus 12
goyng in ordre, cam vnto galyce, where-as the body of
the holy appostle was, he nat knowyng^r the propre
place. Euery nyght charles byhelde the waye of the
sayd^t sterres, and^t thought moche contynuelly what thys 16
myght be, & that it was not wythoute cause. ¶ In
one nyght emonge the other that¹ charles thought on
thys waye, a man appyered^t to hym in vysyon, whyche
was so fayr, so playsaunte, and^t so shynyng^r, that it was 20
meruaylle; whyche sayd^t to hym: “what doost thou,
my fayre sone?” Charles, beyng^r al rauysshed^t, answerd^t:
“who arte thou, fayr syr?” That other answerd^t: “I
am Iames, the appostle of Ihesu Cryst, the sone of 24
Zebedee, and^t propre broder of saynt Iohan the euan-
gelyst, & am he whom god^t chaas to preeche the crysten
fayth and^t hys doctryne in the londe of galyce and^t of
galylee, by hys holy grace, and^t he whom herode dyd^t 28
put to deth by swerde; and^t my body abydeþ emonge
the sarasyns, whyche haue entreated^t it vylaynsly, &
lyeth in a place whyche is not knowen. But I mer-
ueylle that thou hast not conquerd^t my londe, Seen and^t 32
consyderyd^t that thou hast conquerd so many regyones,
townes, & cytees in the world^t. wherfore I do the to
wete, that lyke as god^t hath chosen the, and made the

¹ k v, back.

superyor in worldly puyssaunce aboue al other kynges
 & worldly prynces, in lyke wyse emong al them that
 lyuen thou art chosen of god, after the conduyte of
 4 the sterres, to delyuer my londe fro the hande of the
 mescreaunt sarasyns and^t enemyes of crystendom. ¶ And^t
 to thende that thou sholdest knowe in to what ¹place
 thou sholdest goo, thou hast seen on the heuen the
 8 sterres by dynyne magnyfycence. And^t for to obteyne
 the more Ioye & gretter glorie in heuen, by haultayn
 and grete puyssaunce, thou shalt surmounte thyn ene-
 myes, & in that same place thou sha[^l]t make and^t doo
 12 edefye a chyrche in my name, to the whiche shal come
 the crysten peple of al regyons, for to gete helthe &
 pardon of their synnes. After that thou shalt haue
 vysited my sepulture, and^t haue made the waye sure, and^t
 16 ordeyned crysten men for to kepe and^t conserue the
 place, it shal be a memoyre perpetuell." Thus in thys
 maner appyered^t thre tymes saynt Iames to the emperour
 Charles. After these vysyons and^t certyfycacyons of
 20 god, he called^t and^t assembled^t hys subgettes, whome he
 dyd do put a grete multytude in good^t poynte, & after
 took hys waye & drewe toward the contre where the
 sterres had^t shewed the waye aforesayd^t, and came fyrst
 24 in to spayne: and^t the fyrst cyte that was rebelle to hym
 was panpylozne, whyche was ryght stronge of murayl
 and^t towres, & garnysshed^t wyth sarasyns. and^t he
 abode tofore it thre monethes, or he coude fynde maner
 28 to confounde it. Thenne Charles knewe not what to
 do, but to praye god and saynt Iames, for whom he
 went, ²that in the vertu of hys name he myght take
 that cyte, and^t sayd in thys manere: "Fayr lord god,
 32 my maker, helpe me that am comen in to thys contree
 for to enhaunce the crysten fayth, for to establysshe
 and^t mayntene thyn holy name. And^t also thou holy
 saynt Iames, by the reuelacyon of whome I am in thys

as God wishes
him.

He promises
him success,
and bids him raise
a church to his
name,

as a perpetual
memorial.

After this vision
had appeared
thrice,

Charles starts
with his army for
Galicia.

He besieges Pam-
peluna in vain for
three months,

and then invokes
in prayer the help
of St. James.

¹ k v, back, col. 2.

² k vj.

Iourneye, I requyre the that I may subdewe thys cytee, & entre therin, for to shewe the mysbyleuyngⁱ peple the cause of theyr errour, to thende that this begynnyng may the better determyne the ende of myn enteneyon.” 4

Immediately after his prayer the walls of the city fall down.

Assone as Charles had^t fynyssed^t his oryson, the walles of the cyte, whyche were of marble merueillously strong, ouerthrew to the erthe, & fyl alle in pyeces; and^t after, charles and his hoost entred^t in to the cyte; 8 & he that wold^t be baptyse^d & bylene in god wythoute fyctyon, was saued^t and put a-parte, and who sayd^t the contrarye, was forthwyth put to deth. Al the people of that contre, whan they knewe of these tydynges & 12 meruayllous operacyons of this cyte, torned in to Ruynie at the symple postulacyon of charles, without contra-dyctyon came and^t yeldd^t them to the mercy of kyngⁱ charles. And^t thus many were baptyse^d, and chyrches 16 were ordeyned^t, and^t al the contreye reducd^t to certeyn trybute vnder the fydelyte of the emperour charles, and^t brought theyr trybutes fro the cytees wyth-oute any other gaynsayeng in sygne of seynourye. 20

All the country yields to Charles, who causes the people to be baptised, and builds churches.

¶ Of the cytees gotten in espayne by charles,
& how somme were by hym destroyed.
[capitulo ij.]

Charles arrives at the tomb of St. James,

AFter that charles had^t the domynacyon quasi in al 24 espayne, he came to the sepulture of Saynt Iames, where he dyd^t hys deuocyon, and^t made deuoutely hys prayers; & after came to a place in þ^e lond which was so ferre, that he myght goo no ferther, and^t there fyxed 28 & pyght hys spere, and that place was called^t petronium; & thanked^t god and saynt Iames, that by theyr suffraunee he was comen so ferre wythoute any contra-dyctyon surely vnto suche place that he myght passe 32 no ferther. And^t in that londe who that wold^t bylene

at a place called Petronium.

in god, tharchebysshop Turpyn baptysed them; & who
 that wold not, he was slayn, or put in pryson. And after
 Charles wente from one see to that other, and thenne he
 4 gate in galyce xiiij cytees, emonge whome compostelle
 was thenne the leste. In espayne he had xvj grete
 townes & stronge, emonge whome ¹was onsea, in which
 were wont to be x stronge toures, & a toun named
 8 petrosse, in whyche was made the fynest syluer that
 had thenne cours. Also another cyte named attentyua,
 where as the body of saynt Torquete rested, whyche was
 dysciple of saynt Iames, and there vpon the sepulture
 12 was an olyue tree, [whyche dyd] florysshe & bere rype
 fruyt a certayn day of may euery yere withoute fayllng.

He captures 13
 cities in Galicia,
 and 16 in Spain,

Alle the contreye of spayne that tyme was subgette
 to charles, That is to wete, the londe of alandaluf, the
 16 londe of perdoures, the londe of castellans, the londe of
 maures, The londe of portyngale, the londe of sarasyns,
 the londe of nauarre, the londe of Alemans, The londe
 of byscoys, the londe of bascles, the londe of palargyens,
 20 and somme of theyr cytees taken by warre, subtyl and
 mortal, And somme wythoute warre. he coude not
 wyne the grete towne of Lucerne, tyl at the laste he
 layed syege tofore it by the space of foure monethes.
 24 and it stode in a grene valeye. And after, whan he saw
 that they wold not yelde them, & that he coude not
 wyne them, he made hys prayer vnto god, and to
 saynt Iames, that he myght be vyctorious, seen that he
 28 had nomore to termyne in that contreye, but that cyte
 onely. hys oryson was herde, soo that ²the walles fyl
 doun to the erthe, and was put to destructyon in suche
 wyse, þat neuer man dwelled therin after, and after it
 32 sanke, and therin was an abysme or swolowe of water,
 In whyche were founden after, fysshes alle blacke.
 Emonge the other cytees that he took, there were iiij
 that dyd hym moche payne, or he myght gete them, &

the whole of
 which was subject
 to him.

He besieges
 Lucerne for 4
 months,

but in vain,

and then prays to
 St. James,

when the walls
 fall down, and
 the city is taken,

and turned into a
 lake containing
 black fishes.

¹ k vj, back.

² k vj, back, col. 2.

therefore he gaf them the maladyctyon of god, and they were cursed, in suche wyse that vnto thys day there is in them none habytacion; & the sayd cytees been named lucerne, ventose, caperee, & adame. 4

¶ Of the grete ydole that was in a cyte, whyche coude not be smyton down, and of the condycyons and' sygnes therof: ca. iij 8

Charles destroys
all the idols;

but at Salancadys
was a great idol,

kept so by devils
that none could
destroy it,

and which no
Christian dare
approach.

It stood on a
large stone,
richly carved,

When Charles had doon in spayne & other places, wyth the Inhabytauntes of it at hys wylle, Alle thydolles and' other symlaeres that he fonde, he dyd do destroye and put to confusyon. But in the londe of 12 Alandaluf, in a cyte called Salancadys, in arabyque, was¹ the place of a grete god, as the sarasyns sayd. That ydolle was made of the honde of Machomme in the tyme that he lyued, & was named Mahomet² in 16 thonour of hym: and' by arte magyke and' dyabolyke he closed' therin a legyon of deuylls, for to kepe it and make sygnes for to abuse the peple. and thys ydolle was kepte so by deuylls, that noo persone lyuynge coude by 20 strengthe destroye it, ne put it down. In suche wyse that yf ony crysten man came nyghe for to see it, or to coniure it, or to destroye, Assone as he began to coniure and preche, anon he was perysshed & destroyed. And 24 the sarasyns that came for to preche, adoure, make sacrefyse, or doo obeyssaunce therto, were wythout peryl; and' yf by aduenture, a byrde fleyng came & rested vpon it, Incontynent it was deed. The stone 28 vpon whyche thydolle was sette was meruayllously made. It was a stone of the see, wrought of sarasyns, and' grauen subtylly of grete and' ryche facyon, the whyche was enhauned vpryght, not without grete 32 crafte & connyng. toward' the erth it was meruayllously

¹ orig. and was.

² k vij.

- grete, & alway vpward it was lasse ; and that stone was
 so hye as a crowe myght flee : vpon whyche stone was
 thydolle sette, whyche was of fyn yuorve, after thas- and was of fine
ivory,
 4 semblaunce of a man stondyng vpryght on his feet, &
 had hys face turned to the south, & helde in his ryght and held in his
hand a key,
 honde a grete keye, & the sarasyns were certefyed for
 trouthe that whan a kyng of fraunce shold be borne,
 8 & in strengthe to subdue the contreye of spayne, and
 brynge it in to crysten fayth, the ymage shold lete falle which was to fall
when a king
should come to
subdue the
country.
 the keye, whych shold be a sygne þat the kyng of
 fraunce shold conquere them. So thenne in the tyme
 12 that the noble kyng charles regned in spayne, for to
 brynge it to the crysten faith, the ydolle lete the keye
 falle down to the grounde. And whan the sarasyns
 sawe that, They hydde theyr tresours, as golde, syluer,
 16 and precyous stooncs, in therth, by cause the crysten
 men shold no thyng fynde therof, & they al wente in
 to another regyon, and durst not abyde the comyng of
 the kyng.

20 ¶ Of the chyrche of saynt Iames in galyce,
 and of dyuers other whyche Kyng Charles
 founded : capitulo iiij

- 24 **C**harles beyng in galyce had Innumerable quantyte Charles, having
an immense
quantity of gold
and silver,
 of gold, of syluer, and of precyous stones, of many
 kynges, prynces, and other lordes, and of trybutes of
 cytees that was gyuen to hym as lord.

- ¶ Also he had moche of the tresour that he conquerd
 28 of the townes and contreyes of Spayne ²aforesayd.
 Thenne he, seyng the grete habundaunce of good, dyd
 do compose and make a chyrche of Saynt Iames, in the builds a church
to St. James,
 place where-as he had founde the body of hym. and
 32 he abode there the space of thre yere wythout departyng,
 and in that same place he ordeyned a bysshop, and and ordains a
bishop

¹ k vij, col. 2.² k vij, back.

and three canons.

He endows the church,

and supplies vestments and ornaments.

Another church he builds at Acon to Our Lady,

and four to St. James,

besides abbeyes and monasteries.

founded there chanonnes regular, vnder the rule of saynt Ysodore the confessor; & bought & ordeyned for them rentes & trybutes suffyceyent, and gaf to them synguler seynourye. He furnysshed the chyrche wyth 4 belles, vessellys of golde and syluer, adournements of precyous clothes, & al thynges necessarye & apperteynyng in a chyrche pontyfycal. also of bokes, vestymentes, chalyces, & other holy escriptures. And of 8 the resydue of gold and syluer, that he brought oute of spayne, he dyd doo edefye these chyrches folowyng.

¶ Fyrst, at Acon, in almayne, where as he is buryed, he dyd doo make a chyrche of our lady; and though it 12 be lytel, yet is it moche rychely made. The chyrche of Saynt Iames in the toun of vyterbe; also the chyrche of saynt Iames in the cytee of Tholouse: The chyrche of Saynt Iames in gascoyne; also the chyrche of saynt 16 Iames in parys, bytwene the sayne & the mounte of martres. & aboue the chyrches aforesayd, he founded, rented, & releued many & dyuers chyrches, monasteryes, & other abbeyes in the world, in many and dyuers 20 places.

¶ How, after that Aygolant the geaunt had taken spayne & put to deth the crysten people, Charles recouerd' it, and' other 24 maters: capitulo v

After Charles's return to France,

Aigolant, an African giant, reconquers Spain,

and puts the Christians to death.

After that charles was retorneð in to Fraunce, a kyng¹ sarasyn of affryque, named aygolant, wyth grete puyssaunce came in to spayne, and remysed it in 28 hys subgectyon. And the crysten which charles had left there, as many as he myght gete, he put to deth, and the other fledde. And in shorte tyme the tydynges came vnto kyng Charles, wherof he was moche abasshed 32 & angry, bycause it was shiewed to hym so pyetously.

¹ k vij, back, col. 2.

- wherefore Incontynent he assembled a grete hoost, & wyth a grete multytude of fyghtyng men he went thyder wythout taryeng. And he made the conduytour
- 4 of them al Myllon of angleres, the fader of Rolland. & they cessed not tyl that they had tydynges where Aygolant the geaunt was, whyche had doon thys feat. whan charles knewe where Aygolant was lodged, ¹and
- 8 semblably aygolant knewe where Charles was, Anone the geaunt sente to charles that he wold delyuer bataylle suche as he wold. That is to wete that Charles shold sende to hym xx of hys men to fyght ageynst xx of hys
- 12 sarasyns, or xl ayenst xl, or an C ayenst C, or a thousand ayenst a thousand, or two men ayenst two, or one man ayenst one man onely. kyng Charles, seying thentencion of aygolant, for thonour of noblesse he wold not
- 16 refuse hys demaunde, but sent to hym an C knyghtes in grete poynte, and the geaunte sente another hondred ayenst the crysten men, but anone the sarasyns were vanquysshed & put to deth, and after were sente by
- 20 aygolant two hondred sarasyns ayenst two hondred crysten men, whyche Sarasyns were anone wythoute grete resystence put to deth and slayn. Aygolant was not contente, ne wold not lene herby, but sente two
- 24 thousand sarasyns ayenst ij M crysten men, and whan they were in batayll, many of þ^e sarasyns were slayn, and the other put to flyght for to saue them self. The thyrde day after, Aygolant maad certeyn experyences,
- 28 and knewe that yf Charles made warre to hym he shold haue grete losse, and sent to Charles to wete yf he wold make playne warre. Charles ²was contente, and there vpon they made redy theyr peple, and
- 32 speycially charles, for hys subgettes had grete affectyon to goo to bataylle without ony fere of deth. And also somme of the crysten men, the day tofore the bataylle, dyd do amende and araye theyr harnoys, and sette

Milo, Roland's father, is put in command.

Aigolant challenges any number of Charles's men to fight against an equal number of his.

Charles sends 100 knights,

who slay the 100 Saracens;

and after 200, who also kill their opponents.

Aigolant sends 2000 Saracens,

but they also are defeated.

Both sides prepare for a general engagement.

¹ k viij.

² k viij, col. 2.

theyr tentes nygh a ryuer named ceye, and pyght there
 theyr speres, euen in the place where as the bodyes of
 saynt faconde and saynt premytyf rested, where after
 was made a chyrche deuoutely founded, and also a 4
 stronge cyte by the moyen of the sayd Charles, and in
 the place where the speres were pyght, our lord shewed
 grete myracle. For of them that shold deye there and
 be gloryfied marters of god & crowned in heuen, theyr 8
 speres on þ^e morn were founden al grene, floressed
 and leued, whyche was a precedent sygne that they
 whyche shold deye shold haue the Ioye in heuen.
 ¶ Eche man took his owne, and cutte of the bowes & 12
 leues, wyth whyche the leues were planted and vnder-
 roted, wherof in a lytel whyle after grewe a grete wode,
 whyche stondest there yet. It was grete meruayle of
 the Ioye that the horses made, whyche dyd theyr 16
 deuoyrs as wel as the men after theyr qualyte, whyche
 was a grete token. Thenne L valyaunt ¹crysten men
 were slayne, And emonge the other was slayne due
 Myllon, fader to Roulland. Also that same day the 20
 hors of charles was slayn vnder hym, & whan he was a
 fote he maa grete murdre wyth hys swerde Ioyouse,
 and dyd so moche that the sarasyns, dredyng the
 euenyng, fledde & wythdrewe them in to place of 24
 surete. And as it was the wylle of our lord, the next
 day after came to Charles in to his helpe iiij marquyse
 of ytalie, accompanied wyth iiij M stronge fyghtyng
 men & chosen. wherfore Aygolant, assone as he knewe 28
 of theyr comyng, he fled and wythdrewe hym over the
 see toward hys contree. but they myȝt not for hast bere
 with them al theyr tresours, wherfor fraunce was
 enryched meruayllously aboue alle other contrees. 32

¶ And whan charles sawe his departyng he came
 wyth al hys rychesse in to fraunce, and theȝne, duryng
 seven yere, he dyd do ordeyne the seruyce and offyce of

By a miracle it is
 shown which of
 the French
 soldiers should be
 killed in the
 battle.

From their spears
 springs up a great
 wood.

M^olo and 50
 knights are slain,

but the Saracens
 are put to flight.

Reinforcements
 come to Charles,

whereupon Aigo-
 lant flies to Africa.

Charles returns to
 France,

¹ k viij, back.

the chyrche by preestes & clerkes, and the festes of sayntes of all the yere ; and grete vertu & meruayllous effect was comprysed in thys man. For whan it was
 4 not warre for to mynysshe thynfydellys and encrease the crysten fayth, For tenhaunce the name of god he made the offyces and legendes of holy sayntes, & dyd ¹ reduce in to mynde and remembraunce the passyons of holy
 8 marters in establysshynge theyr feestes, to thende that we shold ensyewe them, and to eschewe al euyl. And the magnytude of thys kyng was wel preued by sygnes seen on the heuen. For in the same yere the mone
 12 derked thre tymes, and the somme ones, and companyes of people were seen meruayllous, whyche shewed that thys Charles was of grete magnytude, that is to wete bytwene heuen and erthe.

and occupies himself in drawing up rules and services for the Church.

This year were three eclipses of the moon, and one of the sun.

¶ How Aygolant sent to charles that he shold come to hym trustely for to make Iust warre, and how Charles in habyte dys-symyled spake to hym, and of other
 20 maters : capitulo vj

AS I haue sayd the kyn[ge,] Aygolant the geaunte, fledde in to hys contreye, whan socours cam to Charles of foure marques. he slepte not vpon his
 24 purpoos, but maad grete dylygence for to assemble hys people, whyche were sarasyns Innumerable, for he assembled mores, Moabytes, Ethiopiens, Affrycans, and pereyens ; he brought wyth hym also the kyng of
 28 arabye, the kyng of barbarye, the kyng of malroste, the kyng of ² maioryke, the kyng of meques, the kyng of cybylle, & the kyng of Cordube, the whych cam with peple wythout nombre, certain, in to gascoyne, in to a
 32 stronge cyte named Agenne, and took it. And after sent to Charles that he shold come to hym peasybly &

Aigolant collects an immense army,

and again invades Gascony, and captures the city of Agenne.

¹ k viij. back, col. 2.

² l j.

Aigolant invites
Charles to visit
him unattended.

Charles sets out
with 2000 knights,

whom he leaves,
except 40,
near the city.

He himself, in
disguise and with
only one attend-
ant, enters the
city,

and presents him-
self as a messenger
from Charles,

to say he had
come with only
40 attendants.

Aigolant replies
that he will go
and meet the
French king.

trustyly, with a fewe peple, promysynge to hym for to
gyue to hym ix hors laden with gold, syluer, and pre-
cious stones, yf he wold thus come at hys desyre. this
paynym shewed to hym this by cause he wold knowe 4
his persone, for hys strengthe & puyssaunce knewe he
wel by experyence, and also to thende whan he knewe
hym that he myght in the warre flee hym. whan kyng
charles knewe this mandement he gadred not grete 8
peple, but he came onely wyth ij M knyghtes of honour
and of grete strength. And whan he was foure myle
nygh the cyte, where Aigolant and al the kynges tofore
named were, he left his people secretly, & came vnto a 12
mountayne nygh the cyte, accompanied wyth xl
knyghtes onely. And fro thys place they saw the cyte,
by cause to wete yf the multytude of peple were de-
parted, soo that he shold not be deceyued. Neuertheles 16
vpon thys montayne he lefte hys people secretly, and
took of hys clothes, and cladde hym in the guyse of a
messenger, and took one knyght onely with hym,
whyche bare his spere & swerde and boeler vnder hys 20
mantel, and soo came in to the cyte, and anone he was
brought tofore aygolaunt the geaunt. And whan he was
tofore hym he sayd in thys manere: "Charles the kyng
hath sente vs vnto the, and leteth the wete by vs that 24
he is comen lyke as thou hast comanded, accompanied
wyth fourty knyghtes onely, for to do that he ought to
doo. Now themme come to hym wyth xl knyghtes,
withoute moo, yf thou wylt accomplysshe and holde 28
that thou hast promysed." Aigolant sayd to hem that
they shold retorne to charles, and that they shold say
to hym that he departe not, but abyde hym there, and
he wold come and vysyte hym. After this that charles 32
had knowen the geaunt, and after vysyted the towne,
for to knowe the feblest parte for to take and conquer
it whan he shold come ageyn, & sawe al the kynges

forsayd & their puyssaunces, he after retorneð to his
 peple whiche he had left vpon the montayne, & after
 came to hys ij M knyghtes. & anone after aygolant,
 4 accompanied wyth vij M knyghtes, came after them
 withoute taryeng. But charles took hede whan he cam
 that there were many moo paynymys than crysten men,
 and ¹wythout lenger taryeng charles & his peple de-
 8 parted, and retorneð in to fraunce wythout hauyng
 other delyberacyon.

Charles, having
 spied out all the
 city, departs.

Aigolant, with
 7000 men, follows
 him,

but Charles
 escapes.

¶ How Charles, accompanied with moche
 peple, retorneð in to the place aforesayd &
 12 toke the cyte of agenne, & other maters :
 [capitulo] vij

After that charles was retorneð in to fraunce he
 assembled moche peple, & after came to the cyte
 16 of agenne, & assyged it there by grete facyon,
 the space of vij monethes. Aygolant was therin &
 many sarasyns, & the crysten men had made fortressis
 & castelles of tree tofore this cyte for to grene it. Whan
 20 Aygolant & the grete lordes of his companye sawe þat
 they myght not endure, they maad hooles & canes vnder
 thertþ for tescapen oute secretly : in that maner they came
 out of the cyte, & passed ouer a ryuer, which ranne by
 24 the cyte, named goronna, and so they saued them self.
 The next day after, whan there was noo grete resyst-
 ence made to the crysten men, Charles wyth grete
 tryumphe & puyssaunce entred in to the cyte, & put to
 28 deth x M sarasyns that he there fonde. The other,
 seying that, put them to flyght by the ryuer. Aygolant
²was in another stronge toun, & whan charles knewe it
 he came thyder & assaylled it, & sente to hym to delyuer
 32 ouer the cyte. aygolant ansuerd that he wold not so
 doo, but by a moeyen that was, that they shold make a

Charles assembles
 a large army,

and lays siege to
 Agenne, which he
 surrounds.

Aigolant and his
 lords escape by
 mines.

Charles enters the
 city,

and after besieges
 the city to which
 Aigolant had fled.

¹ 1 j, back.

² 1 j, back, col. 2.

Aigolant proposes
a general battle.

Those of the
Christians who
were destined to
die are again
pointed out by a
miracle.

The Saracens are
utterly defeated.

batayll, & he that shold wyne the bataylle shold be
lord of þe toun, & so they assygned the day of the
bataylle. and nygh to that place, bytwene the castel
thalabout & a ryuer called carantha, somme of the 4
crysten men planted theyr speres in the grounde, espe-
cially they that on the morn shold deye, & obteyne the
crowne of glorie as marters of god. and on the morne
they fonde their speres al grene & myraculously leued, 8
& ful of bowes, wherof the cristen men were moche
loyous of this myracle, and raught not for to deye for
þe crysten fayth in mayntenynge the name of god.
After that they cutte of theyr speres and wente to 12
bataylle, and put many sarasyns to deth. But in
thende were slayn and martred, of crysten men moo
than iiij M whyche were saued in heuen; & that tyme
the hors that Charles rode on was slayn vnder hym, 16
and at that bataylle were slayn by the sayd Charles the
kyng of Agabye [&] the kyng of bugye, merueyllous
myghty sarasyns.

¹¶ Of the vertuous operacions that charles 20
made whan he was retourned' in to fraunce,
& what barons he had' in hys compayne, &
of theyr puyssaunce: ca. viij

After his defeat
Aigolant flies to
Pampeluna.

Charles returns
to France for
reinforcements.

THe bataylle toforesayd made, Aigolant fledde and 24
came in to panpylone, and sent to kyng charles
that he shold abyde hym for to gyue hym bataylle
more ample & large. Whan charles knewe hys desyre
he retourned in to fraunce for to haue helpe of hys 28
peple, and made an open maundement thorough out al
Fraunce that al maner peple that were of euyl condyeyon
and in bondage, that they that were present, and theyr
successours, shold be free, & there vpon tabellyons shold 32
be delyuerd accordyng to the lawe, that wold goo with

hym ayenst the myscreauntes. Also alle prysonners
 that were in fraunce, he delyuerd^t them al out of
 pryson, & to al them that shold haue ben delyuerd to
 4 deth for felonnye, murdre, or treason, he pardonne
 them & gaf to them theyr lyf; and to al poure peple
 that had not wherby to lyue, he gaf to them good^t
 largely, & them that were euyl clark, he clothed them
 8 after theyr degree. alle them that were at debate he
 peased them & accorded^t; Alle them þat were dys-
 heryted & put oute from theyr lyuelode he restored al
 to them; Alle þe peple¹ that myght bere armes he
 12 armed them. The valyaunt squyers of theyr persones
 he made knyghtes, & al them that were in hys Indyg-
 nacyon & pryued [f]ro hys loue, & bannyshed^t for the
 loue of god^t, he was constraynede to pardonne them, &
 16 made pees with enery man. and thenne he was four-
 nysshed of moo than an C thousand men wel fyghtyng^t,
 wythoute them that were a-fote, whyche were Innume-
 rable. And for to gyne courage to the prynces of Charles,
 20 Turpyн sayd^t in this maner: "I, Turpyн, archebysshop
 of Raynes by the grace of god^t, shal gyne good^t courage
 to crysten people, and shal slee the Infydels, sarasyns,
 with myн owne handes." ¶ Wyth Charles was
 24 Roulland^t of Cenonye, neuwe of Charles, sone of hys
 syster, dame Berthe, & of Duke Myllon, wyth foure
 thousand fyghtyng^t men; Olyuer, duc of genes, sone of
 duc Reyner, with iij M fyghtyng^t men: Aristagius,
 28 kyng^t of brytayne, wyth vij thousand fyghtyng^t men;
 Not wythstondyng that in brytayne was another kyng^t,
 Eugelius, whyche was duke of Guyan, whome Au-
 gustus Cezar had ordeyned^t, wyth the byturyciens, the
 32 monyques, pictauyns, scauctonens, and Elogysmes,
 cytees with their prouynces vnder guyan: & he cam
 with iij M horsmen ²good fyghtars; Garferus, kyng^t
 of bordeloyes, with iiij M men; Salamon, felow of estok;

He frees all
prisoners,

clothes the poor,

restores the
disinherited,

and raises the
esquires to
knighthood,
on condition of
joining his army.

Turpin assures
him of success.

With Charles are
Roland, Oliver,
and Aristagius
with 14,000 men.

Besides were men
from Guienne,

¹ 1 ij. col. 2.

² 1 ij. back.

hawdewyn, brother of Rolland; Naymes, duc of bauyere,
 wyth x M fyghtyngⁱ men; Hoel of Nautes, &
 Burgundy, Lambert, prynce of bourgoyn, wyth ij M fyghtars;
 Sanson, duc of bourgoyn, with x M; Garyn, duc of 4
 Lorraine, and many other; and Charles hað of his
 other provinces, owne contre moo than fyfty M men. The excereyte
 of Charles, the noble emperour, and ryght puyssaunt
 kynngⁱ of Fraunce, was so grete and so ample that it helde 8
 two iourneyes longe, & in brede half o iourneye &
 more; In suche wyse that of the bruyt that was made
 for the grete multytude of the fresshemen, it was herde
 two myle ferre and more. 12

¶ Of the tryews of Charles & of Aygolant,
 and of the deth of hys peple, & wherfore
 aygolant was not baptysed¹: capitulo ix

Aigolant, fright-
 ened at the num-
 bers of the French,

proposes a con-
 ference.

THe whyl that charles was a yonge chylde he 16
 lerneð at Toulete the langage of sarasyns, and
 spake it whan he wold. Aygolant, thys geaunt
 and grete Lord, coude not absteyne hym, and cam
 nygh vnto crystyente, and sente to Charles to come to 20
 hym vnto Pampylone, and tryews was¹ maað bytwene
 them. For Aygolant consyderyð the multytude of hys
 people and the puyssaunces of their persones. For by
 cours of nature hym semed he shold surmounte the 24
 crysten peple, but he thought that the god of crysten
 people was more certayn and trewe than the god of the
 paynmys; but er he wold declyne fro the worshyppynge of
 hys goddes, he hað desyre to assaye yet ones the nombre 28
 of paynmys ayenst the nombre of crysten men. And
 he was contente to make a pacte and couenaunt wyth
 charles, that he that shold obteyne the vycorye vpon
 others peple, that his god were holden and worshypped, 32
 And that the god of hym that shold lose the bataylle

It is agreed to
 leave the question
 of religion to a
 trial of arms
 between equal
 numbers.

¹ 1 ij. back, col. 2.

- shold be of noo valure, renyed, and reputed for nought.
 And vpon thys couenaunte were sente twenty crysten
 knyghtes ayenst xx knyghtes paynyns. And anone
 4 as they were assembled and medled to-gyder, the twenty
 sarasyns were slayn. And after were sente fourty ayenst
 fourty, And anone the sarasyns were slayn and vayn-
 quysshed. And after he sent an C. ayenst an C., but
 8 they were not slayne, but felled. Aygolant thougt he
 wold do better, and sent ij hondred ayenst ij C., and
 anone the sarasyns were ouercomen & slayn. ¹¶ Thys
 geaunt was euyl contente of the destructyon of hys
 12 peple, and for to make a grete descomfyte, he sente a
 thousand sarasyns ayenst a M cristen men, and wyth-
 oute makynge grete rebellyon, the sarasyns were anone
 slayn and put to deth. Thenne the kyng Aygolant, by
 16 experyence for-made, afermed the fayth & the lawe of
 crysten peple to be better, more sure, & more certeyn
 than the lawe of the paynyns and sarasyns, and thus he
 was enclyned to the crysten fayth, & dysposed hym to
 20 receyue baptym on the morne without fayntyse; and
 here vpon he demanded tryews and surete for to goo &
 come to Charles, & he graunted it to hym wyth good
 hert. and thus atte houre of tyerce, whan charles was
 24 at dyner, Aygolant had entencyon to see charles and
 hys maner at mete, for to knowe hys astate, yf it were
 vaylเลอร์ous and soo grete as it was in armes and in
 bataylles. And also he came pryneypally for to be
 28 baptysed, and he sawe Charles at hys table with grete
 magnyfycence, and after behelde the ordre of hys peple
 and sawe that somme were in habyte of knyghtes and
 grete prynces, Other in habyte of channons & monkes;
 32 & asked so that he was certefyed of euery ordre, and
 the cause of theyr estate, and after ²that he sawe
 in a parte of y^e halle syttyng on the grounde, xiiij
 poure persones, which dyled & ete as other dyled. for

20 Christians
engage as many
Saracens, and
slay them;

and after 40 over-
come 40 Saracens;

and finally 1000
Christians slay
1000 Saracens.

Aigolant is con-
vinced, and agrees
to receive baptism.

He asks to see
Charles at meat
with his lords.

He sees 13 poor
men, sitting on
the ground at
dinner,

¹ 1 iij.

² 1 iij, col. 2.

and asks who and what they are.

Charles tells him they are maintained in memory of our Lord and His Apostles.

Aigolant reproves Charles for treating his lords so much better than the servants of God,

and refuses to be baptised.

charles of custom wold not take his repaste tyl he had xiiij poure men in the worschypp of our lord and of his xij apostles, & he toke hede how these poure men satte on the grounde without towayl in ryght poure 4 habyte, & dyled al soroufully, & he demaunded what people they were. Charles ansuerd & sayd: "they be goddes peple and messagers of our lord Ihesu cryst, whome I susteyne in thonour of hym & his xij apostles 8 that he had with hym, & gyue to them refectyon corporel." Aigolant said: "certeynlye he serueth euyl his lord y^t receyueh his messagers in thys manere. I see wel that they that ben aboute the been in good 12 poynt & wel arayed, & wel serued of mete & drynke, & the sernautes of thy god lyue pourely & euyl clothed ayenst y^e colde, & ben withdrawen ferre fro the. he dooth grete shame to his lord that receyueh his mes- 16 sagers in this manere. & more ouer, I see now wel that the lawe whyche thou hast sayd to me to be good & holy, by thy werkes thou shewest them to be fals & of no valewe." & herof aigolant was all moeued & troubled 20 in his entendement, & he beyng put out alle fro his purpose, toke leue of the ¹kyng & retourned to his peple, & renounced to be baptysed, and sente word to charles for to begynne warre ageyn on y^e morne more 24 stronge than euer he had doon tofore.

¶ Of the deth of aigolant and of his peple, & how moche crysten peple were slayn by concupyscence of syluer, & of crysten men 28 founden dede by myracle: [ca.] x

Charles is enraged,

WHan charles sawe Aigolant come for to baptyse hym he was moche Ioyous, but whan he retourned & forsoke it he was euyl contente, & 32 took aduys vpon the pour men whyche he sayd were

¹ 1 iij, back.

messagers of god. For after the pouerte of them, and after that they were named, fore to holde them so, was none honour to theyr mayster, & the emperour remembred wel that the peple of god ought to be receyued honestly, & honourably holden & serued. wherfor the poure men that he fonde in thexcercyte he dyd them to be wel clothed & honestly, and gaf to them mete largely, And took suche custome in hym self that he faylled not, but the pour peple were receyued with honour in his companye. vpon thys purpose on a day folowyng, the sarasyns put them to bataylle, and to fyght ¹ayenst the crysten men by grete fyerste, and there was soo grete destructyon that day of the sarasyns, that the crysten men were empessed and lette by the blood that ranne so habundantly, as it had rayned many dayes water and blood. wherefore² Aigolant, seying the destructyon of his people as he that doubted nothyng to deye, aduanced³ so hym self that he was slayn and put to deth, and after the cristen men entred in to the cyte of pampylone, and put to deth al the sarasyns that they fonde therein.

and has all these poor men clothed and honourably treated.

A great battle takes place,

in which the Saracens are defeated,

and Aigolant himself slain.

Thenne the kyng of Cybylle & the kyng of cordube saued them self with somme of their subgettes. After thys the crysten men ful of couetyse for to haue gold and syluer of the sarasyns that were deedly retorne, And whan they were wel charged & laden wyth golde, syluer, and other hauoyr, the kyng of Cybylle and the kyng of Cordube took hede therof, And wyth al their meyne came couertly vpon the crysten men, and put to deth moo than a thousand.

The kings of Seville and of Cordova fall on the Christians laden with booty, and kill more than 1000,

¶ Thus may be knowen that the ardeur of concupyscence was cause of the deth of the soule wythoute vycторыe, and to god dysplaysaunte. ¶ On the morne tydynges came how so many sarasyns were slayn, and

from which we may see the danger of covetousness.

¹ I iij, back, col. 2.

² orig. wherferr.

³ orig. and aduanced.

The king of
Navarre chal-
lenges Charles.

He accepts, and
prays to God to
point out which
of the Christians
are destined to
die.

This being shown
to him,

he looks them up
in his chapel,

and goes to battle
without them.

On his return he
finds them all
dead.

specyally of aygolant, vnto the prynce ¹of Nauarro
named Furre, wherfore he sent to Charles to haue
batayll ordynayre. Charles was so noble, so puyssaunt,
& so trustyngⁱ in god, whan he faught for the crysten 4
fayth that he refused hym not. and after, at the day of
bataylle, whyche was assygned on bothe partyes, Charles
put hym self to prayer, and prayed god deuoutely that
it plesed hym, to shew what crysten men shold deye in 8
that bataylle. and on the day folowyng whan euery
man was armed for to fyght, by the wylle of our lord
Charles sawe that same day the sygne of the crosse alle
rede vpon the sholdres behynde vpon theyr harnoyes. 12
whan charles sawe it he thanked our lord & had com-
passyon of theyr deth, by cause of the valyaunce of
theyr persones. Thenne he sent for all them that bare
thensigne & made them to goo in to hys oratorye, and 16
after shette them fast therin, to the ende that they shold
not take deth that day ; and thenne wyth al his other
hoost he went ayenst thoost of the prynce furre, but it
was not longe but furre and hys people were destroyed 20
and put to deth. and whan that was doon the emperour
came in to hys oratorye vycictoryous vpon hys enemyes,
and fonde al them that were shette wythin dede &
expyred, & thenne knewe² he wel that alle they that 24
were marked with the crosse were assygned that day to
be receyued in to heuen with glorie & crowne of marter-
dom, & that it apperteyned not to Charles to prolonge
theyr helthe. wherfore he is wel symple that wyl put 28
hym in payne to eschewe the passage of whyche he is
not maystre.

¶ Of feragus the merueyllous geaunt, how he
bare alwaye wyth hym the barons of fraunce 32
wyth out daunger, & how Roulland' faught
wyth hym : capitulo xj.

¹ 1 iiij.

² 1 iiij, col. 2.

After that aygolant was slayn, & Furre, & many
 kynges sarasyns as tofore is wryton, the tydynges
 cam to the admyral of babyloune, the which had a
 4 geant moche terryble, that was of the generacion of
 goliath, & he made hym to be accompanied with xx M
 turkes moche strong, and sente hym for to fyght ayenst
 charles themperour. For hys puyssaunce was redoubte^d
 8 thurgh the world, & the sayd feragus cam vnto the cyte
 of vagyere, nygh to saynt Iames, bytwene cristendom
 & hethenes, & sent to Charles that he shold come to
 fyght ayenst hym. This geant was moche meruayllous,
 12 For he doubted neyther spere ne swerde, ne arowe, ne
 other shotte. And he had the strengthe of xl ¹myghty
 men and stronge. Anone as Charles knewe the tydynges
 of hys comyng, he went to hym and was vpon his
 16 wathe nygh by vagyere. Whan thys was knowen this
 geaunte yssued oute of the towne, and demaunded syn-
 gular persone ayenst a persone. Charles, whiche neuer
 had refused that to persone, sente to hym Ogyer the
 20 danoy. but whan the geant sawe hym allone on the
 felde, without makyng of any semblaunte of warre, he
 came allone to hym, & took hym wyth one hande &
 put hym vnder hys arme, wythoute doynge to hym any
 24 harme, and bare hym vnto hys lodgys, and dyd do put
 hym in pryson, and made nomore a-doo to bere hym,
 than dooth a wulf to bere a lytel lambe. The heyght
 of thys geaunt was of twelue cubytes: he had the face
 28 a cubyte brode, the nose a palme longe, the armes &
 thyes four cubytes long. The backe of his hand was
 thre palmes longe. After that Ogyer was borne thus
 awaye, Charles sente raynold daulbepyn. whan Feragus
 32 sawe hym, he bare hym a-waye as lyghtly as the other.
 Charles was abasshed and sent tweyne other, that is to
 wete, constayn of Rome, & therle hoel. This geaunt
 took that one wyth ²the ryght honde and that other

The Amir of
 Babylon sends
 Ferragus, a mar-
 vellous giant,

to fight against
 Charles.

He challenges any
 French knight.

Charles sends
 Ogyer to meet him,

but Ferragus
 takes him under
 his arm and

carries him off,
 as a wolf would a
 lamb.

Charles then
 sends Raynold,
 and he also is
 carried off.

Then Constayn
 and Hoel are sent,

¹ 1 iij, back.

² orig. wyght.

but Ferragus
carries them off,
one in each hand.

Roland asks leave
to fight the giant.

Charles reluct-
antly gives his
consent.

Ferragus lifts
Roland up with
one hand, and
lays him on his
horse before him.

Roland, by an
effort, overthrows
the giant.

Roland kills the
Saracen's horse,

and wounds
Ferragus in the
arm.

in the lyft honde, and bare them ¹bothe tweyne in-to
pryson in to hys lodgyng, that euery man myght see.
yet after charles sent other tweyne, and semblably they
were bothe borne away wythoute ony wythstandyng or 4
contradycyon. whan Charles saw the feet of this man,
he was al abasshed, & durst nomore sende ony persone.
For no man myght resyste hym. Roulland, whyche
was prynce of al thexcersyte of Charles, was euyl con- 8
tente of thys that the geant was vycetoryous, & came
to Charles and presented hym self for to goo fyght wyth
hym, but charles wold not graunte hym. At the last,
by force, he was constrayned to gyue to hym lycence, 12
& Roulland made hym redy, and cam tofore Feragus;
but anone he was taken and reteyned wyth hys ryght
hande lyke the other, and the geant layed hym tofore
hym on hys hors. whan Rolland sawe that he was 16
taken & borne awaye soo vylaynsly he took a grete²
courage in hym self, and called the name of Ihesus to
help, & to be in hys ayde, and torned hym ayenst
Feragus, and took hym by the chynne, and made to 20
ouerthrowe fro hys hors, & fyl to the grounde, and
rolland also. And after anone they arose, and eueryche
took hys owne hors. Roulland, whyche was moche
habyle and courageous, drewe ³hys swerde durandal 24
and came ayenst the geant, and gaf soo grete a stroke
on the Paynyns hors that he carf hym a-sondre in the
myddes, and the paynym fyl to the erthe. Feragus,
beyng euyl contente for hys hors that was dede, took 28
hys swerde for to smyte Rolland, & had slayne hym
wyth the stroke yf he had attayned hym; but assone
as he lyfte vp hys arme for to haue smyten Rolland,
Roulland auanced hym self and smote the geant vpon 32
the arme, with whiche he helde hys swerde, suche a
stroke, that hys swerde fyl to the grounde; wherof
Feragus had grete despyte and supposed to haue smyten

¹ 1 iiij, back, col. 2.

² orig. gtete.

³ 1 v.

hym wyth hys fyste, but he attayned rollandes hors in
 suche wyse that he slewe hym. Thus were they bothe
 two on fote, whyche wythoute swerd begynnen to fyght
 4 wyth theyr fystes and wyth stones contynuelly, tyl the
 houre of none: wherfore they bothe were wery, and
 took tryews to-gyder by one acorde vnto the morne,
 and that they shold fyght wythout spere and wythoute
 8 hors: and here vpon eche of them went vn-to hys
 lodgys.

Roland's horse is
 killed.

Being both weary,
 they leave off
 fighting for the
 day.

¶ How on the morne rolland' and' Feragus
 foughten & dysputeden the fayth, and by
 12 what ¹moyen Feragus was slayn by Roul-
 land': capitulo xij

THe next day folowyng^e erly, Rolland and Feragus
 came to the felde of the bataylle. The geaunt
 16 brought hys swerde moche grete, but it was nothyng
 worth, for rolland made prouysyon of a grete staffe or
 clubbe, ryzt longe wyth whyche he smote the geaunt;
 but he myght nowher huite hym. & also he smote
 20 hym with grete stones and rounde, & coude in noo
 wyse hurte ne entre in-to hys flesshe. And in this
 maner they cessyd not to fyght tyl the houre of myd-
 day. The geaunt was wery, and demaunded tryews of
 24 Rolland for to slepe and reste hym a lytel. Rolland
 was contente, and was so noble and so valyaunt, that
 whan the geaunt was layed he went and fette a grete
 stone and layed it vnder hys heek, to the ende that he
 28 myght the better slepe and reste at hys ease. And
 after that he had a lytel slepte, & that he was awaked,
 he satte vp. And the noble Rolland came and sat by
 hym and sayd to hym: "I mernaylle moche of thy
 32 feat, How thou art so stronge and so terryble that thou
 mayst not be hurt ne wounded in thy body by swerd,

Next morning the
 duel is renewed.

Roland takes with
 him only a great
 staff.

At noon Ferragus
 is tired, and
 wishes to sleep a
 while.

Roland makes
 him comfortable.

He asks him how
 it is he cannot
 by any means
 wound him.

¹ 1 v. col. 2.

Ferragus tells him that he is vulnerable only in the navel.

The Saracen inquires about the doctrines of Christianity.

Roland tells him,

and how that all that are baptised shall be saved.

Ferragus proposes to settle the question of religion by arms.

ne by staffe, ne by stones, ne in¹ ²noo wyse." The
 geaunt, which spake spaynyssh, sayd to hym : " I may
 not be slayn, but by the navell." whan Rolland herde
 that he made semblaunte that he vnderstood hym not. 4
 After Feragus demaunded hym what was hys name,
 and of what lygnage he was. Rolland sayd to hym :
 " I am named Rolland, and am neuwe of charles, the
 ryght myghty Emperour." & Feragus asked of hym 8
 what lawe he helde. Rolland answered : " I holde the
 eristen fayth by the grace of god." Feragus sayd :
 " what fayth is that, and who hath gyuen it ? " to
 whyche Roulland answered : " It is trouthe y^t after god 12
 almyghty had made heuen and erthe, and our fyrst fader
 adam, which was dysobeyssaunt to hys commaunde-
 ments ; the world was Juge^d here in erthe wythoute
 hauyng^t of beatytude, ne of felycyte : and long tyme 16
 after the sone of god, the second^t persone of the Trynyte,
 remembre^t hym of the valure of the soule, the whiche
 is gyuen to euery persone, and descended^t fro heuen and
 took our humanyte and suffred^t greuous passyon of 20
 paynes. And he beyng^t in this world^t hath gyuen en-
 seynements and stablyssed^t constytucyons for to saue
 vs, & pryncypally who byleueth in hym & in hys
 werkes parfychtly. and that he be baptysed, After this 24
³mortel lyf he shal be saued in heuen : and, loo ! this
 is the fayth that I holde, in the which I wyl deye."
 And after that Feragus had made to hym many ques-
 tyons in the fayth, and that Rolland had answered to 28
 hym honourably in euery poynte, Feragus said in this
 manere : " thou art crysten, and wylt mayntene the
 fayth of whyche thou hast spoken, and I am a paynym,
 & holde for my god Mahoun. who of vs tweyne that 32
 shal be vanquysshed & ouercome, late hys lawe be
 holde for nought and of noo valewe, and the fayth of
 hym that is vyctoryous late it be holden for good &

¹ orig. im.

² 1 v, back.

³ 1 v, back, col. 2.

- trewe, and that it be enterly kepte and obserued.”
- The valyaunt Rolland^l was contente ryght wel, & ac- Roland agrees.
cepted^l hys langage. thenne eche of them was redy to
- 4 fyght. Anone Rolland^l came to hym, and^l Feragus lyft The fight is renewed.
vp hys arme for to smyte Rolland^l moche malycyously,
and^l Roulland^l sawe the stroke come vpon hym, and^l
for to voyde it he launced^l hys staffe ayenst the swerde,
- 8 and wyth the stroke the staffe was cutte asondre; and^l Roland's staff is cut in two,
there-wythal the geaunt ranne to Rolland^l and had^l hym
doun vnder hym. Rolland^l, consyderynge that he myght
not flee ne escape, he called^l in hys hert deuoutely the
- 12 name of Ihesus, and yelded^l hym to go^l & ¹to the
vyrgyn marye: & he anon reprysed^l suche strengthe & but by a great effort he gets the giant under him
myzt that he aroos a lytel, & myghtyly repugned^l the
geaunte, in suche manere that he brought the geaunte
- 16 vnder hym, and^l thenne moche quyeckly and^l subtylly he
sete hande on hys swerde, and pryched hym in the
nauyll therwyth, & anone after aroos, and fledde al that
he myzt to thoost of charles. Anone as feragus felte
- 20 hym self hurt in that place, he cryed^l so hye & lowde,
that alle they that were in that place were aferd^l &
abashed^l of hys crye, & he sayd^l: “O Mahomet, my
god^l, to whom I haue gyuen my fayth, come & socour
- 24 me, for thou seest wel that I dye, and tarye noo lenger.”
with that hydous voys the sarasyns camen to hym and
bare hym awaye in theyr armes the best wyse they
coude vnto hys lodgys; and by that tyme rolland^l was The Saracens bear Ferragus away.
- 28 comen alle hool and^l sauf vnto Charles. And forthwyth Charles assaults the town,
the crysten men went Impetuously vpon the Sarasyns
that bare Feragus, and^l entred^l in to the cyte, and so takes it and
moche dyd^l that the geaunt was dede, and^l after came
- 32 in to the pryson valyauntly, and^l took out Ogger, releases his knights.
Regnault, Constantyn, Hoel, and the other prysonners.

¹ 1 vi.

¶ How Charles went to Cor¹dube, where the kyng of the same place and' the kyng' of Cybylle abode, for their destructyon :

ca.

xiiij 4

The kings of Cordova and Seville defy Charles,

who marches against them.

The Saracens, by a stratagem,

frighten the horses of the Frenchmen, and put them to flight.

Charles devises a remedy,

and the battle is renewed next day.

Of the standard of the Saracens.

A Fter thys aforesayd, the kyng¹ Corbude and the kyng¹ of Cybylle sent to Charles that he shold come to cordube for to fyght. Anone as charles knewe it, he came thyder wyth all hys puyssaunce. And 8 whan they were nygh for tassemble in bataylle, the sarasyns maad¹ a moche subtil and¹ wylde thyng. For tofore the Sarasyns that were on horsback they had ordeyned men on fote, whyche had vysieres counter- 12 feyted¹ all black & rede, horned, and berded lyke deuylls, for to deceyue the crysten men; and eueryche of these foot men bare in hys honde a lytel belle. And at thentre of the bataylle they began to sowne and¹ 16 make suche a bruyt, that assone as the horses of the crysten men sawe them so counterfayted and sowne their bellys, so Impetuously they began to flee, disreng & to be aferde, in suche maner that no man might holde 20 theyr horses, but by force they must flee and¹ wythdrawe them. Charles deuysed¹ a remedye, and on the morne he blynfelde the horses and couer¹ theyr eyen wyth clothes, And¹ stopped¹ theyr eres, to the ende that they 24 shold¹ not see ne ²here the sarasyns dysguysed¹ & countrefayted¹. And whan they came to bataylle in this manere they spared¹ not, but slewe down ryght, & put the sarasyns to deth tyl mydday; but yet they were 28 not al vaynquysshed¹, For they had¹ a carte myghty and¹ grete for to resyste and¹ make grete empresshement to theyr enemyes. And¹ this engyne was drawen wyth viij oxen in the warre, & ther-vpon³ stode on hye the 32 standard of theyr ensygne. & theyr custome was that on payne of deth noo persone, shold retorne, ne goo

¹ 1 vj. col. 2.

² 1 vi. back.

³ orig. thre-vpon.

- aback for no thyng as long as the standard stode vpryght. herof Charles was enformed, wherfore moche puyssauntly he rode thurgh the sarasyns tyl he came to
- 4 the standard, and with Joyouse hys swerde he smote it asondre: and anone as the sarasyns sawe that they fledde, & mony of y^e paynyns were slayn and dede.
- & on the morne after the towne was delyuerd vnto
- 8 Charles by the lord of the toun,¹ whyche coude not resyste hym, & charles was content to lete hym haue hys lyf yf he wold be baptysed, and also the toun for to holde it of hym and none otherwyse. And thenne
- 12 charles ordeynerd in spayne certayn of hys barons to kepe it, in suche wyse, that none durst assaylle it, ne make to it warre. For he was ²alwaye vyctoryous of his enemyes by the puyssaunce that he ledde, and also
- 16 by dyscrecyon of hys persone, and pryneypally by the grace of god, whyche faylled not in him and in hys subgettes.

Charles himself cuts down the standard, and the Saracens flee.

The town is taken, and all who will not become Christians put to death.

- ¶ How the chyrche of Saynt Iames was
- 20 halowed by tharchebysshop Turpyn, & the chyrches of spayne subgettes therto, and of other pryneypal chyrches: capitulo xiiij

- 24 **C**harles the noble emperour, after that he had put and sette good estate and good warde in spayne, he went to saynt Iames wyth fewe people. And whan he was there, suche cristen men as he there fond he rewarded them, & dyd to them moche good,
- 28 and he punysshed suche as were apostates, & other maner of peple, suche as he fonde vntrywewe and dysobeysaunte to holy chyrche, he lete slee and put to deth, or he sente theym in to fraunce to do penaunce, and
- 32 bannysshed them. And thenne thorough al the cytees of spayne he ordeynerd bysshops, relygyous, and other

Charles goes to St. James, and makes regulations for the church:

appoints bishops and monasteries,

¹ orig. tonn.

² 1 vj. back, col. 2.

and ordains that all the bishops of Spain shall be subject to the bishop of St. James.

Tarpin consecrates the Church of St. James.

Charles appoints the payment of tithes to the church,

and orders that all consecrations and coronations shall take place there.

The body of St. John is deposited on the right side, and that of St. James on the left.

peple of the chyrche, & made many constytueyons,¹ synodals, and other ordynaunces vp-on the chyrche, and vpon other peple. And in thonour of saynt ²Iames he made constytueyons, and Instytuled that al the bysshops, 4 prynees, and kynges dwellyng in spayne, shold all be subget to the bysshop of saynt Iames, and al they shold owe to that chyrche fydeyte, wyth al the peple of the londe of galyee. And accordyng to the same the arche- 8 bisshop Turpy n wryteth in thys manere: "And I, Turpy n, archebysshop of Raynes, was in the same place, where the ordenaunces aforesayd were maad. And I, accompanied wyth ix honourable bysshops & of good 12 lyf, at the requeste and postulacyon of Charles in the moneth of Iuly, haue halowed, dedycated, blessyd, and consecrated the chyrche of saynt Iames, & the aulter of the same. And after themme the kyng Charles gaf al 16 the londe of spayne & of galyee to that chyrche, And after ordeyned y^t euery hous of spayn and galyee shold gyue to the chyrche of saynt Iames iiij pens of the money corraunt for annuel³ trybute. And by the 20 moyen therof they shold be franke and free of seruytude. And for the honour of saynt Iames he estab- lysshed that the chyrche of the sayd place shold be sayd apostolyque for the exaltacion of the place. And 24 more ouer, that the bysshopryches and specyal dygnyte of alle spayne & of galyee, and semblably the coronacions of kynges of al the contre, shold be crowned & sacred by the bysshop of saynt Iames, al in lyke wyse 28 as it hath been tofore doon in Asye in the place of ephesym, for the honour of holy Saynt Iohan theuangelyst, brother of saynt Iames, and sone of Zebedee. & thus Saynt Iohan was lodged in the ryght syde, And 32 Saynt Iames, his brother, in the lyfte syde. Thenne was accomplished the peticyon of their moder and of

¹ orig. constytueyous.

² 1 vij.

³ orig. amuel.

⁴ 1 vij, col. 2.

hyr two sones, gloryouse frendes of our lord Ihesu
 Cryst, whan she desyred that hyr two sones shold sytte,
 one on the ryght syde, and that other on the lyfte,
 4 whyche was thenne accomplyshed and termyne. &
 therefore in the world ben thre syeges and chyrches
 pryncypal, whyche crysten men by ryght owen texalte,
 deffende and mayntene wyth all theyr myght. ¶ That
 8 is to wete, the chyrche of Rome, The chyrche of Ephe-
 sym of saynt Iohan the euangelyst, And the chyrche of
 Saynt Iames in galyce. And yf any demaunded the
 cause of these thre places and syeges pryncipal of cris-
 12 tyente, the cause is ynough apparence. These thre
 places ben honoured pryncypally by cause the synners
 may haue theyr recours to them for tamende theyr
 lyues, and put awaye theyr synnes, & obteyne pardon
 16 and forgynenes. Fyrst these iij appostles, that is to say,
 Saynt Peter, Saynt Johan, & saynt James, haue pre-
 ceded all the other in the companye of Ihesu Cryst
 whan he was in thys worlde, & haue ben called to hys
 20 secretes, and that haue moost contynued wyth hym.
 Thus by good ryght, the places in whyche they haue
 conversed and contynued theyr lyues, and where theyr
 bodyes resten, oughen to be honoured and to be
 24 habundaunt in grace. ¶ Pryncypally, saynt Peter was
 the fyrst and moost hye, & preched at Rome, and there
 was martred & buryed; Therfor the chyrche of Rome
 is enhaunee & exalted aboue al other chyrches. &
 28 after saynt Johan, whyche sawe the secretes of god in
 his souper, & in ephesym he made the gospel '*In
 principio erat verbum & cetera*,' And by his holy
 prechyng hath conuerted thynfydellys to the holy
 32 crysten fayth. And also saynt James, whyche had
 grete payne in spayne and in galyce, for the honour of
 god as wel for hys holy lyf, for hys myrales, as for hys
 marterdom and hys sepulture, by good ryght ought the
 memorye of them to be thorough the vnyuersal worlde."

Thus the three
 chief churches in
 the world are
 those of Rome,
 Ephesus,
 and St. James,

because St. Peter,
 St. John, and St.
 James were the
 chief of the
 Apostles.

The church of
 Rome is the head,
 because there St.
 Peter is buried.

Ephesus is next,
 because there St.
 John wrote his
 Gospel,

and the church of
 St. James is third.

¹¶ The second' parte of the thyrd book con-
teyneth x chapytres, & speketh of the
treason made by ganellon, and' of the deth
of the pyeres of Fraunce. 4

¶ How the treason was comprysed' by Ganel-
lon, and of the deth of crysten men, &
how ganellon is repreuyd by thauctour:
capitulo primo 8

Marsurius and
Bellegandus,
kings of Sara-
gossa, pretend to
be ready to sub-
mit to Charles.

IN this tyme were in Cezarye two kynges sarasyns
moche myghty, that one was named marfurrius, and
that other bellegandus, his brother, whyche were
sente by thadmyral of babyllonne in to spayne, the 12
whyche were vnder kynge Charles, & made to hym synge
of loue and of subgectyon, and went by hys commaunde-
ment holyly and vnder the shadowe of decepcyon.
Themperour, seying that they were not crysten, and for 16
to gete seygnourye ouer them, he sente for ganellon, in
whome he had fyaunce, that they shold doo baptyse
them, or ellys that they shold sende to hym trybute in
sygne of fydelite of their contre. Ganellon, the traytre, 20
went thyder and dyd to them the message, and after
that he had with them many deceyuable wordes, they
sente hym ageyn to charles wyth xxx hors laden with
gold & syluer, wyth clothes of sylke, ²and other 24
rychesses, & iiij hondred hors laden with swetewyn,
for to gyue to the men of Warre for to drynke; & also
they sente, aboue thys, to them a thousand fayr wymmen
sarasyns, in grete poynte and yonge of age: And al thys 28
in sygne of loue and of obeyssaunce. and after they
gaf to ganellon xx hors charged wyth gold and syluer,
sylkes, and other precyosytees, that by hys moyen he
shold brynge in to theyr hondes the companye of 32
charles yf he myght doo it.

Charles sends
Ganelon,
requiring them to
be baptized and
pay tribute.

The Saracens send
presents to
Charles, and in-
duce Ganelon, by

bribes, to promise
to betray the
French army.

¹ 1 vij. back, col. 2.

² 1 viij.

Thenne ganellon was surprysed wyth thys fals
 auaryce, whych consumeth alle the swetenes of charyte
 that is in persones, for to haue gold¹ or syluer & other
 4 rychesses, & made a pacte and couenaunte wyth the
 sarasyns for to betraye hys lord, hys neyghbours, &
 crysten brethern, & sware that he wold not faylle them
 of thenterpryse; but I merueylle moche of ganellon,
 8 which made thys treason, wythoute to haue¹ cause
 coloured ne Juste.

Ganelon bargains
 to betray Charles
 and his fellow-
 countrymen.

¶ O wycked Ganellon, thou were comen of noblesse,
 & thou hast doon a werke vylaynnous: thou were ryche
 12 & a grete lord, and for money thou hast betrayed thy
 mayster. Emonge alle other thou were chosen for to
 goo to y^e sarasyns for grete trust: emonge al the other,
 and for the fydelite that was thought in ²the, thou
 16 hast consented to trayson, and allone hast commysed
 Infydelite. Fro whens cometh thyn Inyquyte, but of
 a fals wylle plunged in thabysme of auaryce? Thy
 naturel souerayn lord, Roulland, Olyuer, & the other,
 20 what haue they doon to the? yf thou haue a wycked
 hate ayenst one persone, wherfore consentest thou to
 destroye thynnocentes? was there noo persone that thou
 louedest whan to al crysten men thou hast ben traytre?
 24 was there ony reason in the, whan thou hast ben capy-
 tain ayenst the fayth? what auayleth the prowesse that
 thou hast made in tyme passed, whan thyn ende shew-
 eth that thou hast doo wyckednes? O fals auaryce, and
 28 ardeur of concupiscence! he is not the fyrst that by the
 is comen to myscheyf. by the Adam was to god dys-
 obeysaunt, and the noble cyte of Troye the graunde put
 to vtter ruyne and destructyon. Thus in thys manere
 32 ganellon brought gold and syluer, wyn, wymmen, and
 other rychesses, as tofore he had enterprysed. Whan
 charles sawe al this, he thought that al way doon in
 good entent and equitye and wythout barat. The grete

The author's re-
 proach to Ganelon
 for his treachery,

for which he had
 no reason but
 avarice,

which had ruined
 so many.

Ganelon presents
 the presents to
 Charles,

who falls into the
 trap.

¹ *orig. hane.*

² l viij, col. 2.

He takes the gold
and silver himself,
and gives the
wine to his
knights.

Charles, per-
suaded by Gane-
lon, sends his
homewards.

Marsurius and
Bellegandus lay
an ambush in
Roncesvalles,

which falls on the
French.

The fight lasts all
day.

At night the
French soldiers
get drunk on the
wine.

Then 30,000 Sara-
cens fall on them,

lordes & knyghtes toke the wyn for them, and charles
took onely the gold and syluer, & the moyen people
took the hethen wymmen. Themperour ¹gaf consente
to the wordes of ganellon, For he spake moche wysely, 4
and wrought in suche wyse that charles and alle hys
hoost passed the porte of Cezarye; for ganellon dyd
hym to vnderstonde that the kynges aforesayd wold
become crysten and be baptyse, and swere fydelyte to 8
the emperour; And anone sent his peple tofore, and
he came after in the ryere warde, & had sente Roulland
& Olyuer & the moost speyal of hys subgettes wyth a
thousand fyghtyng men, and were in Rounceyuale. 12
Thenne the kynges Marfuryus & Bellegandus, after
the counceyl of ganellon, wyth fyfty thousand sarasyns
were hydde in a wode, abydyng & awaytyng the frenssh
men, & there they abode ij dayes and two nyghtys, & 16
deuyded theyr men in two partyes. In the first they
put xx M sarasynz, and in that other they put xxx
thousand sarasyns. ¶ In the vaunte garde of charles
were xx thousand crysten men, whyche anone were 20
assaylled wyth xx thousand sarasyns, and maad warre
in suche wyse that they were constrayned to withdrawe
them; For fro the mornying vnto the houre of tyerce
they seaced not to fyght and smyte on them, wherfore 24
the crysten men were moche wery, and had nede to
reste theym. Neuertheles, they ²dronken wel of the
good swete wyn of the sarasyns moche largely, And
after many of them that were dronke went & laye by 28
the wymmen sarasyns, & also wyth other that they
had brought oute of fraunce, wherfore the wyll of god
was that they shold al be dede, to thende that their
martyrdom & passyon myght be the cause of theyr 32
sauceyon & purgyng of their synne. For anone after
the thyrty thousand sarasyns cam that were in the
second batayl vpon the frenssh men soo Impetuovsly

¹ 1 viij, back.

² 1 viij, back. col. 2.

that they were al dede and slayn, Except Roulland, and slay all except
bouldouyn, & Thyerry. The other were slayn and dede Roland, Thierry,
with speres: somme slayn, somme rosted, and other and Baldwin.

4 quartred, and submysek to many tormentes. And whan
thys dyscomfyture was doon, Ganellon was with charles,
and also tharchebysshop Turpyn, whych knewe nothyng
of this werke so sorouful, sauf onely the traytre, whyche
8 supposed that they alle had be destroyed and put to
deth. ¶ Of the languysshe that was comyng to Charles,
he wyste not, how sone it was comyng.

¶ Of the deth of kyng Marfurius, and' how
12 Roulland' was hurt wyth foure speres mor-
tally after that al his peple were slayn :
capitulo : ij

16 **T**He bataylle, as I haue sayd tofore, was moche
sharpe. whan Rolland, whyche was moche wery,
retorned he recountred in hys waye a sarasyn
moche fyers & blacke as boylled pytche, and anone he
took hym at thentre of a wode & bonde hym to a
20 tree straytely, wythoute doying to hym any more harme,
and after took and rode vpon an hylle for to see the
hoost of the sarasyns, And the crysten men that were
fledde : & saw grete quantyte of paynyms. Wherefore
24 anone he sowned and blewe his horne of yuorye moche
lowde. And wyth that noyse cam to hym au hundred
cristen men wel arayed and habylled wythoute moo.
And whan they were come to hym he retorned to the
28 sarasyn that was bounde to the tree, And Roulland
helde hys swerd ouer hym, sayeng that he shold deye,
yf he shewed to hym not clerely the kyng Marfuryus,
& yf he so wold do he shold not deye. The sarasyn
32 was contente, and sware, that he shold gladly do it for
to saue his lyf ; & soo he brought hym wyth hym vnto

Roland captures
a Saracen,
whom he ties to
a tree,

and afterwards
compels to point
out to him Mar-
surius.

The Saracen
points out Mar-
surius,

whom Roland
kills,

The Saracens fly
before him.

All the French
are killed, except
three.

Bellegandus and
his men fly.

the place where they sawe the paynymys, and shewed to
 Rolland Whyche was the kyng, whyche rode vpon a
 rede hors, & other certeyn tokenes. And in thys poynt
 Roulland, reconfermed in hys strengthe, trustyng¹ 4
 verly in the myght of god and in the name of Ihesus,
 as a lyon entred in to the bataylle, & emonge them he
 encountred a sarasyn whyche was gretter than ony
 of the other, & gaf to hym so grete a stroke wyth 8
 durandal vpon the hede that he clefte hym & hys hors
 in two partes, that the one parte went on one syde &
 that other on the other syde. wherfore the sarasyns
 were soo troubled & abashed of the myght and puy- 12
 saunce of Rolland, that they alle fledde tofore hym, &
 thenne abode the kynge Marfuryus wyth a fewe folke.
 Thenne rolland sawe thys kyng, And wythoute fere came
 to hym and put hym to deth Incontynent. And alle 16
 the hondred crysten men that were wyth Roulland in
 thys recoutre were dolorously slayn & put to deth,
 Except onely baulduyn and Thyerry, whyche for fere
 fledde in to the wode. But after that Rolland had 20
 slayn kyng Marfuryus he was sore oppressyd, & in
 suche wyse deleynd that wyth foure grete speres he
 was smyton and wounded mortally, & beten with
 stoones, and hurte wyth dartes and other shotte mor- 24
 tally. And not withstondyng these greuouse hurte &
 woundes, yet, maulgre al the sarasyns, he sprange out
 of the bataylle, and saued hym self the best wyse he
 myght. ²Bellegandus, broder of Marfuryus, doubtyng 28
 that helpe & ayde shold come to the crysten people,
 retorne in to another contreye³, wyth hys peple moche
 hastily. And themperour Charles had thenne passed
 the montayne of Roneyuale, and knewe nothyng of 32
 these thynges afore sayd, ne what had be doon.

¹ m j, col. 2.

² m j, back.

³ orig. coutreye.

¶ How Rolland deyed' holyly, after many mar-
tyres & orysons made to god ful deuoutely,
& of the complaynte maad' for hys swerde
4 durandal : capitulo iij

Rolland the valyaunt, and champion of the crysten
fayth, was moche sorouful of the crysten men, by
cause they had noo socours ; he was moche wery,
8 gretely abashed, & moche affebled in hys persone, for
he had lost moche of his blode by his foure mortal
woundes, of whyche the leste of them was suffysaunt
for hym to haue deyed, and he had grete payne to gete
12 hym oute fro the sarasyns for to haue a lytel com-
memoracion of god tofore or the soule shold departe
fro his body. so moche he enforced hym, that he came
to the fote of a montayne, nygh to the porte of Cezarye,
16 and brought hym self nygh to a rocke ryght by Ron-
cyuale, vnder a tree in a fayr medowe. whan he sat
down ¹ on the grounde he behelde his swerde, the best
that euer was, named durandal, whyche is as moche to
20 say as gyuyng an hard stroke, whyche was ryght fayr
& rychely made : the handle was of fyn beryle, shynyng
meruallously ; on hye it had a fayre crosse of gold, in
the which was wryton the name of Ihesus. It was so
24 good & fyn, that sonner shold the arme faylle than the
swerde. he took it out of y^e shethe & sawe it shyne
moche bryght, and by cause it shold chaunge his maister
he had moche sorowe in his hert, and wepyng, he sayd
28 in thys maner pytously : ¶ “ O swerd of valure, the
fayrest that euer was, thou were neuer but fayr, Ne
neuer fonde I the but good : thou art long by mesure ;
Thou hast be so moche honoured, that alwaye thou
32 barest with the the name of the blessyd Ihesus, sauyour
of the world, whyche hath endowed the wyth the power
of god. who may comprehende thy valure ? Alas !

Roland, although
greatly exhausted
by loss of blood,

struggles nearly
to Saragossa,

where he lies
down.

He looks with
grief on Durandal,

and weeping,
bids it farewell.

¹ m j, back, col. 2.

Roland laments
over his sword
Durandal.

Determined that
no Saracen shall
ever have it,

tries to break it
on a rock,

but Durandal
cleaves the rock
without harm to
itself.

Roland blows his
ivory horn so hard
that it breaks,

and the veins of
his neck burst.

Charles hears the
horn and recog-
nizes it,

who shal haue the after me? who someuer hath the
shal neuer be vaynquysshed, alwaye he shal haue gooð
fortune. Alas! what shal I more ouer say for the,
goodð swerde? many sarasyns haue ben destroyed by 4
the; thynfydels andð myscreauntes haue ben slayn by
the; the name of godð is exaltedð by the; by the is
made the path of ¹saument. O, how many tymes
haue I by the auengedð thyniurye made to godð! O, 8
how many men haue I smyton andð cutte a-sondre by
the myddle! O, my swerde, whyche hast ben my com-
fort andð my Joye, whych neuer hurtest persone that
myght escape fro deth! O, my swerde, yf ony persone 12
of noo value sholdð haue the & I knewe it, I sholdð deye
for sorowe." After that Rollanð had wepte ynough, he
had fere that somme paynym myght fynde it after his
deth, wherfore he concluded² in hym self to breke it, 16
andð toke it & smote it vpon a rocke wyth alle hys
myght iij tymes wythoute hurtyng ony thyng the
swerde, and clefte the rocke to therthe, and coude in no
wyse breke the swerde. Whan he sawe the faeyon and 20
coude do nomore therto, he took his horne, whyche was
of yuorye moche rychely made, and sowned & blewe it
moche strongely, to the ende that yf there were ony
crysten men hydde in the wodes or in the waye of 24
theyr retournyng, that they sholdð come to hym tofore
they wente ony ferther, andð to fore he rendredð hys
sowle. Thenne, seyng that none came, he sownedð it
ageyn by soo grete force andð vertu, andð so Impetuously, 28
that the horne roof a sondre in the myddle, andð the
vaynes of hys necke braken a sondre, andð the ³synewes
of his body stretcheden. Andð that noys or voys by the
grace of godð came to the eeres of Charles, whyche was 32
eyght myle fro hym. The Emperour, heeryng the
horne, he knewe wel that Rollanð hadð blowen it, and
wold haue returnedð ageyn, but Ganellon, the traytre,

¹ m ij.

² orig. concludet.

³ m ij, col. 2.

- whyche knewe wel alle the fayt, dystourneð hym, in
sayeng^r that Rolland^t had^t blowen his horne for somme
wylde beest that he chased^t for his playsyr; For ofte
4 tymes he wold blowe hys horne for lytel thyng, and
that he shold^t not doubte of nothyng. ¶ And thus he
dyd^t the kynge to vnderstonde that he byleued^t hym,
and^t made none other semblaunte. Neuertheles, Rol-
8 land, leyng^r in thys sorowe, he peased^t hys woundes also
wel as he myght, and^t stratched^t hymself on the grasse
to the fresshenes for to forgete hys thirst, whyche was
ouer grete.
- 12 ¶ Here vpon Baulduyn, hys brother, came vnto hym,
whyche was moche heuy and^t sorouful for hys brother
Roulland^t, whyche was in that necessitye. And^t anone
Roulland^t sayd^t to hym, “my frende and^t my brother,
16 I haue so grete thirst that I must nedes deye yf I haue
not drynke to aswage my thirst.
- ¶ Baulduyn had^t grete payne in goyng^r here and^t there,
and^t coude fynde no water, and came to hym ageyn &
20 sayde he coude fynde none; and^t in grete anguysshe he
lepte² on Roulandes hors, and^t rode for to feteche charles,
For he knewe wel that rolland^t was nyghe hys deth.
Anone after came to hym Thyerry, due of Ardayne,
24 whyche wepte vpon Rolland^t so contynuelly that he myzt
not speke. but with grete payne Rolland confessyd hym
and^t dysposed^t hym of hys conseyence. neuertheles, that
same day Rolland^t had^t receyued^t the body of our lord,
28 For the custome was that the subgettes of Charles that
day whyche they shold^t fyght were confessyd & comuned
wythoute fayllyng by men of the chyrche, which alway
were wyth them. Rolland, whyche knew hys ende by
32 entyer contemplacyon, hys eyen lyfte vp to heuen, &
hys hondes loyned^t, al stratched^t in the medowe, began
to say thus: “Fayre lord^t god^t, my maker, my redemour,
sone of the glorious moder of comforte, thou knowest

but Ganelon per-
suades him that
Roland is hunt-
ing.

Roland stretches
himself on the
grass.

Baldwin comes to
him.

Roland asks for
water, but Bald-
win can find none,

and rides off to
fetch Charles.

Roland confesses
himself,

and knowing his
end is near,

commends him-
self to God,

¹ in ij, back.

² orig. lefte

myn entency[o]n, thou knowest what I haue doon for
 praying for mercy the bounte that is in the. by thy grete mercy of
 whiche thou art enuyronned, by the grace whyche in
 through the the haboundeth, by the meryte of thy passyon, holy 4
 merits of Christ, and bytter, with a good and humble hert I requyre the
 y^t tofore the thys day my faul^{tes}, synnes, and ygnor-
 aunces may be pardoned to me, and take noo regarde
 to the trespasses that I haue doon to the; but beholde 8
 that I deye for the, and in the fayth that thou hast
 ordeyned. remembre that thou hengest on the tree of
 the crosse for the synnars, and so as thou hast redemed
 me, I beseeche the that I be not loste. Alas! my maker 12
 god omnypotent, wyth good wylle I departed oute of
 my contreye for to defende thy name, and for to mayn-
 tene crystendom. ¶ Thou knowest that I haue suffred
 many anguysshes of hungre, of thirst, of hete, of colde, 16
 & many mortal woundes. And day and nyght to the,
 my god, I yelde me culpable; I mystrust not thy mercy.
 thou art pyetous; thou art comen for the synnars; thou
 pardonest marye magdelene and the good thief on the 20
 crosse, by cause they retorned vnto the; they were
 synnars as I am; lyke as they dyd I crye the mercy,
 & better yf I coude saye it. thou byheldest how Abra-
 ham was obeyssaunt to the of hys sone ysaac, wherfor 24
 he ferde moche the better; byholde me how I am obe-
 dyent to the commaundements of the chyrehe: I byleue
 in the, I loue the aboue all other, I loue my neyghbour.
 ¶ O good lord, I beseeche the to pardonne & forgyue 28
 alle theym that thys day ben deed in ²my companye,
 & that they may be saued. Also, my maker, I requyre
 the to take hede of the pacyence of Job, for which he
 was moche the better, that I deye here for thirst, and 32
 am allone. I am wounded mortally, and may not helpe
 my self, and take in pacyence alle the sorowe that I
 suffre, and am therwyth content whan it pleaseth the.

and for the dan-
 gers and troubles
 he has gone
 through for the
 Christian religion.

He prays for the
 souls of his com-
 rades.

¹ m ij. back. col. 2.

² m ij.

as al thys is trewe, pardone me, comferte my spyryte,
receyue my soule, and brynge me to reste perdurable."

Whan Rolland had prayed thus, he sette hys handes
4 on hys body, holdyng hys flesshe, and after sayd thre
tymes, ¶ "**Et in carne mea videbo deum saluatorem**
meum," and after layed his handes on hys eyen, and
sayd, "**Et oculi isti conspecturi sunt,** In thys
8 flesshe that I holde I shal see my sauour, and these
eyen shal beholde hym;" and after he sayd that he
sawe thynges celestyal, whyche the eyen of mankynde
myght not see, ne the eeres here, ne the hert thynke,
12 the glorie whyche god hath maad redy to them that
loue hym; and in sayeng, "**In manus tuas, domine,**
commendo spiritum meum," he layed hys armes vpon
hys body in maner of a crosse, & gaf and rendred hys
16 soule to god the xvj kalendes of Juyl.

Then he crosses
his hands on his
breast,

and saying, "Into
thy hands I com-
mend my spirit,"
expires.

¹¶ Of the vysyon of the deth of Roulland',
and' of the sorowe of Charles, and' how
he complayned' hym pyetously, & other
20 maters: capitulo iiij

"**T**He day that Roulland the marter rendred hys
soule vnto god, I, Turpyn, archebysshop of
Raynes, was in the valeye of Rounceyuale, tofore
24 charles the Emperour, and sayd masse for the soules
whyche were passed oute of thys world. And as I
was in the secrete of the masse I was rauysshed, and
herde the aungellys of heuen synge and make grete
28 melodye. And I wist not what it myght be, ne wher-
fore they soo dyd. And as I sawe the aungellys mounte
in to heuen on hye, I sawe comyng a grete legyon of
knyghtes, alle blacke, ageynst me, the whyche bere a
32 praye, wherof they maad grete noyse and desraye.
whan they were tofore me in passyng, I sayd to them

"The day that
Roland died, I,
Turpin,

was celebrating
mass before
Charles,

and in the
'secret' I saw a
vision of black
spirits passing
with great noise,

and I asked them
who they were,

and they told me
of the deaths of
Marsurius and
Roland.

And I told the
vision to Charles,

and, while I was
speaking, came
Baldwin, and told
us of the slaughter
of our men.

And Charles
ordered the army
to return,

and he himself in
front found
Roland dead,

and he wept and
lamented over
him bitterly.

and¹ demaunded¹ who they¹ were, & what they bare.
One of the deuylles ansuerd¹ & sayd¹, ‘we bere the
kyng Marfuryus in to helle, for long a-noon he hath
wel deserued¹ it. And Roulland¹, your trompette, wyth 4
Mychel thaungel & many other in his companye, is
bronz¹t in to Joye perdurable to heuen.’ And as the
masse was fynnysshed¹ I ²recounted¹ to charles the vysyon
whyche I had seen, how thangellys of heuen bare the 8
soule of Roulland¹ in to paradys, & the deuylles bare
the soule of a sarasyn in to helle. Thus, as I sayd
these wordes, baldwyn, whyche rode on Rollandes hors,
cam hastely and said to charles how the crysten men 12
were dede & bytrayed, and¹ how Rolland¹ was hurte,
and¹ in what estate he had lefte hym. Assone as he
had tolde thys, the crye was made thurgh thoost that
euery man shold¹ retorne backe, & there was a grete 16
bruyt. But themperour Charles, to whome thys mater
touched at the hert more than to ony other, auanced¹
hym for to goo thyder; and¹ whan he came he fonde
Rolland expyred¹, hys hondes in crosse vpon hys vysage 20
al stretched¹. And anone Charles fyl down vpon hym,
and¹ began to wepe moche tenderly, smytyng¹ hym on
his vysage, rendyng his clothes, & tormented hys body,
& myght not speke a grete whyle. whan he was re- 24
torned¹ to hym self by ardeur of dylectyon and excercyte
of sorowe, he sayd¹ in thys wyse: ‘O comferte of my
body, honour of frenssh men, suerd of lustyce, spere
that myght not bowe, hawberck that myght not be 28
broken, helme of helthe, resemblyng¹ to Indas³ macha-
beus in prowess, samblant to sampson ⁴in strengthe, &
to Absalon in beaulte! O ryght dere neuw, fayr &
wyse, in batayl ryal! O destroyer of the sarasyns, de- 32
fendour of crysten men, walle of clergie, staffe to
wydowes & of poure orphelins, Releuer of chyrrches,

¹ orig. w hothey.

² m iij, back.

³ orig. Indas

⁴ m iij, back. col. 2.

tonge of trouthe, Mouthe wythout lesyng^t, trewe in al
 Iugement, prynee of bataylle, conduytour of the frendes
 of god, Augmentour of the crysten fayth, & byloned
 4 of euery persone! Alas! why haue I brought the in
 to a straunge contreye? wherfor am I not dede with¹
 the? O Roulland, wherfor leuest thou me heuy &
 sorouful? helas! caytyf that I am, what shal I doo?
 8 Alas! sorouful, whyther shal I goo? I praye to almyghty
 go^d that he conserue the; I requyre thangelis of heuen
 that they be in thy companye; I requyre the marters,
 of whom thou art of the nombre, y^t they wyl receuye
 12 the in to the Ioye perdurable. alway I shal remembre
 the wepyng, alway I shal fele thy departyng, as dauyd
 dyd of natan & of absalon. Alas! Rolland, thou goost
 in to lyf & Ioye perdurable, & leuest me in thys world
 16 sorouful. Thou art in heuen in consolacion, & I am in
 wepynges & tribulacions. Alle the world is euyl con-
 tent of thy deth, & thangellys hath brouzt the in com-
 forte.' In thys manere and otherwyse Charles bewept
 20 and² sorowed his neuue Roulland. And he made hys
 tentys to be sette vp there, for to lodge there al that
 nyght, & dy^d doo make grete fyres and grete lyghtes
 for to wathe the body of Roulland; & after he dy^d
 24 do enoynte hys body with myrre & baulme and other
 thynges aromatiques, for to conserue the body from euyl
 sauour; and his obsequyes were made, & hys entyer-
 ment with grete prayers, offrynges, & almesses in grete
 28 contemplacion."

And he lamented
 over him as David
 over Absalom,

and, after, caused
 his body to be
 embalmed.

¶ How Olyuer was founden slayn, and' of the
 deth of the sarasyns, & of the deth of
 ganellon, whyche was hydous: capitulo v

32 **I**N the morne erly, charles came where the bataylle
 had been with his peple, and there they fonde the
 noble Olyuer stretchyd oute in maner of a crosse,

Next morning the
 bo ly of Oliver is
 found,

¹ orig. thith.

² in iiij.

fastened to four
stakes,
and flayed.

Charles vows he
will never cease
till he has avenged
the death of his
men.

By a miracle the
day continues till
he overtakes the
Saracens, and

slays 4000 of
them.

Then Charles
enquires who was
the traitor.

Thierry accuses
Ganelon.

Charles appoints
a knight to fight
for Ganelon.

Thierry slays him,

whyche was fastned to foure stakes with iiij cordes & sharply bounden, and fro the necke to the nayles or vngles of his feet and handes he was flayn; he was al to-hewen, and shotte & hurte wyth speres, sharp dartes, 4 quarellys, & arowes, & beten wyth staues; he was al to-faissshed and broken. wherfore the crye of many of the crysten began to renewe for the hydous deth of Olyuer, and of many other. wherfore Charles¹sware by 8 god almyghty that he wold neuer cesse tyl that he had founden the sarasyns, & forthwyth he went wyth his hoost & noblesse. and by cause that the paynymys were moche² ferre fro them, god shewed a fayr myracle; 12 For that same day was prolonged thre dayes longe wythout that the sonne remeue³ ony thyng. and they fonde the sarasyns by a ryuer named Ebra in Cezarye, whyche rested them, and ete & dranke at theyr ease, 16 wythout doubtyng of ony thyng. and charles & hys people came vpon them so Impetuously that in a litle whyle there were slayn iiij M sarasyns, and the other fledde & saued them self. Thenne themperour, seyng 20 that he myght goo no ferther, retorned to rounyuale, And began tenquyre vpon the fayt of trayson, and who had doon it, & what man. Thenne he was enformed that Ganellon had made it, and that was the comune 24 oppynyon of them alle. And emonge alle other Thyerry accused and appeled hym of the treason, and that he wold fyght in the quarel. ¶ For Thyerry had knowleche by the sarasyn that rolland had bounden to a tree. 28 The kyng charles ordeyne⁴ a knyght for ganellon, named pynable, to fygt ayenst thyerry. And whan these ij champyons were in the lystes, ³anone pynalle was slayne by Thyerry; and as wel by thys moyen as 32 by other, it appered clerely that ganellon had bytrayed them. wherfore the emperour Charles, wythoute goyng ony ferther, dyd to take iiij grete horses, & made to sytte

¹ m iiij, col. 2.

² orig. moebe.

³ m iiij, back.

on them iiij stronge men, & bonde ganellon to two
 horses by his ij handes, and bonde the two feet to the
 other ij horses, & made hym to be drawn with the one
 4 hors toward y^e eest, & that other toward the weste, that
 other ayenst the southie, and that other toward the
 north. In this maner eche of the hors drewe forth his
 quarter of the body of the parte whyche he was
 8 bounden vnto.

and Charles
 has Ganelon
 drawn in pieces
 by horses.

¶ How after the thynges afore sayd' charles
 gaf thankynges & preysynges to god &
 saynt Denys, & of the constytucions that
 12 he made in fraunce: capitulo vj

WHan thexecueyon was doon of Ganellon and
 executed, charles & hys people cam in to the
 place where the frensshe men had be slayn, &
 16 bygan to knowe theyr parents, frendes, & lordes, for to
 bere them in to halowed place. they caryed somme
 vpon theyr horses; Other salted them wyth salte, for
 to mayntene them to brynge them in to theyr contreye;
 20 Other buryed them in the same place, & ¹ somme bare
 theym on their sholdres. Somme ennoynted them wyth
 oyle and myrre, & somme wyth baulme the best wyse
 they myght. Neuertheles, there were two cymtoyres
 24 or chireheyderdes, ryght deuoute & pryncypally halowed
 emonge the other, whych were sacred and blessyd wyth
 vij bysshops. That one of the cymtoyres was in erles,
 and that othe[r] in burdegale. & Saynt maxymyen of
 28 ays, Saynt Trophyn of arles, poule of nerbonne, Saynt
 Saturyn of Tholouse, saynt fontyn of poytyers, saynt
 Mareel of lymoges, and saynt Eutrope of xayntes had
 sacred and halowed them. In whyche places were
 32 buryed the moost party of the frensshe men slayn and
 destroyed in rounyuade. Themperour dyd do bere

The French army
 attend to their
 dead comrades:

some they bury,
 others they em-
 balm and take
 with them.

Two cemeteries
 are made, one at

Arles, the other
 at Bordeaux,

where the French
 dead are buried.

¹ in iiij. back, col. 2.

Roland is buried
at Blois, at the
Church of St.
Romain.

Oliver and others
are buried at
Bordeaux.

Charles gives all
the land for seven
miles round to the
church of St.
Romain, for the

sake of Roland,

and appoints
masses for the
dead.

At Arles are
buried Samson,
Naymes, and
others.

Constantine's
body is taken to
Rome.

rolland, the glorious marter, vpon two mules couerd
wyth clothes of sylke, honourably vnto bloye, & in the
chyrehe of saynt Romain, the whyche he had edefyed
and founded wyth chanonnes regular, he dyd rychely 4
burye hym, and wyth grete magnyfycence ; & on hye,
ouer his sepulture, he dyd do sette hys swerde, and at
hys feet he dyd do sette his horne of yuorye. Not
wythstondyng, after, the horne was taken awaye and 8
borne to Saynt Seuernyn at bourdeaux. At bourdeaulx
were buryed olyuer & gaudeboy, ¹kyng of Fryse, Ogyer,
kyng of denmark ; and Crestayn, kyng of breytayne ;
Garyn, due of Lorayne, and many other. As for Eafe- 12
rus, kyng of bourdeaulx ; Euglerius, kyng of guyan ;
lambert, kyng of bourges, and galerus reynnaut, with
v M other, charles gaf xij C vneces of siluer of money
that tyme courant, & as moche of talents of gold, & 16
many robes and mete to poure peple, for sauacyon of
their soules. and al the londe seven myle aboute he gaf
to the chyrehe of saynt Romain, and maad it subgette
to that relygion. And al bloye, wyth thappertenautes 20
and the see ayenst the sayd terrytorye, he gaf semblably
to the sayd chyrehe for charyte & loue of Rolland, and
ordeyned it so for ener. and on the day of their pas-
syon he ordeyned that in the same place shold enery 24
yere perpetuelly xxx poure men be fedde and clothed
competently, and thyrty messys songen for them that
there were buryed and entyered, and for alle them that
were dede in spayne for the crysten fayth. In Arles 28
was buryed the counte of lengres ; samson, due of bour-
goyne ; Naymes, due of bauyere ; Arnold de bellandus,
and Albert bourgoynon, and other fyue knyghtes, wyth
ten thousand other moyen peple. Constantyn, pro- 32
uoste of ²Rome, was borne to Rome wyth many other
Romainys, and for y^e remedye of theyr soules them-
perour gaf in arles for almesse xij C vneces of syluer

¹ m v.

² m v, col. 2.

and xij talentes of gold, whyche was worth a grete
somme of gold & syluer courant in that tyme.

¶ How Charles wente in to Almayne, where
4 he deyed' holyly, And of hys deth shewed
to 'Turpyne, and' of hys buryeng' Impery-
ally: capitulo vij

- 8 **A**fter the thynges afore sayd, Themperour Charles Charles goes to Vienna,
and Turpyne, wyth the other, came and passet by
vyenne; & there Turpyne tharchebysshop, a moche
holy man, abode, for he was wery and moche febled
of the payne that he had had for the fayth in spayne. where he leaves Turpin,
12 and Charles wente to parys, & anone after he assemaled
al the nobles and the moost grettest lordes of hys con-
treye, for to establyssh certayn ordynaunces, and for to
gyue thankynges to god & to saynt Denys of the vyc-
16 torye that he had obteyned in his tyme vpon the sara-
syns, paynymys, & myscreauntes. And after that he
had thanked god and saynt denys, and to his chyrche
fast by parys, lyke as saynt Poule thappostle and saynt
20 Clement the pope had¹ doon in tyme passed, he maad
constytueyon entyere that al the kynges of Fraunce
present & to come shold obeye to the pastour that shold
be for y^e tyme of that chyrche, and that neuere kyng¹
24 shold be crowned wythoute the pastour of that chyrche,
ne the bysshop of parys shold not be receyued at Rome
wythout hys consent & comandement. And he gaf
many rychesses to y^e chyrche, & in token that fraunce
28 was gyuen to that chyrche of saynt denys, he ordeyned
that euery possessour in al y^e nacyon of fraunce shold
gyue & be bounden to gyue to the chyrche of saynt
denys, for to edefye & augmente it, iiij pens of money
32 courant yerely & perpetuelly, & al they that shold gyue
it wyth a good wylle, yf they were of bonde & serue

He ordains that
all kings of France
shall be crowned
at St. Denis,

and all bishops
should be subject
to the priest of
that church.

Also that every
person should pay
to it yearly four
pence,

¹ m v, back.

and any bondmen
who paid this
should be free.

He prays for the
souls of his
soldiers.

St. Denis ap-
pears to him,

and declares that
all who pay the
annual pence to
his church, shall
have forgiveness
of their sins.

And this payment
was called the
Frank of St.
Denis,

whence the coun-
try has its name
of France.

condycion, he wold^t they shold be franke & free of con-
dycyon. And^t after anone these thynges ordeyned, he
went & came tofore the body of saynt denys moche
denoutely, & there he prayed the glorious saynt that he 4
wold^t praye vnto our lord Ihesu Cryst, that alle they y^t
were dede of the crysten fayth in the tyme that he had^t
regne^t that they myght be saue^t, and^t that the payne
that they had^t taken my³t be to them the crowne of mar- 8
tyrdom in the glorye perdurable; & in semblable wyse
he prayed for al them that wold^t ¹paye gladly the pens
aforesay^t to his chyrehe. As god^t wold^t, that nyght
folowyng^t saynt denys appyered^t to hym, & sayd to 12
hym in thys manere: "O kyng, vnderstonde me,
knowe thou, that I haue made prayer to god, my maker,
& he hath graunted that alle they that haue been ayenst
the sarasyns with the haue pardon of al theyr trespasses, 16
& that wyllingly shal paye the penyes for the edefy-
cacyon of my chyrehe & augmentyng^t the seruyce of
god^t, they shal haue amendement of lyf and pardon of
theyr synnes." This vysyon on the morne themperour 20
recounted to hys peple, lyke as he had herd, by cause
they shold wyth a good wyll pay the penyes that he
had ordeyned; & he that gaf it was called the franke of
saynt denys, by cause that he was free and^t quyte of al 24
seruage by the commandement of the kyng. After
came the custome that that londe whyche was called
Gallia loste hys name, & was called fraunce, as it is
named^t at thys day, & Fraunce is as moche to say as 28
free of al seruage auenst al peple; and^t therfore the
lordes of Fraunce for this cause emonge al crysten men
owen to be honoured^t & praysed^t.

¹ m v. back, col. 2.

¶ The recapitulacion of alle thys werke, & of
his deth at Acon, & of hys sepulture:
capitulo viij

- 4 ¹ **T**He kyng Charles contynued gloriously his lyf
in vertuouse operacyons, And whan he felte the
declyne of hys lyf he went vnto Acon, where he
had tofore doon moche good, & enobled a chyrche of
8 our lady the rounde, the whyche he dyd do make, and
gaf therto grete tresour of relyques of bodyes of sayntes,
of gold & syluer, of clothes of sylke, & other precy-
sytees meruayllous, and there he deyed in the yere of
12 hys age lxxij. & for the magnyfycence of hys werkes
he was called charles the grete; & he had iij sones
thezme lyuyng, of whom the fyrst was named Charles,
the second Pepyn, & the thyrd Lowys; & also he had
16 iij daughters, that one was named Rotrudys, that other
berga, & the thyrd gylla. & whan he knewe that he
myght noo longer lyue, hys sone lowys, whome he had
ordeyned for special lone kyng of guyan, he lefte to
20 hym the mageste Imperyal. For to knowe the holynes
& the glorious ende of Charles, & how he was saued in
heuen, and renomed an holyman, The deuoute Turpyn,
archebysshop of Raynes, sayth in this manere, “I Tur-
24 pyn, archbyshop of Raynes, was in vyenne in the
chyirche tofore thaulter, & was rauysshed in sayeng the
psalm, ‘**Deus in adiutoryum** ² **meum intende.**’ I sawe
a compagne of blacke peple lyke Ethyopyens, whych
28 were in quantyte Innumerable, whyche went toward
lorayne; and I sawe one tofore hys felowes, & I de-
maunded hym whyther al they wente. the whyche,
beyng constrayned to ansuere, sayd, ‘we alle goo to
32 Acon to the dethe of Charles, whyche lyeth a-dyeng.
And we wyl see yf we may haue hys soule for to bere
in to helle to perpetuel dampnacyon.’ Thenne I sayd

Charles retires to
Acon,

where he dies at
the age of 72,

leaving three sons

and three daugh-
ters.

His youngest son,
Louis, succeeds
him.

Turpin, at Vienna,

sees a vision of
devils,

who tell him of
the death of
Charles, and that
they mean to have
his soul.

¹ m vj.

² orig. adiutoryum.

³ m vj, col. 2.

to hym, 'I adiure the by the vertue of the name of
our Lord Ihesu cryst that, wythoute fayllyng, after that
ye haue doon, that thou retorne by me.'" Anone after,
The devils return, or he coude fynyshe hys psalme, the deuylles cam 4
retournyng ageyn in the same ordre that they wente.
"And thenne I sayd to hym that I had spoken to by-
fore, 'what haue ye doon there as ye haue been?'
and tell him that St. James pro-
duced so many
good works done
by Charles, that that same deuyl ansuerd, that 'James of galyce, frende 8
to charles, hath ben moche contrarye to vs, for whan
we were redy for to receyue hys soule, and had egally
departed his good dedes and his euyl, he brought so
many stones & tymbre of chyrches, whyche he had doo 12
make in the name of hym, that his good dedes sur-
mounted moche his euyl dedes, wherfore we myght
haue noo thyng ne parte;' & thys sayd, the deuyl
they cannot have
his soul. ¹vanysshed away," & soo he loste hys vysyon. Thus 16
Charles, in the moneth of feuaryere, rendred his soule
to god holyly. For after that he returned fro spayn he
dyd but languyshe & appayre in hys body toward his
deth; & in hys ende he ordeyned many almesses, & 20
to say many masses & psaulters. And the vysyon that
the glorious archebysshop Turpyn sawe, is sygnyfy-
cacion that he whyche maynteneth and edefyeth
chyrches in thys present world, that he maketh pre- 24
paracyon of hys syge in heuen. His sepulture was
moche honourable emonge al the sepultures of the world,
noble and ryche excellently, and so fayr that it myzt
not be amended. and ouer hys tombe was maad an 28
arche of gold & syluer and of precyous stones, com-
prysed by grete seyence. & thyder came Leo the pope,
accompanied wyth prynces Romainys, archebyssshops,
byssshops, Abbottes, Dukes, Erles, and many other 32
lordes, and dyd do make a fayre representacyon of the
body of Charles, clad rychely and Imperyally with a
fayre crowne of gold sette on his hede, & satte vpon

¹ in vj. back.

a chayer of gold¹ moche fayre and shynyng², and³ resembled wel a notable Iuge lyuyng. and they sette vpon his knees notably the texte of the four gospels in 4 fayre letters ¹of gold², & wyth the ryzt hande he helde the lettre, & in the lyfte hande he helde the ceptre Imperial, moche ryche; & by cause the heed³ shold not encline to eyther syde, hit was vnder set wyth a chayne 8 of gold & susteyned. And³ the crowne that was on hys heed³ raught to the arche, whiche was al aboue wel made, & the conduytes of the sepulture were replenysshed with al good odours aromatyques & precyous, and³ after 12 closed & shette moche subtylly, & honourably kepte, as it was wel worthy for to be doon.

On his knees
were placed the
Gospels,

and in his left
hand the acceptre.

¶ Thexcusacyon of thauctour. ix

16 **T**His werke, accomplysshed to the playsyr of god¹ tofore wryton, conteyneth thre bookes, by the 16 chapytres deuyded, as it appereth openly to the reders, and I haue made them thre, after that I haue compryse² in the separacyon and³ deuydyng² of the 20 matyer. Of whyche the fyrst book speketh of the begynnyng² of fraunce, and³ of the fyrst crysten kyng² of fraunce, whyche was named³ Cloys by the moyen of his wyf clotildys, in descendyng to kyng² Pepyn, fader of 24 themperour Charles, In the honour of whome thys book is composed² for the moost parte; to the whyche Pepyn the lygnage of ²kyng² Cloys took an ende in successyon of the Royalme of Fraunce. And³ the sayd² fyrst book 28 sayth, more ouer, how Charles was nourrysshed, of hys corpulence, of hys etyng², of hys strengthe, of hys seynce, & other werkes of magnyfycence. The second² book speketh of the bataylle that Olyuer dyd² ayenst 32 Fyerabras, the meruayllous geaunte, sone of ballant, Admyral of spayne, a puyssaunt kyng²; & al the fyrst parte of the second book is attrybuted² to noble olyuer,

This work contains three books, divided into chapters.

The first book tells of the beginning of France,

and of the youth of Charles.

The second book, of the duel between Oliver and Fierabras.

¹ m vj, back, col. 2.

² m vij.

The third book
treats of the con-
quest of Spain by
Charles,

of the treason of
Ganelon,

and the death of
Charles.

and in the honour of hym. After ye shal fynde how
the peres of fraunce were deteyned in Aygremore and
put in surete, & after saued fynably by florypes, the
curtoys doughter of the sayd ballant; And the holy 4
relyques recouered, and other maters of grete mer-
uaylles. The iij book speketh how, by reuelacyon of
saynt Iames, charles went and conquerd spayne &
galyce, where as he dyd operacions vertuous, & made 8
constytucyons of sauacyon, wyth many bataylles doon
by hym and hys subgettes; and fynably of the trayson
of Ganelon, by the whyche the deth of Rolland was
pyetous, the deth of Olyuer dolorouse, and of the other 12
peres of crysten knyghtes slayn & dede. And fynably
the deth of Charles themperour, as tofore is sayd and
wryton. and ¹after that ony persone wyl here or rede
of thys matere, the table made atte begynnyng shal 16
shewe it to hym lyghtly, yf it be hys playsyr to here or
rede of y^e werk in thys book composed.

¶ Thenuoye of thauctour: ca.

x

This work I have
written to be a
good example to
all,
how to rule their
lives.

AS I haue sayd at the begynnyng of thys present 20
werke, the escriptures and feates somme haue
ben reduced in wrytyng for to be in memorye,
to the ende that they that haue doon wel, be to vs
ensaumple in ensyewyng and folowyng them, & they 24
that haue doon euyl may be cause to rewle our lyf for
to come to the porte of helthe. For the comune vnder-
stondyng is more contente to reteyne parables and
examples for the ymagynacion locall, than to symple 28
auctoryte, the whyche is reteyned by vnderstondyng,
and also semblably thystories spekyng of our lord
Ihesu cryst, of hys myrales, & of his vertuous sub-
gettes, euery man ouzt gladly to here and retenne them. 32
& it is so, that at the requeste of the sayd venerable

And I have made
it at the request

- man to fore nameð. Maister henry bolounyer. chanonne
of lausanne, I haue been Ineyteð to translate & reduyse
in prose in to Frensshe the mater tofore reduced. as
4 moche as toucheth the fyrst & the thyrd ¹book I haue
taken & drawen oute of a book nameð myrrour hys-
toryal for the moost parte; & the second book I haue
onely reduced it out of an olde romaunce in frensshe.
8 And without other Informacyon than of the same book,
I haue reduced it in to prose, substancyally wythout
faylyng, by ordynauce of chapytres & partyes of the
sayð book, after the mater in the same conteyned.
12 And yf in al thys book I haue mesprysed or spoken
otherwyse than good langage, substancyally ful of good
vnderstandyng to al makers & clerkes, I demaunde
correxyon and amendement, and of the defaultes par-
16 don. For yf the penne hath wryton euyl, the hert
thought it neuer, but entended to say wel; & also my
wytte & vnderstandyng. whyche is ryght lytel, can not
vttre ne wryte thys matere withoute errour. Neuer-
20 theles, who so vnderstandeth wel the lettre shal wel
compryse myn entencyon, by which he shal fynde
nothyng but moyen for to come to saluacyon. To the
whyche may fynably come alle they that wyllingly
24 rede, or here, or do thys book to be redde. Amen.

of Master Bolo-
myer,
Canon of Lau-
sanne.

The first and third
book I haue trans-
lated from the
*Speculum His-
toriale*, and the
second from an
old French
romance.

I pray all who
may find a fault
in it to pardon it,

and attribute to
my want of learn-
ing, not my good
will.

- ¶ And by cause I, Wylliam Caxton, was desyred
& requyred by a good & synguler frend of myn,
Maister wylliam dau²beny, one of the tresorers of the
28 Iewellys of the noble & moost crysten kyng, our na-
turel and souerayn lord, late of noble memorye, kyng
Edward the fourth, on whos soule Ihesu haue mercy.
To reduce al these sayð hystories in to our Englysshe
32 tongue, I haue put me in deuoyr to translate thys sayð
book, as ye heretofore may se al a-longe and pl[a]yn,
prayeng alle them that shal rede, see, or here it, to

And I, William
Caxton, haue, at

the instance of
Sir W. Daubeny,

translated this
book into English

And I pray all to

¹ m vij. back.

² m vij. back. col. 2.

excuse my rude
translation, and
forgive the faults
they may find.

And this work I
finished on the
18th June, in the
year of our Lord,
1483.

pardon me of thys symple & rude trans[1]acyon and
reducyng^t, bysechyng^t theym that shal fynde faute to
correcte it, & in so doying they shal deserue thankynges,
& I shal praye god^t for them, who brynge them and me, 4
after this short and transytorye lyf, to euerlastyng^t
blysse. Amen. the whyche werke was fynysshed^t in
the reducyng of hit in to englysshe, the xviij day of
Iuyn, the second^t yere of kyng^t Rychard^t the thyrd^t, 8
And the yere of our lord^t MCCCC lxxxv, And^t enprynted^t
the fyrst day of decembre, the same of our lord^t, & the
fyrst yere of kyng Harry the senenth.

¶ Explicit *per* William Caxton.

NOTES.

Page 1, line 12. "hye hystories:" Fr. *histoires haultaines*.

p. 1, l. 13. Fr. *lentement comun est mieulx content a retenir pour la ymaginacion locale, a la quelle il est subzmis*.

p. 1, l. 15. "gladly:" Fr. *volontiers*.

p. 2, l. 9. Fr. *peult estre que je ieusse bien este informe*.

p. 2, l. 11. See *Introduction*.

p. 2, l. 27. The "*Book of the noble Hystories of Kyng Arthur and of certeyn of his Knyghtes*, reduced into English by Syr Thomas Malory, Knyght, and by Mr. William Caxton, deuyded into xxi bookes, chapytred and empynted in the abbey westmestre;" was printed also in 1485, folio. It is a book of the greatest rarity. There is a perfect copy in Earl Jersey's library, at Osterley Park, and an imperfect one, wanting four leaves, in the library of Earl Spencer. It was reprinted by Wynkyn de Worde in 1498, folio, and an unique copy of this reprint is also in Earl Spencer's library. "*The last Siege and Conqueste of Jherusalem*," which gives the account of Godfrey of Bullogne, appeared in 1481.

p. 16, l. 22. "the people is boystous & furious, &c.:" Fr. *celluy peuple est austere et furieulx, et, que pis est, sans memoire de dieu*.

p. 17, l. 16. "guarysshed and hool:" Fr. *gary*.

p. 17, l. 33. "and wepte—sayd:" Fr. *plourer moult largement en grant pitie va dire, &c.*

p. 18, l. 11. Fr. *Pour quoy toy comme vray dieu et seigneur ie te requiers, comme ie ne desire croire quen toy fermement: par ta haultaine puissance ie demande*.

p. 19, l. 27. [he]: the pronoun is unnecessarily inserted here: throughout the book the subject is constantly omitted in secondary clauses, where the person or thing spoken of is the same as in the principal sentence. See *Sege off Melayne*, l. 27, and note.

p. 19, l. 31. "audentykly:" Fr. *auctentiquement*.

p. 19, l. 32. "frentes:" clearly an error for "fontes:" the Fr. reads, *composer baptitoires couenablement*.

p. 21, l. 23. "put hym self in relygyon:" that is, became a recluse, devoted himself to religion: Fr. *se mist en religion*.

p. 26, l. 11. "cont[r]ye:" Fr. *pais*.

p. 26, l. 24. "wel a poynte:" Fr. *bien a pointe*.

- p. 27, l. 4. "as touchyng the pytaunce:" as regards his share at dinner: Fr. *quant a la pitance*.
- p. 27, l. 12. "iij hors shoen:" the Fr. original adds, *venans de la forge*.
- p. 29, l. 1. "to hym:" we should here insert "he doeth," according to the reading of the French original, *ou fait*.
- p. 29, l. 12. "frequented:" constantly studied: Fr. *frequentoit*.
- p. 29, l. 26. "moche ample & boystous:" Fr. *moult ample et robuste*.
- p. 29, l. 30. "he etc not for the moost parte, &c.:" Fr. *ne mengoit pour le plus que de quatre metz, si non de la venoison rostie*.
- p. 32, l. 21. "he enclosed in Iustyce:" Fr. *soies enclos en iustee*.
- p. 33, l. 19. The original French runs: *ilz se vont trouver en vng grant bois quon ne pouoit passer a mains de deux iours encores a grant paine, et charles le pensoit passer en vng iour*. The meaning evidently is that the wood was so extensive that they could not pass through it in two days, and even then with great difficulty.
- p. 34, l. 1. Psalm exix. 35.
- p. 34, l. 15. "after in the same contreye, &c.:" Fr. *depuis sont veus ces oyceaulx*.
- p. 34, l. 24. In the original, *Constan'ynople*.
- p. 37, l. 1. "moment." The original reading is *au mouuement quon tira*. The French *mouuement* is evidently a mistake.
- p. 37, l. 30. "And it was ordeyned, &c.:" Fr. *il est ordonne que ou moys de iuing a uys la cite tous les ans on deust venir recoir, &c.*
- p. 38, l. 23. "after that I shal mowe, &c.:" Fr. *selon que ien pourray concepuoir*.
- p. 39, l. 4. "of rome:" orig. *a rome*.
- p. 39, l. 9. "adiouste:" add. Fr. *adioidre*. On the word *adjust*, as representing the two Latin forms *adjutare* and *adjustare*, see Dr. Murray's paper in the *Philological Society's Transactions*, 1880.
- p. 39, l. 10. "I have not founde in the book competent:" this, unintelligible in itself, is explained by the original French, which reads, *ou liure competent*, the last word meaning containing.
- p. 39, l. 20. See the different lists of the douzeperes, as given in the various romances in my note to *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 259, where the list given as that found in the *Sowdane of Babyloyn* should be read as that of the original French version in the Grenville copy, 10531. The names given in the *Sowdane* will be found in Dr. Hansknecht's Introduction to his edition of that romance, p. xxvii. For the names in *Roland* and *Otuel*, see my edition, note to l. 688.
- p. 40, l. 30. Compare *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 78.
- p. 41, l. 13. "as euyl and olde:" Fr. *comme mauuais viellart*.
- p. 41, l. 33. "that I be fugytyf:" Fr. *ie soie fugi*.
- p. 42, l. 22. "quasi hurt, &c.:" hurt almost to the death.
- p. 42, l. 27. These exploits are related in the *Sowdane of Babyloyn*, pp. 4 *et seq.*
- p. 46, l. 19. "cremeur:" in the original the same.

- p. 46, l. 20. "as," read [h]as[t]: Fr. *qui as*.
- p. 48, l. 14. "At nede a man knoweth hys frende." See the *Gesta Romanorum*, p. 131.
- p. 48, l. 20. See note to *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 988.
- p. 48, l. 28. "took to hym." The original adds, *qui estoit estachie a dix riches cloux de fin or*.
- p. 49, l. 22. "lodgyce:" Fr. *logis*.
- p. 50, l. 3. "oute of mesure:" so outrageous in his conduct and language. "At thys houre, &c.:" Fr. *de cette heure ie vous ottoie*.
- p. 50, l. 18. "Andrewe:" Fr. *Andrieu*, does not appear again in the present or any other account of the treason at Roncesvalles, so far as I am aware.
- p. 50, l. 21. Compare the corresponding passages in *Sir Ferumbras*, ll. 310 *et seq.*, and the notes.
- p. 50, l. 33. "secretly:" Fr. *comme entre ses dens*. Cf. *Sir Ferumbras*, 322.
- p. 51, l. 24. "the kyng had gyuen to hym hys gloue in sygne of lycence." The usual mode of giving permission to undertake a duel: compare *Roland and Otuel*, l. 1366, and the *Song of Roland*, l. 482, and notes.
- p. 51, l. 31. "where shal I become:" what will become of me? See Prof. Skeat's note to *P. Plowman*, B. v. 651.
- p. 52, l. 22. "he settet nought by hym:" took no thought or heed of him.
- p. 53, l. 9. "or:" I have corrected the reading in accordance with the original, which has *ou*.
- p. 54, l. 18. Compare *Chanson de Roland*, 376. "*Jamais n'iert hum qui encuntre lui vaillet*."
- p. 55, l. 26. "thou art departed of a lowe hous:" Fr. *tu es bien de basse main party*.
- p. 56, l. 12. "of the rounde table." An addition of the translator.
- p. 56, l. 20. "I trowe thou be hurte." Not in the original.
- p. 56, l. 27. "flagons:" *barilz*: "botelles" in the *Sowdan*, l. 1185: "costrel" in *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 510, on which see note and Introd., p. xii; at p. 60, l. 6, below, they are called "barylles."
- p. 57, l. 21. "Termagaunt:" Fr. *Talugaunt*.
- p. 57, l. 30. "goddes:" the reading has been corrected on the authority of the original, which has *dieule*.
- p. 58, l. 28. "lether of arabye:" Fr. *cuir de capadoce*.
- p. 59, l. 3. "to the regarde of hys persone:" *i. e.* in comparison with himself.
- p. 59, l. 11. "I suppose:" *i. e.* I am sure.
- p. 59, l. 18. "grabam." The names of *Ferumbras'* swords are not given in *Sir Ferumbras* or the *Sowdan*, but in the verse *Fierabras* are said to have been *Plorance*, *Baptism*, and *Garbain*.
- p. 59, l. 23. ["I wyl saye:"] omitted also in the original, but plainly needed.

- p. 59, l. 25. In the verse *Fierabras* the names appear as *Galans*, *Munificans*, and *Aurisas*.
- p. 59, l. 33. The verse *Fierabras* gives the names of the swords made by Munificans as *Durendal*, *Musaguine*, and *Courtain*.
- p. 60, l. 6. "barylles." See p. 56, l. 27, and note.
- p. 60, l. 8. "bendede:" bound, banded: Fr. *benle*.
- p. 61, l. 12. "seen:" i. e. seeing, considering.
- p. 61, l. 35. "thou remembrest:" Fr. *tu taises*, i. e. thou thinkest of.
- p. 62, l. 18. "ytterance:" Fr. *a oultrance*.
- p. 62, l. 23. "at this stroke:" Fr. *a cestuy cop*.
- p. 62, l. 34. "bowede and entrede:" Fr. *pliez et entrez*.
- p. 63, l. 1. "tronchonne:" Fr. *troncnee*, i. e. broken to pieces.
- p. 63, l. 5. "in a grete whyle:" Fr. *dune grant peece*, i. e. for a great while.
- p. 63, l. 12. "made:" an instance of the omission of the subject pronoun *he* before the verb. See p. 19, l. 27, and note.
- p. 64, l. 4. "he was bowed afterwarde:" Fr. *par derriere*.
- p. 64, l. 14. "playe:" the regular technical term for fencing or fighting with swords. Thus the *Catholicon Anglicum* has: "a Bucler plaer, *gladiator*; a Bucler playnge, *gladiatura*. þ^e Swerde & y^e bucler (bukiller A.) playnge, *gladiatura*." In the *Ancien Rivele*, p. 212, we have the expression "*pleieð mid sweordes*." See further in my notes in the *Catholicon*.
- p. 64, l. 32. "reioye:" Fr. *resioyr*.
- p. 66, ll. 7-32. Caxton carefully distinguishes between *you* and *ye*: the former never being used for the nominative.
- p. 68, l. 21. "made a lytel course:" ran away a little distance.
- p. 68, l. 24. There is no mention of Oliver's drinking any of the balm in *Sir Ferumbras* or the *Sowdan*. See Dr. Hausknecht's note to the latter, l. 1191.
- p. 68, l. 29. "beyngt nyghe vnto a grete ryuer, &c." See note 1 in Introduction to *Sir Ferumbras*, p. xii.
- p. 69, l. 12. ["he:"] the omission of the subject pronoun frequently causes ambiguity when two persons are spoken of: the [he] here, of course, refers to Oliver's horse.
- p. 69, l. 16. "aboue:" Fr. *oultre*, i. e. out of, away from.
- p. 69, l. 20. For number of chapter given as "viij" read "xijj."
- p. 71, l. 11. "tenestre:" read "terrestre."
- p. 71, l. 21. "Longyns." On the legend of *Longinus*, see Prof. Skeat's notes to *P. Plowman*, C. xxi. 82—90.
- p. 71, l. 31. "thou." Here the singular pronoun is used rightly as in a prayer addressed directly to our Lord: in the previous lines *you* and *ye* were used, as they were not of the character of a prayer.
- p. 72, l. 6. "for hys gloryous medytaeyon." In the original French, *par glorieux meditacion*. "Nenertheles:" Fr. *touttefois*.
- p. 72, l. 16. "soo coneytous in smytyng:" Fr. *conuoiteule et affoibly*.
- p. 72, l. 17. "a-slepe:" i. e. numbed. Fr. *endormie*.

- p. 72, l. 19. "at vitteraunce:" *a oultrance*: comp. p. 62, l. 18.
- p. 73, l. 8. "for to apoynte wyth the:" Fr. *te faire vne pache*.
- p. 74, l. 5. "vylete:" Fr. *ville*.
- p. 74, l. 12. "matte." In the original the same. See *Sir Ferumbras*, ll. 2506, 2590, and Glossary.
- p. 75, l. 20. "whyche he brake and al to-frussched euyl:" Fr. *eassa et rompi mallement*.
- p. 76, l. 5. "and ranne vpon hym:" Fr. *et se coururent*. The succeeding passage is awkwardly expressed in the translation. The original reads: *et fut premierement frappe Oliuer sur son escu par telle fierte, qu'au prez le poinz de Oliuer a mis en pieces son escu*, which is not much better. The *he*, of course, is *Ferumbras*.
- p. 78, l. 16. "enforeckel:" exerted. Compare *Sir Ferumbras*, 782—
"Pan Firumbras enforecede hym þer to arise vp-on ys fete."
- p. 79, l. 18. "a faus dart:" Fr. *ung faulx dart*. Properly a hand-bill. See *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 966, and note—
"falsarz an feberd dart."
- The expression occurs again, p. 81, l. 28, below.
- p. 79, l. 20. "crapauld:" Fr. *crapaulx*, a toad.
- p. 80, l. 72. "a pynapple tree:" a pine or fir-tree. The *Catholicon Anglicum* gives: "a Pyne tre (A Pyne Appyltre A.); *pinus* (*pinum fructus eius* A.)." *Apple* was the ordinary word for the cones of the pine or fir. Lyte, Dodocens, p. 769, speaking of the pine, says: "his fruite is great Boulleans or bawles of a browne chesnut colour, and are called *pine-apples*." See other instances in my note in the *Catholicon*.
- p. 81, l. 12. "by force of shotte and of strokes." Altered on the authority of the original, which reads: "*a force de coup et de trais*."
- p. 81, l. 28. "faus dartes." See p. 79, l. 18, and note.
- p. 82, l. 6. "it is goodk to wete:" this does not at all convey the meaning of the original, which runs: *sans le dire se peult entendre*.
- p. 82, l. 15. The omission of the pronoun before making makes the sentence rather awkward.
- p. 82, l. 27. "Amandys:" Fr. *Amandis*.
- p. 82, l. 35. In the *Sowdone* it is Roland and Oliver that are captured: see Dr. Hausknecht's note to l. 1433.
- p. 83, l. 9. "wente doun of a mountayn." In *Sir Ferumbras*, 984:
"at aualyng of an hulle."
- p. 83, l. 20. "morfounded:" Fr. *morfondus*, lit. chilled, affected by cold.
- p. 84, l. 31. "ones:" at some time or other.
- p. 85, l. 10. "Turpyñ." For an account of this celebrated Knight-Bishop, see Dr. Hausknecht's note to the *Sowdone*, l. 1711.
- p. 85, l. 19. "sercheden:" compare *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 1093-4.
"is wounde to *enserche* and saye.

At is heste þey wente þer-to & softe gunne *taste* is wounde."

- p. 86, l. 3. "ballant thadmyral." Laban in the *Sowdone* throughout.

- p. 86, l. 32. "sythe." By using this word to render the original *puis*, Caxton has made the whole sentence almost unintelligible. It should run: "O brullant of mommyere, what is betyd of the noble kyng of Cordube and of my neuewe bruchart, and also of my sone fyerabras, the ledar and captayn of all?"
- p. 87, l. 6. "knyght:" Fr. *demoiseau*.
- p. 87, l. 15. In the *Sowdone* the French knights tell their true names.
- p. 87, l. 30. "yemau:" Fr. *vassal*.
- p. 88, l. 10. "brullant:" in the *Sowdone*, 1512, it is Floripas who advises her father to imprison the Frenchmen, not to slay them.
- p. 89, l. 3. "strayt:" Fr. *estroite*.
- p. 89, l. 6. See note to p. 79, l. 20.
- p. 89, l. 29. "put vnder by fals fortune:" Fr. *soubmis a faule fortune*.
- p. 89, l. 31. "what I make": Fr. *que ie fays*, i. e. what I am doing, how I fare.
- p. 90, l. 11. Compare the description of Floripas as given in *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 5789, *et seq.*
- p. 90, l. 28. "whyche was made of one of the fayrye:" Fr. *faicte dune fae*.
- p. 91, l. 1. Caxton's translation of Raoul Lefevre's *Jason* was printed in 1477 (Blades). Several copies are still in existence.
- p. 91, l. 11. "doughter:" Fr. *la fille*.
- p. 91, l. 26. "Anone florypes had enuye to here hym speke:" Fr. *cult enue les oyr parler*, i. e. had a great desire to hear them speak.
- p. 91, l. 31. "dyschoneste:" Fr. *inhonnestete*.
- p. 91, l. 32. "on that other syde:" *i. e.* on the other hand, again.
- p. 92, l. 21. "charlemayus:" evidently a misprint for "charlemayne," and not a genitive case.
- p. 92, l. 35. "for to meddle wyth:" Fr. *pour vous mesler* = to engage.
- p. 93, l. 3. "wel ferre for to be oute:" *i. e.* very far from being out. Perhaps we should read "wel ferre *fro* to be oute."
- p. 93, l. 18. "ye can wel playe with maydens, &c." Compare the corresponding passage in *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 1303, and Dr. Hausknecht's note to the *Sowdone*, l. 1723.
- p. 93, l. 29. "a corde & a staffe." In *Sir Ferumbras*, 1308, Floripas sends for "anuyt, tange, & slegge." The *Sowdan* agrees with Caxton, for in l. 1647 we are told that she
 "a rope to hem lete down goon
 That aboveñ was teyde faste."
- p. 94, l. 13. "a gardyn pretoyre:" Fr. *avoit ung pretoire*, i. e. an enclosed yard or space.
- p. 94, l. 27. "camuse:" flat-nosed. See note to *Sir Ferumbras*, 4437, and Glossary.
- p. 94, l. 35. "varlet:" a repetition of the original French word.
- p. 95, l. 27. "ye be here in surete as ferre as no man hath herde vs." This hardly conveys the meaning of the original, which runs: *se*

daunture quelque, i. e. so long as, or, provided that no man hath heard us.

p. 95, l. 28. "I am not in doubte:" Fr. *en aultre doubte*, i. e. fear.

p. 96, l. 5. "when my fader the admyral destroyed Rome." See my Introduction to *Sir Ferumbras*, p. xii, and Dr. Hausknecht's edition of the *Sowdan*, Introd.

p. 96, l. 6. "lucafar;" in the French versions of the romance *Lucifer* throughout.

p. 97, l. 1. "damage:" Fr. *dommaige*.

p. 97, l. 4. The French reads: *et plusieurs aultres terriennes victoires*.

p. 97, l. 6. "deteynecl:" Fr. *detenu*.

p. 97, l. 30. "Rolland." In the *Sowdone*, l. 1668, it is Guy whom Charles orders first to go on the message to Balan. See Introduction, and Dr. Hausknecht's note to l. 1665.

p. 98, l. 33. "cosyn." Guy was Charles's nephew: see *Sir Ferumbras*, 1922, 2091, &c., and see Dr. Hausknecht's note to the *Sowdone*, l. 1888.

p. 99, l. 7. "lese:" destroy. Fr. *perdre*.

p. 101, l. 15. "and:" if.

p. 102, l. 5. Comparing p. 183, l. 32, it is clear that we should read "he behelde." On Durandal, see note to *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 988, and the *Sowdone*, l. 875.

p. 102, l. 7. "descerkled:" cut off the circle or band of gold worn round the helmet. Compare *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 622, and note, and the corresponding passage in the *Sowdone*, l. 1182, and Dr. Hausknecht's note.

p. 103, l. 29. "Ogyer:" in *Sir Ferumbras* it is Richard of Normandy who gives the account of Mantribe, which he was able to do, because, as we learn, "he knew all the cost."

p. 105, l. 7. "he hath quytte his contreye of fals peple." There can be little doubt that we should read "he hath not quytte."

p. 107, l. 14. "Naymes": in *Sir Ferumbras*, Roland: the *Sowdone* agrees with our text, see l. 1821.

p. 108, l. 23. "with his berde florysshed." Compare *Roland and Otuel*, 82; where Naymes, describing Charles, says:

"He sittes his duspers Imange,
With white berde large and lange
Faire of flesche & felle.
With a floreschede thonwange,
Oure noble kynge þat es so strange,
His doghety men imelle."

p. 113, l. 25. "enterbraced eche other & kyssed:" Fr. *se font baisser et accoller*.

p. 116, l. 27. "gloutons." Cf. *Sir Ferumbras*, 1634, 3841, &c.

p. 118, l. 26. Compare the account of the game "at the coal," given in the *Sowdone*, ll. 1999—2003. In it Lucifer burns the beard of Naymes, who at once kills him.

- p. 119, l. 8. "thou wendest to haue made me to muse in thy folyes:" Fr. *tu me cuidas il na pas gaires bon faite musier en tes folies.*
- p. 119, l. 17. "no more charge to playe:" Fr. *na plus cure de ioeur.*
- p. 120, l. 7. "put you in poynte:" Fr. *mis en point* = arm yourselves completely.
- p. 120, l. 28. "whyche was wel appoynted, &c.:" Fr. *trestien appareille tantost fut par terre verse.*
- p. 121, p. 18. Fr. *tousiours a la cue dung viel chien vous tenez.*
- p. 122, l. 23. "Marpyn:" in the *Sowdone*, Mapyne; in *Sir Ferumbras*, l. 2387, Maubyn.
- p. 123, l. 23. "he came so wel to poynte, &c.:" slightly different in the French, *il vient la bien a point, car le larron.*
- p. 124, l. 29. "hyr spouse that shold be:" Fr. *son espouse aduenir.* Compare p. 134, l. 27.
- p. 128, l. 11. "doubted:" feared. Fr. *redoubte.*
- p. 129, l. 13. "wente in theyr repayre:" went on their way back. Fr. *alloient en leur repaire.*
- p. 130, l. 18. "leste not for to be forthwith quartred, &c.:" he did not hesitate, though he should be at once cut to pieces. In the French, *et pour estre esquarterelle presentement il ne se fust tenu quil ne prist celluy sarrazin.*
- p. 130, l. 23. "whyche wyth theyr feet and handes al to-bete hym in suehe wyse, &c.:" Fr. *que des pies que des mains ilz le vont tant battre* = both with hands and feet they beat him, &c. Compare the corresponding passage in *Syr Ferumbras*, p. 90, l. 2790, and note.
- p. 133, l. 19. "so hardy and oute of mesure:" Fr. *si hardis et des-mesurez.*
- p. 134, l. 27. "hir loue and tocomyng husbond:" Fr. *son espouse aduenir.* Compare p. 124, l. 29.
- p. 134, l. 31. "Truste ye none other, &c.:" be sure of this only, that if he die I shall leap out of the wyndowe, &c. Fr. *ne vous fies point que sil meurt.*
- p. 136, l. 11. "a morel of grete faeyon:" Fr. *morceau de grant fasson.*
- p. 136, l. 19. "after that he was recoured:" as soon as he had recovered himself. Fr. *aprez quil se fut recouure.*
- p. 136, l. 32. "Inconuenyents:" Fr. *inconueniens* = damage.
- p. 137, l. 31. "cryed to hym wyth an hye voys, &c.:" Fr. *luy cria a haulte voix quil luy pluist de la venir baisier, en disant que selle riuoit pour la prouesse des barons que son pere ludmiral seroit rne ffoys en son dangier.* The whole passage is very obscure, nor does the corresponding line in *Sir Ferumbras* help much to make it any clearer.
- p. 142, l. 3. "at vtteraunce:" Fr. *a oultrance* = exceedingly.
- p. 142, l. 7. "esmaye you nothyng yet:" Fr. *ne vous esmaies encore.*
- p. 142, l. 12. "beurage:" Fr. *beuraige*, a draught.
- p. 142, l. 30. "For they sawe parte of the walles, &c.:" Fr. *car ilz venient a terre ruer les murailles principalles du chateau.*

- p. 143, l. 25. "be ye . . ne wroth ayenst Mahon:" in the *Sowdone* Balan smashes Mahound.
- p. 144, l. 15. "the freushe men purpose to dystrouble vs at our souper:" Fr. *les francoys nous veullent faire refroidier notre soupper* = wish to make our supper cold.
- p. 145, l. 1. "wherfor of veray force the other paynims must re-torne:" Fr. *pourquoy force fut aux aultres*, &c.
- p. 145, l. 25. "sythe he is a man of auctoryte:" Fr. *puis quil est homme de audience*.
- p. 147, l. 5. "abandoned hym self to goo:" offered himself, volunteered.
- p. 147, l. 26. "greued in hys persone:" wounded. Fr. *greue de sa personne*.
- p. 149, l. 5. "on a day emonge al other:" Fr. *un jour entre les aultres*.
- p. 149, l. 17. "at al aduenture:" Fr. *a son aduenture*.
- p. 149, l. 28. "he doubted entyerly:" Fr. *il doubta entierement* = feared greatly, or in his heart. See *Glossary*.
- p. 151, l. 6. "dropped:" Fr. *platz* = broad.
- p. 152, l. 6. "attayned ouerthwart the necke:" Fr. *lattaingt du trauers du col*.
- p. 154, l. 4. "of thy partye:" = so far as thou art concerned. Fr. *de ta part*.
- p. 154, l. 13. Fr. *Et quant ladmiral les vit venir tout ethroclite en son entendement*. I can make nothing of "the ethroclites."
- p. 155, l. 8. "Orages:" in *Sir Ferumbras*, 3823, Malyngras; in the *Sowdone*, 2145, Espyard.
- p. 155, l. 29. "To whom there is none like or equal in goodness in the world:" Fr. *quil non y a point de pareil*.
- p. 158, l. 2. "in comyng, &c.:" as we should now see, *en passant*, or by the way. Fr. *en venant vous debuez scauoir*.
- p. 158, l. 5. The miracle of the water rising to a level with the banks, and afterwards subsiding, is not given in the English metrical versions of the romance. See Dr. Hausknecht's note to the *Sowdone*, l. 2810.
- p. 159, l. 10. "dantesuyle." In the original French, *dautefeuille*, evidently misread by Caxton.
- p. 161, l. 1. "how am I determyneð:" Fr. *comme suis ie determiné*.
- p. 161, l. 29. "as a theef attaynt:" Fr. *comme larron prouue*.
- p. 163, l. 12. "deffende:" forbid. Fr. *ne plaise pas a dieu que iamais*.
- p. 165, l. 31. "wyth motye:" Fr. *a ce mouuement vous viendrez*.
- p. 167, l. 14. "reclame me recreaunte, &c.:" Fr. *reclame recreeant et tenu reboute*.
- p. 169, l. 3. "bowed his hede:" Fr. *baissa le menton*.
- p. 169, l. 28. "of an olde Serpente, &c.:" Fr. *dung viel serpent crote et moult endurecy*.
- p. 170, l. 27. "confanon:" so in the original French.

- p. 171, l. 27. "she was departed fro her gesyne, &c.:" Fr. *qui auoit faicte sa gessine de deux filz*, that is, who had given birth to two sons.
- p. 172, l. 11. "facyon:" = state of affairs.
- p. 175, l. 24. "Thus doyingt:" = while this was happening.
- p. 175, l. 32. "Amyotte." Amyote, *Sir Ferumbas*, 4663; Barrok, in the *Sowdone*, 2939.
- p. 177, l. 10. In the *Sowdone*, 3043, Richard is left as governor of Mantrible.
- p. 177, l. 35. "he swowned, &c.:" Fr. *il pasma de dueil et cria comme tout hors du sens*.
- p. 178, l. 11. "wel abusedt:" Fr. *bien abusez* = greatly deceived or mistaken. This is almost the oldest use of the word. "*Abuser*. To abuse, misuse . . . deceive, disappoint, gull, cozen, beguile. *S'abuser*. To mistake, to be in error; to wronge himselfe, &c." Cotgrave.
- p. 179, l. 7. "the olde kyngt Coldroe tempestet hym." Here Caxton has made a most curious mistake. The original runs: *et avec luy le riel roy Coldroe, tempeste. et brullant de mommiere: tempeste* being really the name of one of the Saracen kings, and not a verb.
- p. 183, l. 5. "better aduysedt:" Fr. *quil soit descensle*(?).
- p. 183, l. 32. "byhelde:" Fr. *regarderent*. See note to p. 102, l. 6.
- p. 184, l. 13. "Dnc Naymes." In the *Sowdone* Floripas first sees the French army advancing.
- p. 187, l. 1. "in the tree of the crosse:" Fr. *en larbre*.
- p. 187, l. 14. "he was almoost in a rage of hys wordes:" Fr. *a peu de fait quil ne fut enruige de ses parolles*.
- p. 187, l. 33. "by presumyngt:" Fr. *par presumacion* = by supposition.
- p. 190, l. 2. "wythoute faulte:" Fr. *sans faulte* = without fail.
- p. 193, l. 29. "helde them soo short, &c.:" Fr. *et les tindrent si de prez quelz ne sceurent que fuire*.
- p. 195, l. 11. "a grete abusyon:" Fr. *grant abusyon*.
- p. 201, l. 7. "that there was non abusyon, &c.:" Fr. *quil ny auoit point dabusyon en croire et adorer les distes reliques*.
- p. 202, l. 22. "al ranysshedt:" Fr. *tout rouy*.
- p. 204, l. 7. "onerthrew to the erthe:" Fr. *ront tomber par terre*.
- p. 208, l. 18. "he foundedt, rented, and releuedt many and dyners chyrches:" Fr. *il fonda, renta, et releua plusieurs et diuerses eglises*.
- p. 209, l. 4. See Dr. Hanskuecht's note to the *Sowdon*, l. 1888.
- p. 209, l. 23. "he wold not lene herby:" would not stop at this. Fr. *ne se voult tenir a cecy*.
- p. 209, l. 27. "maad certeyn experyences:" Fr. *jist aucunes experimencacions*.
- p. 213, l. 5. "took hede:" Fr. *sen prist garde* = took notice.
- p. 214, l. 31. Fr. *culx qui estoient presens et leurs successors fussent francs et liberez, les taillables fussent a leurs drois comme quilz fussent condicionnez*.

- p. 215, l. 35. "felow:" Fr. *compaignon de escoc*.
- p. 217, l. 13. "wythoute makynge grete rebellyon:" without showing any great fight. Fr. *sans faire grandes rebellions*.
- p. 221, l. 17. "demaundeð synguler persone ayenst a persone:" Fr. *demanda a Charles bataille singuliere de personne a personne*.
- p. 222, l. 17. "soo vylaynsly:" Fr. *si villement*.
- p. 231, l. 1. "surprised:" overcome, taken. Fr. *surpris*.
- p. 237, l. 1. "dystourneð:" turned him away, dissuaded him. Fr. *le destourba*.
- p. 237, l. 21. "lepte:" corrected on the authority of the original French, which reads *monta*.
- p. 242, l. 6. "to-faissheð and broken:" Fr. *il estoit nuire, casse, et tout rompu*.
- p. 251, l. 27. "daubeney." See *Introduction*, p. 7.

G L O S S A R Y.

- Abuse, *s.* 60/30, deceit, error.
 Abuse, *v.* 206/19, deceive.
 Abylled, *pt. s.* 80/11, dressed, prepared.
 Accomplysshe, *v.* 125/34, complete, finish.
 Accumyled, *pa. par.* 198/167, accumulated, grown long and thick.
 Acoward, *v.* 173/15, show to be a coward, prove oneself a coward.
 Adioust, *v.* 39/9, to add, append.
 Adoubed, *pa. par.* 95/22, arrayed, dressed; 55/5, dubbed.
 Affectuously, *adv.* 13/12, affectionately, with affection.
 Alowed, *pa. par.* 49/20, praised.
 Ampull, *s.* 20/31, a flask, a bottle, a jar.
 And, *conj.* 101/15, if.
 Anenst, *prep.* 246/29, towards, as regards.
 Appeled, *pt. s.* 242/26, accused, challenged, charged with.
 Araught, *pt. s.* 76/28, reached to, touched.
 Arbalastr, *s.* 104/12, a cross-bow.
 Aresonne, *pa. par.* 52/20, questioned.
 Attayne, *pt. s.* 190/19, reached, struck.
 Attones, *adv.* 56/14, at once, at the same time.
 Auale, *pt. s.* 158/16, sank down, was lowered; 104/31, let down, lowered.
 Baeynet, *s.* 32/15, a small helmet.
 Barat, *s.* 231/35, fraud, deceit.
 Baston, *s.* 182/1, a staff.
 Batayl, *s.* 232/35, a battalion, a division of an army.
 Bayned, *pa. par.* 89/20, bathed, plunged.
 Baynes, *s. pl.* 95/20, baths.
 Becke, *s.* 20/30, a beak, bill.
 Behoeful, *v.* 145/25, advisable, advantageous.
 Belfraye, *s.* 175/7, a tower. See *Cath. Anglicum*, *s. v.* Barsepay.
 Blynfelde, *pt. pl.* 82/1, blindfolded. See *Cath. Anglicum*, *s. v.* Blyndfeyld.
 Bowedraugt, *s.* 189/31, a bowshot.
 Boystous, *a.* 29/26, large, big; 16/22, rough, violent.
 Broche, *pt. s.* 101/35, spurred.
 Buscage, *s.* 33/19, a wood. O.Fr. *boscage*.
 Canuse, *a.* 94/27, short, thick-nosed.
 Chauffed, *pa. par.* 95/20, warmed, heated.
 Complices, *s. pl.* 164/33, accomplices.
 Confanon, *s.* 170/27. For gonfanon = a standard.
 Confysked, *pa. par.* 24/34, confiscated.
 Conuenably, *adv.* 19/32, suitably, fittingly.
 Corobere, *v.* 24/9, to strengthen.
 Crapnuld, *s.* 79/20, a toad.

Creneur, *s.* 46/19, dread.

"*Creneur*, feare, dread." —
Cotgrave.

Cresne, *s.* 20/32. The chrism or holy oil with which kings were anointed at their consecration. See *Cath. Anglicum*, *s. v.* Creme.

Dedyed, *pa. par.* 16/35, dedicated.

Delyuer, *a.* 80/33, active, nimble. Hence the modern *clever*.

Depesshe, *v. imp.* 53/9, hasten, hurry.

Derked, *pt. s.* 211/12, was eclipsed.

Descerked, *pt. s.* 102/7, cut off the circle or ring round the helmet.

Descouer, *pa. par.* 75/26, uncovered, deprived.

Desmaylled, *pa. par.* 69/10, deprived of the mails or plates.

Disreng, *v.* 226/19, to be thrown in disorder.

Dyshoneste, *s.* 91/31, filth, nastiness.

Dyssynyle, *pa. par.* 13/22, disguised.

Dystourne, *pt. s.* 237/1, turned aside.

Dystrouble, *v.* 151/27, trouble, disturb, interfere with.

Egal, *s.* 59/2, equal, match.

Empesshed, *pa. par.* 219/14, hindered, obstructed.

Enforced, *pt. s.* 78/16, exerted.

Engyne, *s.* 165/21, craft, art, skill.

Enhardy, *pt. pl.* 192/22, encouraged, took courage.

Ensyewyng, *v.* 250/24, following.

Enterbraced, *pt. pl.* 113/25, embraced.

Enterprenour, *s.* 166/10, enterpriser, actor.

Entretene, *v.* 46/32, to treat, behave towards.

Entyer, *a.* 237/32, earnest, hearty.

Entyred, *pa. par.* 244/27, interred.

Entyerly, *adv.* 149/28, earnestly, very greatly. "*Entyerly*: *intimo*." — *Cathol. Anglicum*.

Eserye, *v.* 77/27, to call upon, invoke.

Faus, *a.* 79/18. See *note*.

Faysyble, *a.* 49/34, possible to be done, feasible.

Felounye, *s.* 109/30, daring, recklessness.

Fere, *v.* 140/5, to frighten.

Ferfully, *adv.* 193/32, in fear, timidly.

Fette, *pt. s.* 223/26, fetched.

Fliese, *s.* 91/1, a fleece.

Florysshe, *v.* 36/3, to bud, flower.

Florysshed, *pa. par.* 108/23, flowing, long and wide.

Formosyto, *s.* 198/10, beauty.

Frequented, *pt. s.* 29/12, made frequent use of.

Geayler, *s.* 89/1, jailer.

Glaues, *sb. pl.* 81/27, glaives: weapons made of a cutting blade fixed at the end of a staff.

Gree, *s.* 96/10, pleasure, delight.

Greued, *pa. par.* 147/26, hurt, injured.

Guarysshed, *pa. par.* 17/16, cured, healed.

Habylle, *a.* 169/32, active, nimble.

Harnoys, *s.* 105/34, equipments, outfit.

Houyng, *pr. par.* 36/16, hovering.

Iape, *v.* 60/22, play, mock.

Ionques, *s. pl.* 200/1, rushes. See *Cath. Anglicum*, *s. v.* Ionkett.

Journeye, *s.* 216/9, a day's journey.

Lawhe, *v.* 53/12, to laugh.

Lawhyng, *a.* 90/15, laughing.

Lesynges, *s. pl.* 106/8, lies.

Leteth, *pr. s.* 212/24, causes. *Leteth the wete* = tells you, sends notice to you.

Lette, *pa. par.* 219/14, obstructed, hindered.

- Loange, *s.* 25/32, praise, worship, reverence. O.Fr. *louange*.
- Lodgyce, *s.* 49/22, lodgings, tent. Fr. *logis*.
- Loos, *s.* 85/5, glory, praise.
- Lyces, *s.* *pl.* 40/25. Lists or a tilt-yard (*Cotgrave*) here used for the lines of the camp.
- Lygnage, *s.* 192/33, clan, party.
- Maistresse, *s.* 94/19, governess.
- Matte, *a.* 74/12, conquered, thoroughly beaten. See glossary to *Sir Ferunbras*.
- Maulgre, *prep.* 234/26, in spite of.
- Meddle, *v.* 92/35, engage, contend.
- Medled, *pa. par.* 198/14, mixed, intermingled.
- Mesprysed, *pa. par.* 251/12, made a mistake, erred; 52/6, done wrong, injured.
- Mosel, *s.* 151/10, a muzzle.
- Moyen, *s.* 213/33, a means, a plan.
- Murayl, *s.* 203/25, walls, fortifications.
- Muse, *v.* 119/9, to be confounded.
- Ouerall, *adv.* 30/12, everywhere.
 "Ouer alle; *passim, ubicunque, genus loquendi est obique.*"—*Cuth. Anglicum*.
- Ouerthrewe, *pt. s.* 141/18, fell over.
- Parents, *s. pl.* 160/3, relations.
- Pourchace, *v.* 32/6, provide, contrive. See note to *Sir Ferunbras*, 2603.
- Prestly, *adv.* 94/35, readily, quickly.
- Priued, *pa. par.* 215/14, withdrawn, estranged.
- Purchaced, *pa. par.* 131/8, obtained, procured.
- Putayne, *s.* 180/1, a harlot.
- Puterye, *s.* 181/35, harlotry. Fr. *puterie*.
- Pynapple, *s.* 80/22, a fir. See note.
- Raught, *pt. s.* 81/18, reached to, touched.
- Reioye, *v.* 64/32, renew.
- Releued, *pt. s.* 130/24, lifted up, raised.
- Remysed, *pt. s.* 208/28, placed again, brought back.
- Rented, *pt. s.* 206/18, endowed.
- Repayre, *s.* 129/13, retreat, return.
- Rescower, *pa. par.* 72/35, rescued.
- Retcheth, 3 *pr. s.* 22/3, cares, recks.
- Ryuage, *s.* 158/3, shore, bank.
- Salewed, *pt. s.* 49/23, saluted, made obeisance to.
- Setted, *pt. s.* 52/22, set, thought.
- Share, *pt. s.* 76/28, cut.
- Sommyers, *s. pl.* 105/23, pack-horses.
- Soulded, *pa. par.* 103/33, soldered, fastened, jointed.
- Sperhawke, *s.* 193/32, a sparrow-hawk.
- Stratchedden, *pt. pl.* 236/31, were stretched or strained.
- Sudarye, *s.* 37/14, a handkerchief: commonly applied to the napkin which wrapped about our Lord's head. See *Cuth. Anglicum*, *s. v.* and note.
- Surquydrous, *a.* 74/10, proud, haughty.
- Swolowe, *s.* 205/32, a whirlpool or quicksand. See *Cuth. Anglicum*, *s. v.* a Swalle of y^e See.
- Symylacres, *s. pl.* 206/11, images.
- Syeges, *s. pl.* 229/5, seats, places.
- Tabellyons, *s. pl.* 214/32. See note.
- Tabouryns, *s. pl.* 22/27, tabourers.
- Thwarte, *prep.* 44/6, across.
- To-frusshed, *pa. par.* 75/20, broken to pieces.
- Trauaylled, *pa. par.* 103/7, worn out with labour.
- Tronchonne, *pa. par.* 63/1, broken to pieces.
- Truffed, *pt. s.* 119/15, played, mocked.

Tyerce, <i>s.</i> 232/23, terce, or the third of the canonical hours.	Wende, <i>pt. s.</i> 36/13, thought, intended.
Underset, <i>pa. par.</i> 249/7, propped up, supported.	Wessho, <i>pt. s.</i> 66/21, washed.
Vnnethe, <i>adv.</i> 31/6, scarcely, with difficulty.	Wynbrowes, <i>s. pl.</i> 26/33, eyebrows. Evidently a corruption of <i>eyebrowes</i> .
Vylaynsly, <i>adv.</i> 222/17, shamefully, disgracefully.	Ymbre, <i>s.</i> 37/35, ember.

S.R. 24/11/44

PR	Early English Text
1119	Society
E5	[Publications]
no.36-37	Extra series

PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY

CIRCULATE AS MONOGRAPH

